

COLLOQUIAL
RUSSIAN



By the same Author

A MANUAL OF RUSSIAN COMMERCIAL
CORRESPONDENCE

RUSSIAN ACCIDENCE IN TABLES

GUIDE TO THE RUSSIAN ACCENT, etc.

COLLOQUIAL RUSSIAN READER (ready shortly)

Uniform with this volume

COLLOQUIAL FRENCH
COLLOQUIAL GERMAN
COLLOQUIAL ITALIAN
COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE
COLLOQUIAL ARABIC
COLLOQUIAL PERSIAN
COLLOQUIAL SPANISH
COLLOQUIAL CHINESE
COLLOQUIAL ENGLISH
COLLOQUIAL HINDUSTANI
COLLOQUIAL HUNGARIAN
COLLOQUIAL ROUMANIAN
COLLOQUIAL MALAY

London
Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner
& Co. Ltd.

COLLOQUIAL RUSSIAN

By

MARK SIEFF

L.C.C. Instructor in Russian
(Senior Panel)



LONDON

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & CO. LTD.

BROADWAY HOUSE: 68-74 CARTER LANE, E.C.

First published August 1943
Reprinted . July 1944

Printed in Great Britain by T. and A. CONSTABLE LTD.
at the University Press, Edinburgh

CONTENTS

	PAGES
PREFACE	xiii
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS	xvi
SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT	xvii
BIBLIOGRAPHY	xix
THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET	xx

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

SECTION I—SOUNDS

PRONUNCIATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS :

1. *The Vowels*, § 1. 2. *The Consonants*, § 3 1-6

CLASSIFICATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS :

The Vowels, § 4. *Effect of the Stress-Accent on the Pronunciation of Vowels*, § 5. *Length of Stressed Vowels*, § 6. *Diphthongs*, § 7. *Soft Vowels and Palatalized Consonants*, § 8. *Pronunciation of Palatalized Consonants*, § 9. *Open and Close Vowels*, § 10. *The Stress-Accent*, § 11. *Voiced and Voiceless Consonants*, § 12. *Peculiarities in the Pronunciation of Consonants*, § 13. *Commuation of Russian Sounds*, § 13a. *Stress*, § 14 6-21

READING EXERCISES 21-26

SECTION II—PARTS OF SPEECH

1. NOUNS :

PAGES

Genders, Numbers, and Cases of Nouns, § 15.
Functions of Cases, § 16. *How to distinguish Gender of Nouns*, § 17. *Declension of Masculine Nouns*, § 18. *Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Masculine Nouns*, § 19. *Irregular Terminations in the Declension of Masculine Nouns*, § 20. *The Accent as it affects the Parts of Speech*, § 21. *The Accent in the Declension of Masculine Nouns*, § 22. *Declension of Neuter Nouns*, § 23. *Fleeting o and e in Neuter Nouns*, § 24. *Irregularities in the Declension of Neuter Nouns*, §§ 25-26. *The Accent in the Declension of Neuter Nouns*, § 27. *Declension of Feminine Nouns*, § 28. *Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Feminine Nouns*, § 29. *Irregularities in the Declension of Feminine Nouns*, §§ 30-31c. *The Accent in the Declension of Feminine Nouns*, § 32. *Nouns*: (1) *used only in Singular*; (2) *used only in Plural*; (3) *of Common Gender*, § 33. *The Diminutives*, § 33a. *Derivation-Suffixes in Nouns*, § 33b 27-60

2. ADJECTIVES :

Declension of Attributive Adjectives, §§ 35-39. *Formation of the Predicative (Short) Form of Adjectives*, § 40. *Degrees of Comparison*, § 41. *The Superlative Degree*, § 42. *Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives*, § 43. *The Accent in Adjectives*, § 44. *A List of Adjectives in frequent use*, § 45. *Adjectives which have no Predicative or Comparative form*, § 46. *Participles as Adjectives*, § 46a 60-82

3. PRONOUNS :

	PAGES
<i>Classes of Pronouns, § 47</i>	82-84

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS :

1. <i>Personal, § 48.</i>	2. <i>Possessive, § 49.</i>	3. <i>Demonstrative, § 50.</i>	4. <i>Relative and Interrogative, § 51.</i>
5. <i>Definite, § 52.</i>	6. <i>Indefinite, § 53</i>	84-90	

4. NUMERALS :

<i>Classes of Numerals, § 54. List of Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals, § 54a. Declension of Numerals, § 55. Numerals as they qualify nouns, § 55a. Collective (group) Numerals, § 55b. Fractional Numerals, § 55c</i>	90-99
---	-------

5. VERBS :

<i>Active and Neuter Verbs, § 56. Reflexive Verbs, § 56a. Reflexive Verbs in Impersonal Sentences, § 56b. Reciprocal Verbs, § 56c. Tenses of the Indicative Mood, § 57. Aspects, §§ 58-59. Formation of Perfective Verbs, § 60. Definite and Indefinite Verbs, § 61. Iterative Verbs, § 62. Prepositional Prefixes which modify the meaning of a Verb, § 63</i>	99-117
---	--------

<i>List of Verb-Groups, § 64</i>	117-128
--	---------

1. говорить — казать.	2. давать — дать.
3. брать — взять.	4. ставить — стать.
5. бывать — быть.	6. девать — деть.
7. иметь — ять.	8. ходить — идти.
9. ездить — ехать.	9a. бежать — бегать.
10. носить — нести.	11. возить — везти.
12. водить — вести.	13. падать — пасть.
14. кладывать — класть ; -лагать — положить.	

<i>Formation of Perfective Verbs from Imperfectives, §§ 65-66. List of Reflexive and Reciprocal Verbs, § 67. List of Neuter Verbs ending in ся, § 68. Reflexive Verbs used in a passive sense, § 69. Conjugation of Verbs, § 70. Types of Conjugation, § 71. The Accent in the Conjugation of Verbs, § 72 : 1. The Accent in the Present Tense ; 2. The Accent in the Past Tense</i>	128-139
A. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION (Categories I-V), § 73-79	140-149
B. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION (Categories VI-VII), §§ 80-81	149-150
<i>Formation of the Imperative Mood, § 82. Formation of the Past Tense, § 83. The Accent in the Past Tense, §§ 84-85. Participles, § 86 : I. Formation of Present and Past Active Participles, § 86a. II. Formation of Present and Past Passive Participles, § 86b. A List of Past Passive Participles, § 86c. The Accent in the Past Passive Participle, § 87. Gerunds, § 88</i>	150-164
6. ADVERBS	164-171
7. PREPOSITIONS : <i>Meaning, § 93. Function, §§ 94-95. Prepositions and the cases which they govern, §§ 96-96e. The Accent of Prepositions, § 96f</i>	171-179
8. CONJUNCTIONS	180-182
9. INTERJECTIONS	182

SECTION III—SYNTAX

ESSENTIALS OF RUSSIAN SYNTAX :

PAGES

<i>Introduction</i> , § 99. <i>The Sentence</i> , § 100. <i>Relation between Words in the Sentence</i> , § 101. <i>The Subject</i> , § 102. <i>The Predicate</i> , §§ 103-104. <i>Irregular use of Tenses in Sentences</i> , § 105. <i>Peculiarities in the use of Moods</i> , § 106. <i>The Object</i> , §§ 107-108. <i>Direct object in the Genitive in Negative Sentences</i> , § 108a. <i>Indirect object in the Nominative plural</i> , § 108b. <i>Qualifying Words</i> , § 109. <i>The Apposition</i> , § 110	182-192
---	---------

ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS :

<i>Of place</i> , § 111 ; <i>of time</i> , § 112 ; <i>of manner</i> , § 113 ; <i>of cause</i> , § 114 ; <i>of purpose</i> , § 115	193-194
--	---------

CO-ORDINATION AND SUBORDINATION :

(1) <i>Co-ordination</i> , § 117. (2) <i>Subordination</i> , § 118. 1. <i>Peculiar cases of Co-ordination between Subject and Predicate</i> , § 119. 2. <i>Peculiar cases of Co-ordination between Qualifier and Qualified word</i> , § 120	194-199
--	---------

PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL SENTENCES :

<i>Personal Sentences</i> , § 121. <i>Impersonal Sentences</i> , § 122	199-202
--	---------

NEGATIVE SENTENCES	202-203
------------------------------	---------

USE OF THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT	203
---	-----

USE OF THE IMPERATIVE	203-204
---------------------------------	---------

COMPLEX SENTENCES :

PAGES

Principal Clause, Subordinate Clause, Inserted and Parenthetical Clauses, § 124. *Noun-clauses, Adjective-clauses, Adverb-clauses*, § 125. *Subject-clauses*, § 126. *Predicate-clauses*, § 127. *Qualifier-clauses*, § 128. *Adverb-clauses : of time*, § 129a ; *of place*, § 129b ; *of manner*, § 129c ; *of cause*, § 129d ; *of purpose*, § 129e. *Function of the Participle in the Complex Sentence*, § 130. *Function of the Gerund*, § 130a 204-213

THE PASSIVE VOICE 214-215

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS :

(1) *Indirect narration*, (2) *Conditional sentences*,
(3) *Indirect sentences*, § 132 215-218

WORD ORDER 218-219

FUNCTIONS OF THE VERBS :

1. БЫТЬ, § 134. 2. ИМѢТЬ, § 134a 219-222

TAUTOLOGICAL EXPRESSIONS AND PARTICLES USED

IN SENTENCES 222-228

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN: *свой* 228

PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS 229

FUNCTIONS OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS: *себя*,
себѣ 229-230

WORD SUBORDINATION :

The Meaning and Uses of Oblique Cases of Nouns, Pronouns, etc. :

Of Genitive, § 137; *of Dative*, § 138; *of Accusative*, § 139; *of Instrumental*, § 140;
of Locative, § 141 230-237

PUNCTUATION 237-238

PATRONYMICS 239-240

LESSONS

	PAGES
LESSON I	241-244
Easy words and expressions relating to the family, the home, food ; use of the verb <i>быть</i> as copula.	
LESSON II	245-252
A wider range of words and phrases about food and meals ; expressions of time ; some basic verbs and adverbs. Fuller treatment of the verb <i>быть</i> as copula and as an auxiliary verb. Construction of a simple negative sentence.	
LESSON III	253-263
Expressions of time ; Seasons. More basic verbs and adverbs. A few basic adjectives. Nationalities and countries. The home and the garden. Expressions with the verbs <i>быть</i> and <i>иметь</i> , showing how these verbs are interchanged in colloquial speech.	
LESSON IV	263-273
Expressions of time. Visiting. Days and months. Festivals. Entertainment. Travelling. Uses of the genitive case in the sentence.	
LESSON V	273-276
Easy impersonal sentences with adverbs which have a predicative meaning. Use of the auxiliary verbs <i>становиться</i> , <i>стать</i> .	
LESSON VI	276-280
Easy sentences which illustrate the use of the accusative.	
LESSON VII	280-284
Basic Verbs. Travelling. Sentences and idiomatic expressions which illustrate the use of the dative. Easy impersonal expressions in which the <i>logical</i> subject is in the dative (as an inverted object).	

LESSON VIII	285-288
-----------------------	---------

Simple idiomatic expressions with the use of the instrumental.
Passive construction (passive voice).

LESSON IX	289-290
---------------------	---------

Sentences illustrating the use of the locative. Expressions
of time and place in the locative.

LESSON X	291-297
--------------------	---------

Verbs and expressions dealing with the everyday round in the
home. Furniture. Meals. Food and drink. Recreation
and rest. Clothes (men's).

LESSON XI	297-301
---------------------	---------

Words and expressions in everyday use. Home and school.
Subjects of study. Wearing apparel (ladies'). The human
body. Crockery, cutlery; utensils and implements in and
round the house.

LESSON XII	302-307
----------------------	---------

Expressions relating to outdoor life in the garden; in the
field; in the forest; on the river and lake; vehicles; out-
door winter sports; hunting and fishing. Fruit, vegetables,
cereals. Domestic animals; poultry; beasts. The weather.

APPENDIX I	308-309
----------------------	---------

APPENDIX II	310
-----------------------	-----

APPENDIX III	311-312
------------------------	---------

APPENDIX IV	313-315
-----------------------	---------

RUSSIAN INDEX	316-318
-------------------------	---------

ENGLISH INDEX	319-323
-------------------------	---------

PREFACE

THIS manual has been written expressly for adult students who are unable to attend Russian classes, but who would like to acquire a knowledge of the language by self-tuition. As such students will experience greater difficulty in comprehending the elements of Russian than those who are instructed by a tutor, the author has endeavoured to present the subject-matter as lucidly as possible.

As the book is not mainly intended for school use, the arrangement of its material differs from the usual pattern of a school manual, i.e. :

- (1) It does not contain translation-work.
- (2) The Grammatical Notes are set out in a compact and concise form, rather than dealt with piecemeal.

Experience has convinced the author that translation-work is not always conducive to the mastery of colloquial, everyday speech. Colloquial Russian does not always fit in with literal translations of English expressions. A 'translation bias' may prevent the student from assimilating idiomatic Russian in a natural way.

The compact arrangement of the Grammatical Notes will enable the student to acquire the indispensable minimum of grammar in an orderly way and will help him to gain quickly some insight into the 'mechanism' of Russian construction before taking up more advanced reading.

When he has learnt to wade through simple Russian, the student can attempt to master the *Essentials of Syntax*, which comprise a minimum of the most important elements of Syntax as they apply to the construction of a simple sentence, and the simpler forms of a complex sentence.

Russian impersonal and negative constructions, which present some difficulties to a foreigner, and which are not always easily explained by grammar, have been adequately treated in the **Syntax-Section**. Once the student has mastered these two characteristic modes of construction of a Russian sentence, he will have no difficulty in finding his way through more advanced Russian, or in comprehending spoken Russian.

In the **Lessons-Section** simple basic words and colloquial expressions are used which deal with the everyday round in the home and in the country.

The **Vocabulary**, though limited, includes the most important words in current use.

The **Verbs**, on the other hand, have been treated comprehensively. The conjugation-pattern of each verb is given throughout. The functions of **passive participles**, and the use of the **passive voice** in all its prevalent forms, have been adequately treated.

In both the **Grammar-Section** and the **Lessons-Section** are given selected examples which illustrate grammatical rules, and which exemplify the use of cases of declinable parts of speech. A complete statement of the **Governance of cases** is given in the **Syntax-Section**, which is reiterated in the **Lessons-Section**. The framework of a Russian sentence is made very clear and accessible to the student.

The general aim of this book is not so much to provide a full range of vocabulary and expressions, or a complete course of grammar, as to give comprehensive treatment to each essential peculiarity of the Russian language, and to consider the essential basic expressions that go to make up Russian everyday speech.

Both the **Grammar-** and **Lessons-Sections** have been amply provided with cross-references, and grammatical indexes in Russian and English are appended.

The book will thus help to lay a solid foundation for the student's knowledge of Russian, and will serve as a 'jumping-off ground' for further study.

The stress-accent presents some difficulties to students of Russian. As some knowledge of its vagaries is indispensable, a few pointers are given here and there. Although the rules relating to the accent cannot be conveniently classified, or easily remembered by the student, they will, nevertheless, be found useful. The student is advised to take up at an early stage some accented (and annotated) reading matter to supplement his studies.

Phonetics.—The author has avoided illustrating Russian sounds by phonetic transcriptions. Not many students are acquainted with the accepted symbols. But, apart from this, the terminations and inflexions are learnt all the quicker in their natural Russian appearance. Garbed in phonetic symbols they will only be the more perplexing to the student. The alphabet is easily learnt, and the letters themselves are better suited to give the value of Russian sounds than are the best phonetic transcriptions.

In conclusion, the author would advise the student never to let himself be perplexed over the seeming difficulties of Russian. These are as easily overcome as in other languages. When he has mastered the initial difficulties, he will find that the construction of Russian is both lucid and exact. The verbal system, apart from the aspects and the personal terminations, which are easily learnt, is not so involved as is, for example, the verbal system of German. In Russian there is no subjunctive mood for all the tenses; there is no treble past tense, and no complicated future tenses. The simplicity of the Russian verb gives to the language elasticity and clarity. The Russian tongue has the sonorous grandeur of a classical language, and its vigour, grace, and flexibility combine to make it a great modern language.

MARK SIEFF.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abs.</i>	.	.	absolute
<i>acc.</i>	.	.	accusative
<i>adv.</i>	.	.	adverb
<i>dat.</i>	.	.	dative
<i>f.</i>	}	.	feminine
<i>fem.</i>	}	.	
<i>gen.</i>	.	.	genitive
<i>imp.</i>	.	.	imperfective
<i>imper.</i>	.	.	imperative
<i>inf.</i>	.	.	infinitive
<i>instr.</i>	.	.	instrumental (case)
<i>loc.</i>	.	.	locative
<i>m.</i>	}	.	masculine
<i>masc.</i>	}	.	
<i>n.</i>	}	.	neuter
<i>neut.</i>	}	.	
<i>nom.</i>	.	.	nominative
<i>perf.</i>	.	.	perfective
<i>pers.</i>	.	.	person
<i>pl.</i>	.	.	plural
<i>prep.</i>	.	.	preposition
<i>sing.</i>	.	.	singular
<i>tr.</i>	}	.	transitive
<i>trans.</i>	}	.	

SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT

(1) Master chapter on Sounds (§§ 1-14), and learn to read the words in §§ 14*a*-14*d*.

(2) After 2 to 3 weeks' study of the chapters dealing with nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals, and the paragraph on the conjugation of verbs (§ 70), start on Lessons-Section (pp. 241-307).

(3) All vocabularies must be thoroughly mastered. The Russian words to be read aloud, and written out *several times* to fix them in the mind.

(4) Grammatical forms (declensions and conjugations) must be assimilated by constant practice and 'drill,' and must keep pace with the vocabulary and the phrases of the Lessons-Section.

(5) The Lessons to be learnt *as Russian* without any mental reference to their English translation. The English columns are merely intended to help the student to understand the Russian columns *as Russian*. Having thoroughly mastered a page, the student can check up his knowledge by means of the English column.

(6) Note the fitness of prepositions as used in Russian expressions, without attempting to find their exact equivalent in English. (See Note on the vagaries of some prepositions at the end of the Russian Index, p. 318.)

(7) The student should master the material of the 12 Lessons before taking up Russian reading matter.

(8) Acquire the habit of thinking in Russian within the limits of what has been learnt, but not in terms of words translated from the English.

(9) The chapters on the Conjugation of Verbs (§§ 71-88) are to be taken up at the next stage of study when the student has gained some knowledge of the construction of simple Russian.

(10) Syntax can be taken up a little later. The beginner need only take up the paragraphs dealing with Simple Sentences (§§ 99-115); those on Co-ordination and Subordination (§§ 116-120); on the Impersonal and Negative Sentences (§§ 121-123); on the verbs **БЫТЬ** and **ИМЕТЬ** (§§ 134-134a); on Expressions, etc. (§§ 135-136), and on the Governance of Cases (§§ 137-141). Complex Sentences, Clauses, the Passive Voice, etc., the student need not take up until he has learnt to read freely. The same applies to the paragraphs on the Stress-Accent, which are intended as a guide, but not as a subject of study. A closer acquaintance with the Stress-Accent can be made later.

(11) At a later stage the student can attempt to compile 'his own Russian Dictionary' of all the words contained in the book, particularly the verbs, giving their conjugation-patterns.

(12) As the Indexes (pp. 316-323) contain only those words which have some grammatical significance, the student is advised to compile 'his own Index' of the various subjects and expressions treated in the book. This will be of great benefit to his studies.

The author has in an advanced stage of preparation a graduated **Colloquial Russian Reader** which is adapted for the needs of users of this manual. The reading matter is supplemented by comprehensive explanatory notes, and an extensive Vocabulary is appended.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

THE following works have been chiefly consulted in the compilation of this manual :

В. А. Богородицкий, «Общий курс русской грамматики,» 4th edition. (Kazan, 1913.)

Ө. Буслаев, «Учебник русской грамматики,» 11th edition. (Moscow, 1913.)

В. Ниѳонтов, «Синтаксис.» (Yuriev, 1915.)

E. BERNEKER, 'Russische Grammatik.' (Leipzig, 1897.)

S. C. BOYANUS, 'A Manual of Russian Pronunciation.' (Sidgwick and Jackson, London, 1935.)

P. BOYER et N. SPÉRANSKI, 'Manuel pour l'étude de la Langue Russe.' (Paris, 1905.)

HENRY SWEET, 'A New English Grammar.' (Clarendon Press, London, 1900.)

The Notes on the Stress-Accent are from the author's book, 'A Guide to the Russian Accent.' (David Nutt, London, 1919.)

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

Ordinary Characters.	Italic.	Written.	Russian Name.	Normal Corresponding Sound in English.	Accidental Sound.
А а	<i>Aa</i>	<i>А а</i>	ah	a in "father"	e, o
Б б	<i>Bb</i>	<i>Б б</i>	beh	b	p
В в	<i>Vv</i>	<i>В в</i>	veh	v	f
Г г	<i>Gg</i>	<i>Г г</i>	geh	g in "gate"	v, h, k, kh
Д д	<i>Dd</i>	<i>Д д</i>	deh	d	t
Е е	<i>Ee</i>	<i>Е е</i>	(y)eh	ye ore in "yet"	yo, o ¹
Ж ж	<i>Zhzh</i>	<i>Ж ж</i>	zheh	sin "leisure" (French j)	sh
З з	<i>Zz</i>	<i>З з</i>	zeh	z	s
И и	<i>Ii</i>	<i>И и</i>	ee	ee	yee
І і	<i>Ii</i>	<i>І і</i>	ee (съ точкою, with a dot)	ee	yee
Й й	<i>Iy</i>	<i>Й й</i>	и краткое (short ee)	ee (short) ²	
К к	<i>Kk</i>	<i>К к</i>	kah	c in "cat"	

¹ When e is printed ъ, it is pronounced as yo or o.

² A very short i(ce).

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET

Ordinary Characters.	Italic.	Written.	Russian Name.	Normal Corresponding Sound in English.	Accidental Sound.
Л л	Лл	Лл	el	l	
М м	Мм	Мм	em	m	
Н н	Нн	Нн	en	n	
О о	Оо	О о	o	o in "pot"	a
П п	Пп	П п	peh	p	
Р р	Рр	Р р	er	r (emphatic)	
С с	Сс	С с	ess	s in "seat"	z
Т т	Тт	Т т	teh	t	
У у	Уу	У у	oo	oo	
Ф ф	Фф	Ф ф	ef	f	
Х х	Хх	Х х	kha	ch in Scotch "loch"	
Ц ц	Цц	Ц ц	tseh	ts	

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET

Ordinary Characters.	Italic.	Written.	Russian Name.	Normal Corresponding Sound in English.	Accidental Sound.
Ч ч	ч ч	Ч ч	chch	chin "church"	sh
Ш ш	Ш ш	Ш ш	shah	sh	
Щ щ	Щ щ	Щ щ	shchah	sh + ch	
Ъ ъ	Ъ ъ	Ъ ъ	yer	See Notes on Pronunciation.	
Ы ы	Ы ы	Ы ы	yerü ¹ (ерѹ)		
Ь ь	Ь ь	Ь ь	yer' ² (ерь)		
Ѣ ѣ	Ѣ ѣ	Ѣ ѣ	yat' (ятѣ)	yeh, eh	yo
Э э	Э э	Э э	eh	ay in "nay"	
Ю ю	Ю ю	Ю ю	yoo	u in "use"	
Я я	Я я	Я я	yah	ya in "yard"	ye, yi, e, i
Ѧ Ѧ	Ѧ Ѧ	Ѧ Ѧ	feetáh	f	

¹ German *ü* followed by a short *i*, or *y* in *pity* sharply pronounced.

² The *ʹ* is to be pronounced softly and followed by a short *i*- or *y*-sound, indicated by *ʹ*.

V. *ѵ* (the so-called *йжица*) is now rarely used, being replaced by *и*. It was only employed in words borrowed from the Greek, to represent *υ* (upsilon). Care should be taken not to confuse *в*, *н*, *р*, *с*, *у*, *ѣ* with the similarly formed letters of the English alphabet.

NOTE. In the new Russian Orthography the letters **І, Ъ, Ѳ** have been discarded. **И, Е, Ф** now take their place respectively.

In the prefixes **из, воз (вз), раз (роз), низ, без**, the **з** is commuted into **с** if they are prefixed to a word beginning with a voiceless consonant. (See § 63, note 1.)

The terminations **аго, яго** in the genitive of adjectives, participles, pronouns, and numerals, are now replaced by **ого, его**.

The feminine and neuter terminations **ья, ия** in the nominative and accusative plural of adjectives, participles, pronouns and numerals, are now replaced by **ье, ие** (to conform to the masculine terminations).

ея (genitive of **она**, and when used as a possessive pronoun) is now replaced by **её**.

The hard sign (**ѣ**) is no longer used at the end of a word terminating in a hard consonant.

однѣ[ѣ], онѣ[ѣ] (*fem. for: alone, they*) are now: **одні́, оні́**.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

SECTION I

SOUNDS

PRONUNCIATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS

§ 1. 1. *The Vowels.*

а sounds as the English *a* in *far*.

э " " " *e* in *emblem*.

ы (For pronunciation see next page.)

о sounds as the English *aw* in *raw*.

у " " " *u* in *put*.

и " " " (1) *ee* in *eel* and

" " " (2) *yea* in *yeast*.

я sounds as а }
е " э } but with a fleeting 'jot' or и
ё " о } element fused with these sounds,
ю " y } that is as :

$\left. \begin{matrix} \text{ja} \\ \text{jэ} \\ \text{jo} \\ \text{ju} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{ or } \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{я} \\ \text{э} \\ \text{о} \\ \text{у} \end{matrix} \right.$ (See § 4.)

The Russian *a* is produced with the mouth wide open ; the sound is articulated at the back of the mouth ; voiced breath is sent upwards.

For the pronunciation of the *о* the lips are protruded forward but in a downward movement, and the sound (also produced at the back of the mouth) is sent through the protruded lips downwards.

For the *y* the lips are well protruded in a forward movement, and the sound, produced at the back of the mouth,

is driven right forward. Care must be taken not to give the Russian *y* the slightly composite 'off-glide' quality of the English *oo* in the words *food, good, moon*.¹

The *и* is produced near the middle of the hard palate with the co-operation of the middle part of the tongue, with the mouth slightly open. It is a deep, close sound. The 'jot,' which is the phonetic term for the *и*, is not used in Russian as a separate letter.

The *э* is a middle sound between *а* and *и*. To produce this sound the mouth is opened a little wider than for the *и*. The position of the middle part of the tongue is much lower than for the *и*. This letter appears only in a few Russian pronouns, such as: *этот, эта, это, эти, такой-ая -ое -ие, так*. It is mainly used in borrowed foreign words with an open *е*: *экономия, этаж, эмаль*, etc. When not stressed it sounds almost as an indistinct *и*.

The *ы* is produced with the central part of the tongue poised against the hard palate. The lips are even less open than for the *и*. At the place where the *ы* is articulated no *и* sound would be possible. It is not a deep sound as the *и*, and is pronounced almost as *y* in *pity*. It is suggested that the student should begin with the Russian *y* sound, but right at the start, without protruding the lips forward as for an *y* sound, end the half-begun *y* with an *и*. The articulation thus begun of the hard, open *y* will not allow the sound to finish with a close, deep *и* (as the Russian *y* does not readily *fuse* with an *и*), and so the correct sound *ы* will be the result. The student will get better results if he tries at first to produce the sound *ы* with labials (*б, п, м, ф, в*). The combination *мыи, пуи, буи, фуи, вуи*, quickly pronounced will produce the sound *ы*. The vowels *уи* must be well joined. (This experimental 'sound-trick' must not be confused with the legitimate diphthongs: *дуй, суй, куй, муй, буй*, etc., where the *y* sound is well completed and the short *й* (see p. 4) just tacked on without any attempt at *fusing*.)

¹ As sometimes pronounced in the Midlands and in the North.

ы—this syllable is the easiest to pronounce if the sound of the hard **я** has been mastered (see p. 5).

The **е** is the soft (jotated) counterpart of the hard **э**. Frequently, when stressed, the open **е**¹ sounds as **ѐ** (yo): (1) initially; (2) in the middle of words after a vowel, or after **ь** and **ъ**; (3) before a hard consonant in purely Russian words.

Rule (3), however, admits of many exceptions. To give a list of these exceptions would be too confusing to the beginner. The student is advised to form the habit of pronouncing the correct **ѐ** sound through practice, and from texts provided with the diaeresis. Often after the non-palatalized **ж, ш, ц** and also after the soft **ч, щ**, the **ѐ** sounds as an **о**. An accented **ѐ** after these five consonants usually turns into an **о** automatically, with the exception of personal terminations of verbs, where the **ѐ** is retained, but is sounded as an **о**.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (1) ѣж , hedgehog | (3) лѣд , ice |
| ѣлка , Christmas tree | мѣд , honey, mead |
| | овѣс , oats |
| (2) наѣм , hire, loan | ше́пот [шóпот], whisper |
| моѐ , mine | жѐлоб [жóлоб], trough |
| житьѐ , living | течѐт , runs |
| обѣм , size | печѐт , bakes |
| | жжѐт , burns |

NOTE. There are no mute vowels in Russian. Every vowel is sounded.

§ 2. The letters **ь, ъ, й**.

The **ь** (soft sign) indicates that the preceding consonant is palatalized. (See § 8.)

Examples :

да нь , tribute	двер ь , door
де нь , day	со ль , salt
пе нь , stump of tree	ко нь як, brandy

¹ See § 10.

The consonants ж, ш are never palatalized by the soft sign, or soft vowels.

ц is never followed by ь, и, ю, я; it can be followed by е, but is not made soft by this vowel.

The ъ (hard sign) indicates that the preceding consonant is hard (non-palatalized). It can now be found in the middle of a word only, before a soft vowel (in compound words), where it shows that this soft vowel is sounded as a pure vowel, and that its softness (jotation) has not been absorbed by the consonant before the ъ :

объяснѣть,	to explain
объѣмъ,	size, dimension
субъѣктъ,	worthless individual; subject

In some texts this ъ is replaced by an apostrophe (').

Before the New Orthography came into force, the ъ always stood at the end of every word which ended in a hard consonant. It has now been discarded.

NOTE. Soft vowels, standing after ь or ъ, do not lose their 'jot' element. (See § 9e.)

The short и. This is marked ѣ. It is used only for forming diphthongs in combination with other vowels :

чай,	tea	лей,	pour
мой,	mine	бей,	beat
сарай,	shed	бѣдный,	poor
читай,	read	громкій,	loud
дуй,	blow		

§ 3. 2. *The Consonants.*

(a) The hard consonants : п, б, м, ф, в, к, г are similar to the English p, b, m, f, v, k, g. (See § 9.)

(b) The hard т, д, н, л, although broadly similar to the English t, d, n, l, yet have a shade of difference which makes them fit better into the 'vocal mechanism'

of Russian. They are dental and are formed with the tip of the tongue *against the upper teeth*, and not against the teeth-ridge. (See § 9a.)

The sound of the hard **л** is removed further from the sound-value of the English *l* by the characteristically Russian hollow sound (see § 9a). The nearest approximation to the sound of the Russian hard **л** is that of the English *l* in *apple, bubble, sample, purple*. But the Russian sound is more expanded and hollow.

(c) The hard **с**, **з** also deviate slightly from the English *s, z*. They are produced between the tip of the tongue and the upper teeth (by narrowing the air-passage), and not between the tip *and* blade, and the teeth-ridge. The Russian **с**, **з** are more sharply outlined than the English *s, z*. (See § 9b.)

(d) The hard **р** is similar to the English 'rolled' *r* as sounded in the north of England, but the 'trill' is a moderate one. (See § 9a.)

In *пот*, mouth } the **р** sounds as } in *ring, rotter*,
 рукá, hand } the English *r* } *rubbish*.

(e) The hard **х** is similar to the Scottish and German sound *ch* in *loch*. It is produced with very weak friction, and sounds almost as a voiceless *h*. Its sound has no harsh, rasping quality (see § 9c):

хам (ill-bred fellow) sounds almost as a slightly thicker English *h* would sound in *hard*.

The **р** has a voiced¹ counterpart which sounds as *h*. It is used in a few words mainly of scriptural origin, such as:

Бóра, of God; **Гóсподи**! Oh Lord! **блáро**, good; etc.

It is also used in a few foreign proper names which contain an *H*, such as:

Гáмбург, Hamburg; **Гéйне**, Heine; etc.

As there is no special letter in Russian for the aspirate sound, **р** is used in such words.

¹ aspirate.

(f) The hard ж, ш, ц are pronounced :

ж as *s* in *measure* ;

ш as *sh* in *harsh* ;

ц as *ts* in *rats* (but more closely fused).

These three consonants have no palatalized counterparts. They are never followed by ю, я. They can be followed by и, е, and ё, but these sound as ы, э, о after them, and they impart no softened quality to the consonant.

(g) The ч and ц are always soft ; they have no hard counterparts ; ч sounds as *ch* in *church*, ц is a combination of ш and ч (finely fused), and sounds as *shch* in *fresh cheese*. It must be pronounced as one sound.

ч and ц are never followed by ю, я, ы. They have a palatalized sound even when followed by а, о, у.

CLASSIFICATION OF RUSSIAN SOUNDS

§ 4. The Vowels.

Hard and Soft Vowels :

Pure { а, э, ы, о, у = hard,
я, е, и, ё, ю = soft (jotated).

The soft (jotated) vowels, while having the same fundamental sound as their corresponding hard vowels, have the element of a 'jot' ¹ preceding them.

Thus the sound of я corresponds to that of *ya* in *yard* ;

„	„	е	„	„	„	<i>ye</i> in <i>yes</i> ;
„	„	и	„	„	„	{ (1) <i>ee</i> in <i>eel</i> ;
„	„	ё	„	„	„	{ (2) <i>yea</i> in <i>yeast</i> ; ²
„	„	ю	„	„	„	<i>yo</i> in <i>yonder</i> ;
„	„		„	„	„	<i>yu</i> in <i>yuletide</i> .

But in the Russian soft vowels the 'jot' element is not so open or pronounced as in analogous English sounds : it is more closely fused with the fundamental sound of the

¹ 'jot' is the term adopted in phonetics for the и element [or of a very close English *y*].

² Initially (stressed) in : их, им, ими (gen., dat., instr. of онѣ, *they*).

corresponding hard vowel, and thus forms a pure sound of its own.

The soft vowel retains its softness only if it stands as an initial syllable at the beginning of words, or when it follows another vowel (or **ѣ**, **ѥ**) in the middle of a word :

яма, pit	моѣ, mine (<i>neuter</i>)
ѣду, I go (travel)	мою, I wash
ява, willow tree	мою, mine (<i>acc. fem.</i>)

But in

рядом, abreast слепой, blind слива, plum

the **я**, **е**, **и** have given up the 'jot' element to their preceding consonants. (See § 9e.)

Both hard and soft vowels retain their pure fundamental sound only when stressed (accented). Some of the vowels, when not stressed, sound fainter and become almost indefinite, and they deviate from their original cardinal sound-value, thus :

an unstressed **а** sounds as an indistinct **ə** (or the short unstressed English *a* in the words *alone*, *mortal*).

Example : книга, book, sounds as кнѣгə,
баба, peasant woman, „ бəбə ;

an unstressed **я** sounds as an indistinct **е** :

заяц, sounds as зəец, hare,
мясник, „ меснѣк, butcher ;

an unstressed **е** often sounds as **и** :

поездə sounds almost as поиздə, trains ;

an unstressed **о** sounds as an indistinct unstressed **а** :

молоко sounds as малако, milk.

The vowels **ы**, **и**, **у**, **ю**, when not stressed, do not very markedly differ from their cardinal sound-values.

It will be seen that the stress-accent plays a very important part in deciding how the vowels should be sounded in both *stressed* and *unstressed syllables*.

§ 5. *Effect of the Stress-Accent on the Pronunciation of Vowels.*
(See § 11.)

It has been established by phonetic research that vowels, when removed from the stressed syllable in the Russian word, both before and after the accented vowel, have a tendency to be further modified into slightly different variations of their original sound, in accordance with the respective distance from the stress-centre. Phoneticians have provided these variations with appropriate symbols ; but for the beginner the multiplication of sounds and sound-symbols will only be confusing. The Russian sounds are best learned from a native, and the broad values of the fundamental vowel-sounds (and the few above-mentioned deviations) must always be borne in mind. By acquiring and fostering the habit of pronouncing the stressed syllables with a heightened tone and due resonance, the student will imperceptibly learn to pronounce the unstressed vowels almost as a native. In this connection three points must be remembered :

(1) The accented syllable is the most important part of a Russian word. It must be pronounced vigorously and with resonance. If all the 'vocal light' is focussed on the stressed syllable, the other syllables will automatically be left in the shade, and thus the unstressed vowels will assume their natural sound without the student being aware of it.

(2) There can only be one accented syllable in a Russian word. The student must aim at acquiring and fostering the habit of putting the proper stress on the accented syllable without giving vocal prominence to any other syllable in the word, that is to say : he must not create two stress-centres. A wrongly accented vowel will upset the pronunciation of the whole word.

(3) If the word ends in a consonant and the accent is on the last syllable, the student should take great care not to

'hit' that consonant: he should just pronounce the accented vowel with due resonance and then tack on the consonant lightly. Consonants when hit are usually doubled, and Russian does not tolerate doubled consonants. The only exceptions to this rule in Russian words are a double **н** and a double **с**, where the second **н** and **с** are inserted for morphological reasons.

(Further hints on the value and importance of the stress-accent will be given as we go along.)

§ 6. *Length of Stressed Vowels.*

There are no long or short vowels in Russian. Normally all vowels are of a medium length, that is to say: half-way between the English long and short vowels. But a stressed vowel sounds a little longer, owing to the extra strength of the stress. In a word pronounced with special *emphasis-intonation* the stressed syllable will, naturally, sound much longer than usual.

§ 7. *Diphthongs* (two vowels representing the sound of a single vowel).

All Russian vowels can form diphthongs by taking a short **и** (written: **й**), which is placed after the vowel. The result is a new sound, which resembles in some ways the English diphthong formed by a vowel when it is followed by a *y*. The Russian diphthongs are not so broad and open as the English variety, and they are shorter, when not stressed. They are really vowels to which has been added half of the sound-value of the **и** together with half of its 'jotation.' This makes the principal-vowel element of the diphthong very much closer than that of an English diphthong.

Compare : ма^и, May, with *my*
 не^и, drink, with *hey*
 бо^и, battle, with *boy*, etc.

(See § 14c.)

§ 8. *Soft Vowels and Palatalized Consonants.*

Soft vowels affect very strongly the consonants which precede them by giving them a modified, soft, character. The 'jot'-element of the soft vowel is communicated to the consonant, making it soft or palatalized. All such consonants receive a sound, slightly crushed, somewhat liquefied in some districts, and almost inwardly directed, with the element of a fleeting 'jot' lent to it. The initial consonants in the English words, *pew*, *few*, *tune*, *league*, *duty* can give some approximation to the pronunciation of Russian palatalized consonants. But the Russian palatalized consonants are much softer and closer. It would be very difficult to give precise guidance how to produce this soft (palatalized) variety of Russian consonants in one or two paragraphs: a whole booklet would be needed in order to give in detail the structure of the vocal organs, position of the tongue when uttering any given sound, etc. And even then the student would be much perplexed, and would never be certain whether he had pronounced this or that sound correctly or not. As the mastery of the soft consonants is of the utmost importance in learning Russian, the student is advised to learn the sounds from a native. For those who have already assimilated the vocal value and functions of every Russian sound, a few hints about the palatalized consonants may be useful. These are set out in §§ 9-9e.

§ 9. *Pronunciation of Soft (palatalized) Consonants.*

The broad distinction between the pronunciation of hard consonants and their soft counterparts is this: that while the hard consonants are produced *without the participation of the middle part of the tongue*, those of the palatalized variety are pronounced *with the active participation of the middle part of the tongue* (nearer the front in the case of some consonants, and nearer the back in the case of others, as will be specified in each case). We will begin with the

sounds produced with the participation of the lips (labials), **п, б, м, ф, в**. The hard **п, б, м** (full-labials) are produced with both lips compressed, the sound going outwards. The hard **ф, в** (half-labials) are produced by the lower lip touching the tips of the upper teeth, the sound going outwards. In the case of the *palatalized* variety of these five labials, the sound, as it were, goes inwards, as if to pick up the 'jot' (or **н**) sound which makes them soft, while the middle part of the tongue (middle-front) simultaneously moves towards that spot of the hard palate where the 'jot' is produced.

The vocal organs of a Russian perform all these nice functions automatically. The English student will need some 'mouth-drill' at the beginning. When this 'trick' is learnt the student will have no further difficulty with the soft consonants. But learn it he must, otherwise his spoken Russian will never be really intelligible, or, at best, it will have a marked un-Russian flavour.

§ 9a. Next come the *dentals*: **т, д, н, л**, and the trilled (or rolled) **р**. The hard (non-palatalized) **т, д, н** are formed with the tip of the tongue against the upper teeth, the sound going outwards. For the palatalized set the lips are spread, the tip of the tongue is slightly lowered, leaving a clearance between tip of tongue and upper teeth, and the front of the tongue is simultaneously raised towards the hard palate (to infuse the 'jot' element into the consonant). In this process the blade of the tongue presses firmly against the teeth-ridge.

To produce a hard **л** the tip of the tongue is placed against the upper teeth, the middle of the tongue is lowered; the sound is produced by the back of the tongue against the soft palate. The soft **л** is produced in the same way as the soft **т, д, н**.

The non-palatalized hard **р** is produced by holding the tongue loosely near the teeth-ridge (of the upper teeth). The air stream causes the tip of the tongue to vibrate,

and produces the right trill. The soft (palatalized) *p* is produced by raising the tongue higher in the direction of the hard palate, with the mouth opened wider. The trill should not be overdone: just a momentary soft-pedalled vibration will do.

§ 9b. The hard *c* and *з* are produced by bringing the tip of the tongue very close to the upper teeth (without touching them).

For the soft *c* and *з* it is necessary to raise the front of the tongue towards the hard palate.

Thus the soft consonants *т, д, н, л, р, е, з*, have a middle-front (tongue) palatalization.

§ 9c. We now come to the *back-consonants* (usually called gutturals). They are formed between the back of the tongue and the soft palate:

к, г, х. Hard *к* is pronounced as the English *c* before a hard vowel (as in *cat*).

Hard *г* is pronounced as the English hard *g* in *go*.

Hard *х* is pronounced as *ch* in Scottish and German *loch*; but the Russian *х* is not so harsh, it almost sounds as a thick English *h*.

The palatalized variety of these three back-consonants is produced by endeavouring to articulate them a little forward in the direction where the *н* is articulated.

The soft back-consonants can be described as having a middle-back (tongue) palatalization.

§ 9d. There remain *ж, ш, ъ*, which are not capable of palatalization, and *ч, щ*, which are pre-eminently soft (palatalized).

The student could practise the pronunciation of the soft consonants (except *ж, ш, ъ*) by pronouncing them together with an *н*. Having obtained a satisfactory result, he can drop the *н* and try to experiment without any vowel at

all. He will find that a soft **б** is really **б^н** with only the fleeting 'jot' element of the **п** sounded, etc.

The palatalization of **к**, **г**, **х** is not so pronounced as in the other consonants.

NOTE. The position of the front part of the tongue, when producing a palatalized consonant, should always be close to the hard palate, except in the case of *labials*, when this is not quite possible.

§ 9c. It will be seen that the soft vowels create a new set of soft consonants which are distinct in pronunciation from the corresponding hard set. But having performed the function of palatalizing the preceding consonant the soft vowel has given up its 'jot' element (which has now been absorbed by the preceding consonant), and has only retained its cardinal sound-value, thus :

няня, nurse, is pronounced as н'ан'а ;¹

дядя, uncle, is pronounced as д'ад'а.

It would be impossible to pronounce a palatalized consonant with the soft vowel retaining its 'jot' element. In cases where such retention is needed, the palatalized consonant is separated from the soft vowel by **ь**. (See § 2.)

A few examples of words, with both hard and soft consonants, are given below (see §§ 14a and 14b). After a little practice the pronunciation of palatalized consonants should become quite easy.

§ 10. *Open and Close Vowels.*

All vowels, both soft and hard, when they stand immediately before a palatalized consonant have a close, almost contracted, sound. This is effected automatically by the correct pronunciation of the palatalized consonant that follows the vowel. In the act of correctly fusing the vowel and the consonant, an almost new vowel is pro-

¹ The apostrophe indicates the softened, palatalized consonant.

duced which has a resemblance to a very close diphthong, with an imperceptible 'jot'-quality. By a process of assimilation the vowel absorbs a part of the palatalization of the soft consonant, and it now takes a shade of the 'jot' on the side nearest to the soft consonant. The following examples will illustrate this process of vocal fusion and assimilation :

<i>Open vowels before hard consonants :</i>	<i>Close (contracted) vowels before soft consonants :</i>
брат, brother	братъ, } to take [бра'тъ]
дан, given	данъ, } tribute [да'нь]
лѣн, flax	лень, } state of laziness [л'е'нь]
кол, pile (pointed stake)	коль, } if [ко'ль]
дал, he gave	даль, } distance [да'ль]
надут, inflated	надутъ, } to inflate, [наду'тъ] } to cheat
мат, checkmate	мать, } mother [ма'тъ]

In all these examples the close vowels are produced by simply tacking on the well-articulated palatalized consonant, without any conscious effort being made by the student to render the vowel close. *The student's task is simply to sound the vowel correctly in accordance with its cardinal sound-value, and then to tack on, without any pause, the well-palatalized consonant.* The result will be the correct close vowel. If, however, he should aim at, or be conscious of, producing a close vowel, the result will be a *diphthong*, which will upset the euphony of the word.

§ 11. *The Stress-Accent.* (See § 5.)

One of the main difficulties in the study of Russian is the accent. It is a *stress*-accent, the accented (or stressed) syllable requiring a higher pitch, or ring, of the voice. As the accent is frequently shifted from one syllable to another in the declension, or conjugation, of the same word, or in the formation of derivatives, an early practical acquaintance with the position of the stress-accent in the word is necessary. As far as beginners are concerned there are no rigid rules that can be of any practical value, and so the student must form the habit of memorizing the place of the accent in the word from accented texts. This habit will help the learner to wade through the seemingly hopeless maze of the accent. It must be borne in mind that by putting the accent on the wrong syllable the meaning of the word is often altered. A few examples will illustrate this :

while	дóма	means at home,	домá	means houses ;
	зámok	„ a castle,	замóк	„ a lock ;
	мýка	„ torment,	мыká	„ flour.

But, apart from this, unless the student has formed the habit of giving the accented syllable the proper stress, he will have greater difficulty in comprehending the sounds and meaning of Russian as spoken by a native, and his own Russian will not be easily understood.

The accented vowel should be stressed clearly and resonantly, without, however, lengthening the sound unduly. It must be remembered that there are no long or short vowel sounds in Russian (see § 6). If a stressed syllable ends in a consonant the full force of the stress should fall on the accented vowel, but never on the consonant. The consonant is tacked on lightly without being hit. It is alien to Russian to double a consonant by hitting it. (See § 5 (3).)

Vowels without the stress-accent are almost reduced in

sound-value; they remain in the shade, and are not so clearly pronounced (see § 5 (1)). Unstressed vowels which stand immediately before the accented syllable are not quite so much reduced in sound-value as those standing after the accented syllable. The latter are heard indistinctly and the sound is often not clearly defined.

All these observations on the accent can, of necessity, give only an approximate idea about the manifold changes which unstressed vowels undergo in the process of sound-formation. But a careful study and application of the few hints given above will enable the student to pronounce the various sounds as near as possible to the living sounds of spoken Russian. An approximation to the exact shading of sounds will come with practice and knowledge. The main thing is to stress the accented syllable correctly, and to pronounce the palatalized consonants properly. The rich expressiveness of Russian can only be attained through paying meticulous attention to these rules and hints about the sounds and the accent.

§ 12. Voiced and Voiceless Consonants (*Sonants and Surds*).¹

(a) Voiced: б, в, г, д, з, ж, м, н, л, р, — — —

(b) Voiceless: п, ф, к, т, с, ш, — — — — ч, ц, х

(1) Voiced consonants are sounded as voiceless at the end of words after a vowel:

лоб,	forehead,	sounds as	лоп
кровь,	blood,	„	крофь
мог,	could,	„	мох
стог,	haystack,	„	стох
ног,	feet (<i>gen. pl.</i>),	„	нох
режь,	cut (<i>imp. 2nd</i>	„	решь
	<i>pers. sing.</i>),		
клад,	buried treasure,	„	клат

(2) At the beginning of words, and often in the middle, consonants have a tendency to assimilate

¹ Voiced consonants are uttered with vocal vibration; voiceless consonants are uttered with the breath and not with the voice.

the voiced, or voiceless, quality of the preceding consonant by lending to it their own vocal quality (or timbre) :

- (a) сделать, to make, sounds as *з*делать
 просьба, request, „ *п*р^осьба
 также, also, „ *т*а^кже
 (both consonants are rendered *voiced*).

- (б) лавка, shop, sounds as ла^фка
 вход, entrance, „ *ф*хот
 (both consonants are rendered *voiceless*).

- (c) з, с, before ж sound as ж :

сжечь, to burn, sounds as жжечь
 изжога, heartburn, „ *ж*жога

- з, с, before ш sound as ш :

сшить, to sew, sounds as шшить

- с before ч sounds as ш :

счёт, account, sounds as шч^{ёт} [or ш^{ёт}]

NOTE 1. If the second consonant in a word is *п, л, м, н, в*, these, although voiced, *do not* turn a preceding voiceless consonant into a voiced one :

правда, truth	снег, snow
платье, dress	свой, one's own
смотрю, I look	

NOTE 2. Assimilation of consonants takes place even if the respective consonants are in two different words, if the first word has no stress of its own :

к делу, sounds as *г* делу, to the point
 с золотом, „ *з* золотом, with gold

NOTE 3. In all cases of assimilation of consonants the student should not make any conscious effort to assist the natural tendency of the sounds themselves. At the end of words, for example, all that he has to do is to sound the stressed vowel with proper emphasis and resonance, and then to tack on the final voiced

sound lightly, without any conscious effort. The result will be a voiceless consonant of the proper effortless quality, without unnatural exaggeration.

§ 13. *Some Peculiarities in the Pronunciation of Consonants.*

(1) In the combinations **здн**, **стн**, the **д** and **т** are sounded faintly, or not at all :

пóздно,	late,	sounds as	пóзно	-
извѣстно,	it is known,	„	извѣсно	

(2) **л** is often sounded faintly, or not at all, particularly at the end of words after labials :

сóлнце,	sun,	sounds as	сонце
рубль,	rouble,	„	рупь

(3) **г** before **к**, **ч**, sounds as **х** :

легко́,	light, easy,	sounds as	лехко́
мя́гко,	softly,	„	мѣхко
ле́гче,	lighter, easier,	„	лѣхче
мя́гче,	softer,	„	мѣхче

(4) **г** sounds as **в** in the suffixes **еро**, **оро** (terminations of the genitive singular case for masculine and neuter of adjectives, some pronouns, and ordinal numerals) :

его́,	his,	sounds	евó
бѣлого́,	of white,	„	бѣлово

(5) **ч** before **н** is often sounded as **ш** :

ску́чно,	it's boring,	sounds as	ску́шно
конѣчно,	of course,	„	конѣшно
пра́чечная,	laundry,	„	пра́чешная

NOTE. In some words, however, the **ч** in **чн** retains its sound :

то́чный,	exact, precise
отлі́чный,	excellent
конѣ́чный,	terminal, final
востóчный,	oriental, eastern
беспѣ́чный,	carefree

- (b) The insertion of a euphonic π after labials б, в, м, п, ф before a 'jotated' vowel (mainly ю, я, е).
- (c) π preceded by a consonant is frequently dropped in the formation of the past tense of verbs if the π is not followed by a vowel.

NOTE 1. Besides the enumerated commutations of consonants, all consonants have a tendency to effect a change in the vocal quality of any other preceding consonant by assimilating it. This is explained in § 12.

NOTE 2. In this manual all the cases of commutation of sounds are clearly indicated throughout.

§ 14. *Stress.*

Having said all about the Russian sounds that the beginner will have to acquire before he sets out on his study of Russian, I must not omit to mention that a certain minimum knowledge of the simpler cases of sentence-stress will be useful to him. In the simplest sentence or word-group there are usually words of greater importance (head-words) and words of lesser importance, or what we shall call subordinate words. To such subordinate words belong prepositions (excepting those enumerated in § 96f), conjunctions, and many pronouns of the shorter type. These subordinate words are usually tacked on to the more important words, and in the process they lose their own stress. The same tendency also exists in English. But in Russian this is of greater importance, seeing that vowels which have no stress sound somewhat differently from the stressed variety. Apart from this, the law of assimilation, which makes a consonant sound either voiced or voiceless, in conformity with the type of consonant that follows it, will extend its operation

also to consonants of a subordinate word in the sentence (see § 13). It is, therefore, not enough to pronounce a word with meticulous care, and hope that by uttering the correct words one after another the whole Russian sentence will turn out correct. If the less important words are given undue prominence the vowel-values will be distorted and the sentence will probably sound very un-Russian. The bare correctness of the pronunciation of individual sounds and single words, without the effort to unify them into a coherent whole, will bear no resemblance to the co-ordinated, well-modulated, and well-knit sounds of living Russian speech.

Until the beginner has learnt a little more Russian it will be safe for him to assume that sentence-stress and sentence-intonation of a simple sentence are much alike in both Russian and English. He will, no doubt, commit blunders, but this will not matter so much as far as sentence-stress is concerned.

The observations on Russian pronunciation in the preceding pages are necessarily of limited scope. For those students who wish to acquaint themselves with a wider scientific treatment of Russian sounds, the excellent 'Manual of Russian Pronunciation,' by S. C. Boyanus (Sidgwick and Jackson), is recommended. The subject-matter of the work is treated on phonetic principles and is phonetically transcribed. It contains useful hints on word stress and sentence intonation.

§ 14a. *Hard Consonants and Open Vowels.* (See §§ 9-10.)

ба	бо	бу	бы	ба́ба	ха́та	ма́ло
ва	во	ву	вы	бо́бы	изба́	ло́ма
га	го	гу	—	гу́ба	па́па	са́жа
да	до	ду	ды	ду́бы	ма́ма	коза́
жа	жо	жу	—	ду́ба	ма́ло	она́
за	зо	зу	зы	во́зы	мы́ло	зако́н
ка	ко	ку	—	во́за	бра́т	па́ра

ла	ло	лу	лы	лугá	хват	порá
ма	мо	му	мы	гóды	лáпа	рáна
на	но	ну	ны	—	лáпы	рáно
па	по	пу	пы	дугá	пáла	нáра
ра	ро	ру	ры	дугú	пáло	норá
са	со	су	сы	водá	упáла	носú
та	то	ту	ты	бузá	мукá	судá
ха	хо	ху	—	кóла	кумá	судú
ца	цо	цу	цы	колý	мýка	мáку

тó-то	нáдо	хúдо	плýла	вожý
сáло	данó	худá	плýло	бужý
лосá	рукá	ножý[ы]	выл	дул
рáды	кúры	ножá	слýт	гул
рáда	худá	корá	рынок	тумán
гóда	óба	кáра	пылáл	болвán
годá	жук	рáса	пылáла	кóлокол
два	лук	росá	кудý	колоколá
рýло	сук	суп	рáды	болóто
мýло	хам	глуп	рад	мóлот
вýла	нам	мýза	рáда	хóбот
дыбý	дáром	мýзы	кулáк	плуг
вы́бор	пáром	копы́то	дúмал	друг
двум	парóм	лы́ко	дúмала	слух
ры́ба	дúха	унýло	кудá	мýха
дырá	дúху	плыл	дурáк	дух

NOTE 1. Unstressed *a* and *o* have the indefinite sound of the first *o* in the English word *Morocco*. Unstressed *y* sounds as the English *u* in *put*. Stressed *a* sounds as the English *a* in *ah*; stressed *o* sounds as the English *aw* in *saw*; stressed *y* sounds as the English *oo* in *doom*. For the correct sound of **ы** see § 1.

NOTE 2. It is essential that the student should become thoroughly acquainted with the pronunciation of Russian sounds as set out in §§ 1-14 before he attempts to read the reading exercises.

NOTE 3. There is only one stress-centre in a Russian word: the accented vowel. This should be vigorously and *resonantly* sounded.

§ 14b. *Palatalized Consonants with Open and Close Vowels.*
(See §§ 8-9.)

бя = б'а ¹	бе = б'э	бѐ = б'о	би = б'и
вя = в'а	ве = в'э	вѐ = в'о	ви = в'и
			ги = г'и
дя = д'а	де = д'э	дѐ = д'о	ди = д'и
			жи = ж'и
зя = з'а	зе = з'э	зѐ = з'о	зи = з'и
			ки = к'и
ля = л'а	ле = л'э	лѐ = л'о	ли = л'и
мя = м'а	ме = м'э	мѐ = м'о	ми = м'и
ня = н'а	не = н'э	нѐ = н'о	ни = н'и
пя = п'а	пе = п'э	пѐ = п'о	пи = п'и
ря = р'а	ре = р'э	рѐ = р'о	ри = р'и
ся = с'а	се = с'э	сѐ = с'о	си = с'и
тя = т'а	те = т'э	тѐ = т'о	ти = т'и
фя = ф'а	фе = ф'э	фѐ = ф'о	фи = ф'и
			хи = х'и
			ши = ш'и

бю = б'у	ча = ч'а	} These consonants are always soft.
вю = в'у	ща = щ'а	
дю = д'у	чо = ч'о	
зю = з'у	що = щ'о	
лю = л'у	чу = ч'у	
мю = м'у	шу = ш'у	
ню = н'у	че = ч'э	
пю = п'у	ще = щ'э	
рю = р'у		
сю = с'у	же = жэ	} Always hard.
тю = т'у	ше = шэ	
фю = ф'у		

¹ See footnote, p. 13.

б'я = б'я	б'ѣ = б'ѣ	б'е = б'е	б'ю = б'ю
в'я = в'я	в'ѣ = в'ѣ	в'е = в'е	в'ю = в'ю
д'я = д'я	д'ѣ = д'ѣ	д'е = д'е	д'ю = д'ю
з'я = з'я	з'ѣ = з'ѣ	з'е = з'е	з'ю = з'ю
л'я = л'я	л'ѣ = л'ѣ	л'е = л'е	л'ю = л'ю
м'я = м'я	м'ѣ = м'ѣ	м'е = м'е	м'ю = м'ю
н'я = н'я	н'ѣ = н'ѣ	н'е = н'е	н'ю = н'ю
п'я = п'я	п'ѣ = п'ѣ	п'е = п'е	п'ю = п'ю
р'я = р'я	р'ѣ = р'ѣ	р'е = р'е	р'ю = р'ю
с'я = с'я	с'ѣ = с'ѣ	с'е = с'е	с'ю = с'ю
т'я = т'я	т'ѣ = т'ѣ	т'е = т'е	т'ю = т'ю
ф'я = ф'я	ф'ѣ = ф'ѣ	ф'е = ф'е	ф'ю = ф'ю
	ч'ѣ = ч'ѣ	ч'е = ч'е	ч'ю = ч'ю

NOTE. The soft vowels in the above examples retain their 'jot' element as the consonants derive their palatalization from the **ь**. (See §§ 4 and 9e.)

беру́	мясо́	берёза	дядю́
беда́	мёд	бельё́	дяди́
вѣра	мята́	бедня́к	дяде́
бюро́	небо́	бесѣ́ть	тѣтя́
идѣ́м	небо́	бѣднóсть	тѣти́
дѣда́	нет	—	тѣте́
дѣду́	лѣто́	опѣ́нки	тѣтю́
зерно́	летá	котѣ́нок	ня́ня
зѣ́рна	лѣг	—	ня́нню
весна́	ряд	пятно́	ня́ни
верста́	по́дряд	пять	ня́не
ведро́	ся́ду	опя́ть	тя́тя
вѣ́дра	редко́	ведь	тя́тю
ковѣ́р	врѣ́т	вѣ́рять	тя́ти
метла́	тю́к	вѣ́рю	тя́те

мѣ́тла	ути́ог	вѣ́рят	би́ли	дпро́бь
ме́на	Фѣ́дор	мель	ли́ли	кладь
мелка́	фи́га	медь	ви́ли	лазь
ме́ла	фе́рма	лечь	зю́зя	

измѣна	фирма	лень	Фѣдя
	хил	врѣмя	Фѣя
	брюки	весьма	Филей
	хрюкать	вѣчер	плѣмя
		—	сѣмя

стать	стали	дарить	дарит
молотъ	молот	варить	варит
колотъ	колот	варю	варишь } ¹
пѹля	пѹлю	дарю	дарить } ¹
пѹли	пѹле	палить	палю
лупить	луплю	поле	поля
купить	куплю	курѣние	морѣ
кѹпля	кури	лечѣние	моря
курить	курю	вранье	мытье
люблю	любя		

пыль	ковѣль
убыль	прибыль

окунь	корь	знать	конь	мазь
дунь	гарь	падать	ось	даль
дуть	дурь	пасть	брось	тень
грудь	фонарь	класть	кость	выпь
грусть	янтарь	память	боль	высь
пусть	грань	лошадь	жаль	лось
путь	верьте	морковь	вдаль	хоть
мыть	мерьте	церковь	нельзя	
ныть	цель	кровь		
плыть	мель			
	свирель			
	колыбель			

¹ Pronounced as : вариш, дариш. (See § 9d.)

§ 14c. *Diphthongs.*
(See § 7.)

лай	дуй	дóлгий
май	куй	хорóший
пай	плюй	вечéрний
рай	жуй	сíний
лей	ночúй	
пей	бúйный	
грей	густóй	
шей	пустóй	
брей	мéлкий	
мой	мéдный	
свой	плохóй	
твой	гóлый	
	уйти	
	уйдú	

§ 14d. *-ться pronounced
as -тса.*

мýться	=	мы́тса
бры́ться	=	бры́тса
купáться	=	купáтса
одевáться	=	одевáтса
оде́ться	=	оде́тса
обу́ться	=	обу́тса
		etc.

SECTION II

PARTS OF SPEECH

1. NOUNS

§ 15. *Genders, Numbers, and Cases of Nouns.*

1. There are three Genders of Russian nouns : Masculine ; Feminine ; Neuter.
2. Two Numbers : Singular ; Plural.
3. Six Cases : (1) Nominative ; (2) Genitive ; (3) Dative ; (4) Accusative ; (5) Instrumental ; (6) Locative (also called Prepositional).

The cases answer to the questions :

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) <i>Nom.</i> | кто ? что ? | who ? what ? |
| (2) <i>Gen.</i> | кого ? чего ? | whom ? what ? |
| | от кого ? от чего ? | from whom ? from what ? |
| | у кого ? у чего ? | near [of] whom ? near what ? |
| (3) <i>Dat.</i> | кому ? чему ? | to whom ? to what ? |
| (4) <i>Acc.</i> | кого ? что ? | whom ? what ? |
| (5) <i>Instr.</i> | кем ? чем ? | by whom ? by what ? |
| | с кем ? с чем ? | with whom ? with what ? |
| (6) <i>Loc.</i> | в ком ? в чём ? | in whom ? in what ? |
| | на ком ? на чём ? | on whom ? on what ? |

The nominative case is called the direct case ; all the other cases are called the oblique cases. The vocative, or exclamation case, has now been merged in the nominative. Only a few nouns have retained the vocative case :

Бог, God, Бóже !
Госпóдь, Lord, Гóсподи !
Христóс, Christ, Христé !

§ 16. *Functions of Cases.*

The nominative is the 'subject case,' its main function being to supply the subject of the sentence :

брат пи́шет письмó brother writes a letter

The accusative is the 'direct object case'; it serves to complete the meaning of a transitive verb :

я пишу́ письмó I write a letter

The dative serves as an indirect object, in the meaning of : where to, to whom, etc. :

я пишу́ к брату́ I write to (my) brother

The genitive shows that the noun in this case is an adjunct to another noun :

я получи́л письмó брата́ I have received (my) brother's letter

The instrumental case expresses the instrument or manner of action :

я пишу́ перóм I write with a pen

The locative case expresses place :

я живу́ в городе́ I live in town

Both the instrumental and locative cases can be regarded as 'adverb cases.'

§ 17. *How to distinguish the Gender of Nouns.*

The gender of inanimate nouns¹ is distinguished by the termination of the nominative case :

Masculine nouns terminate : (a) in a consonant, (b) in **ь**, (c) in **й** :

го́род, town де́нь, day ча́й, tea

Feminine nouns terminate : (a) in **а**, (b) in **я**, (c) in **ь** :

кни́га, book земл́я, earth ло́шадь, horse

Neuter nouns terminate : (a) in **о**, (b) in **е**, (c) a few words in **мя** :

окно́, window мо́ре, sea и́мя, name

Also the word : дитя́, child

¹ Nouns denoting inanimate things.

Nouns of all genders can be either of the hard group, or of the soft group, according to their case-endings :

	<i>Hard Group</i>	<i>Soft Group</i>
Masculine, ending in a consonant ;		-ь -й
Neuter, „ -о ;		-е -мя
Feminine, „ -а ;		-я -ь

§ 18. Declension of Masculine Nouns.

The terminations of the masculine nouns according to their cases are :

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Hard</i>	<i>Soft</i>	<i>Hard</i>	<i>Soft</i>
<i>Nom.</i> —	-ь, -й	<i>Nom.</i> -ы	-и
<i>Gen.</i> -а	-я	<i>Gen.</i> -ов	-ей, -ев
<i>Dat.</i> -у	-ю	<i>Dat.</i> -ам	-ям
<i>Acc.</i> ¹ — or -а	-ь, -й or -я	<i>Acc.</i> ¹ -ы or -ов	-и, -ей, -ев
<i>Instr.</i> -ом	-ем [-ём]	<i>Instr.</i> -ами	-ями
<i>Loc.</i> -е	-е	<i>Loc.</i> -ах	-ях

See note 1, p. 30.

Examples :

		<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	стол (table)	замок (lock)	кон-ь (horse)	сарá-й (shed)
<i>Gen.</i>	стол-á	замк-á	кон-я́	сарá-я
<i>Dat.</i>	стол-у́	замк-у́	кон-ю́	сарá-ю
<i>Acc.</i>	стол	замо́к	кон-я́	сарá-й
<i>Instr.</i>	стол-о́м	замк-о́м	кон-ё́м	сарá-е́м
<i>Loc.</i>	стол-е́	замк-е́	кон-е́	сарá-е

		<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	стол-и́	замк-и́	ко́н-и	сарá-и
<i>Gen.</i>	стол-о́в	замк-о́в	кон-е́й	сарá-ев
<i>Dat.</i>	стол-а́м	замк-а́м	кон-я́м	сарá-ям
<i>Acc.</i>	стол-и́	замк-и́	кон-е́й	сарá-и
<i>Instr.</i>	стол-а́ми	замк-а́ми	кон-я́ми	сарá-ями
<i>Loc.</i>	стол-а́х	замк-а́х	кон-я́х	сарá-ях

NOTE 1. The accusative of inanimate nouns is the same as the nominative in both singular and plural :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> }	стол	сто́лы
<i>Acc.</i> }		

In animate nouns¹ the accusative has the same termination as the genitive in both singular and plural :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ко́нь	ко́ни
<i>Acc.</i>	ко́ня	ко́не́й

But if the accusative of an inanimate noun forms the direct object in a sentence having a negative predicate, the genitive takes the place of the accusative :

Я не купил стола́ I did not buy the table

NOTE 2. Masculine nouns ending in **ь** have the termination **ей** in the genitive plural. But those ending in **ай, яй, ой, ей, уй** take the termination **ев** or **ёв**.

Example :

<i>Masc. sing.</i>	<i>Gen. pl.</i>
ко́нь	ко́не́й
са́ра́й	са́ра́ев
ча́й	чаёв (of various sorts of tea)

NOTE 3. As **г, к, х** cannot be followed by **ы**, this vowel is changed into **и** in the declension of nouns ending in these three letters :

кни́га, book,	кни́ги	{ <i>Gen. sing.</i>
		{ <i>Nom. pl.</i>

NOTE 4. Masculine nouns ending in **ч, щ**, although soft (ending in a soft consonant), cannot be followed by **я, ю** or **ё**. These are supplanted by **а, у, о** :

плащ, cloak,	плаща́,	плащу́,	плащо́м
врач, physician,	врача́,	врачу́,	врачо́м

¹ Nouns denoting living beings.

All nouns ending in **ж, ш, ч, щ** have the termination **ей** in the genitive plural. They are never followed by **ы, я, ю, ё**. The place of these vowels is taken by **и, а, у, о**.

плащ,	плащй, (<i>Nom. pl.</i>)	плащей (<i>Gen. pl.</i>)
врач,	врачй,	врачей
нож, knife,	ножй,	ножей
шалаш, hut,	шалашй,	шалашей

NOTE 5. Masculine nouns ending in **ц** have the genitive plural termination **ев** if this syllable is not accented, but **ов** if it is accented :

палец, finger,	пальцев ¹
конец, end,	концов ²

§ 19. *Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Masculine Nouns.*

Very often the **o** or the **e** in the final syllable of the nominative singular disappears in the oblique cases. (See § 13a.)

палец		конец	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> палец	пальц-ы	<i>Nom.</i> конец	конц-ы
<i>Gen.</i> пальц-а	пальц-ев	<i>Gen.</i> конц-а	конц-ов
<i>Dat.</i> пальц-у	пальц-ам	<i>Dat.</i> конц-у	конц-ам
<i>Acc.</i> палец	пальц-ы	<i>Acc.</i> конец	конц-ы
<i>Instr.</i> пальц-ем	пальц-ами	<i>Instr.</i> конц-ом	конц-ами
<i>Loc.</i> пальц-е	пальц-ах	<i>Loc.</i> конц-е	конц-ах

NOTE 1. The **o** and **e** are retained in declension in words which would be difficult to pronounce if these vowels were dropped, thus :

кузнѣц, blacksmith,	кузнеца	} -цѹ, -цѡм, -цѣ
мертвѣц, dead body,	мертвеца	
потѡк, stream,	потѡка	} -ку, -ком, -ке
урѡк, lesson,	урѡка	

¹ The **e** of the nominative singular is changed into **ь** (after an **л**).

² The **e** of the nominative singular disappears altogether.

NOTE 2. The vowel *e* after *л* in the last syllable of the nominative singular usually changes into *ь* in the oblique cases.

If the vowel *e* in the last syllable of the nominative singular is preceded by another vowel, it changes into *й* in the oblique cases :

наём, hire,	наймá	} -ý, -óm, -é
заём, loan,	займá	
боёц, fighter,	бойцá	
заяц [záец], ¹ hare,	зáйца	
		-y, -em, -e

Nouns terminating in *ей* change the *e* into *ь* in the oblique cases :

воробей, sparrow,	воробья́, -ью́, -ьём, -ьё
соловей, nightingale,	соловья́, -ью́, -ьём, -ьё
ручей, stream,	ручья́, -ью́, -ьём, -ьё
муравей, ant,	муравья́, -ью́, -ьём, -ьё

§ 20. *Irregular Terminations in the Declension of some Masculine Nouns.*

(1) Some masculine nouns, such as :

чай, tea	таба́к, tobacco
са́хар, sugar	минда́ль, almonds

take an *y* or *ю* in the genitive singular if the noun is used in the sense of a portion of, or some of it :

some tea,	ча́ю	instead of	ча́я
some sugar,	са́хару	„	са́хара
some tobacco,	табако́у	„	табака́
some almonds,	миндалю́	„	миндаля́

This 'quantitative' form is only used when the noun is used in a partitive sense. Otherwise the legitimate ending of *а, я* for the genitive singular is retained.

¹ As an unaccented *я* sounds as *e*, this noun is classed in the same category by analogy.

A few other masculine nouns have also the tendency to take *y* in the genitive singular in the following expressions :

мнóго нарóду, many people
 без тóлку, without sense
 с вéрху, from the top
 с нíзу, from underneath

(hence the adverbs : снíзу, свéрху)

(2) In a number of monosyllabic masculine nouns the locative case ends in *ý*, *ю* instead of *e*, but only when they are preceded by the prepositions *в* and *на* :

в лесý, in the forest на полý, on the floor
 в годý, in the year на льдý, on the ice
 в садý, in the garden на берéрý, on the shore (of sea)
 в снегý, in the snow or bank of river
 в бою, in battle
 в раю, in heaven (paradise)

(3) A number of masculine nouns terminating in a consonant take an accented *á* as their case-ending for the nominative plural instead of *ы*, *и* :

Nom. Sing.

рукáв, sleeve
 бéрег, shore, bank of river
 глаз, eye
 рог, horn
 гóрод, town
 лес, forest
 гóлос, voice
 дом, house
 кóлокол, bell

Nom. Pl.

рукавá
 берегá
 глазá
 рогá
 городá
 лесá
 голосá
 домá
 колоколá

Also a few nouns of foreign origin :

дóктор, doctor
 профéссор, professor
 кúчер, coachman

докторá
 профессорá
 кучерá

(4) Some masculine nouns have both endings in the nominative plural : **ы** and **а**. The different endings usually denote different meanings :

хлѣбы, loaves of bread	хлѣба, grain (various kinds)
цвѣты, flowers	цвѣта, colours
мехи, bellows	меха, furs

(5) Some masculine nouns take **ья** as the termination for nominative plural. The other cases also retain the **ь** :

Nom. -ья; *Gen.* -ьев; *Dat.* -ьям;

Instr. -ьями; *Loc.* -ьях

брат, brother,	брат-ья,	брат-ьев,	брат-ьям
камень, stone,	камен-ья,	камен-ьев,	камен-ьям
стул, chair,	стул-ья,	стул-ьев,	стул-ьям
сук, bough,	суч-ья,	суч-ьев,	суч-ьям
уголь, coal,	угол-ья,	угол-ьев,	угол-ьев
лист, leaf,	лист-ья,	лист-ьев,	лист-ьям

Instr. -ьями, *Loc.* -ьях

(6) The following masculine nouns are declined in the same manner, with the exception of genitive plural, which takes **ей** (not **ьев**) :

друг, friend,	друз-ья,	друз-ей,	друз-ьям
князь, prince,	княз-ья,	княз-ей,	княз-ьям
муж, husband,	муж-ья,	муж-ей,	муж-ьям
зять, son-in-law,	зят-ья,	зят-ей,	зят-ьям

Instr. -ьями, *Loc.* -ьях

The nouns : **сын** (son), **кум** (godfather, gossip) take the suffix **ов** besides **ья** in the plural :

сын-ов-ья,	сын-ов-ей,	сын-ов-ьям
кум-ов-ья,	кум-ов-ей,	кум-ов-ьям

Instr. -ов-ьями, *Loc.* -ов-ьях

(7) The nouns **сосѣд** (neighbour), **чорт** [чѣрт] (devil),

are declined as hard nouns in the singular, but as soft nouns in the plural :

<i>Nom.</i>	сосѣд-и,	чѣрт-и
<i>Gen.</i>	сосѣд-ей,	чѣрт-ѣй
<i>Dat.</i>	сосѣд-ям,	чѣрт-ѣм
<i>Acc.</i>	сосѣд-ей,	чѣрт-ѣй
<i>Instr.</i>	сосѣд-ями,	чѣрт-ѣми
<i>Loc.</i>	сосѣд-ях,	чѣрт-ѣх

(8) Most masculine nouns ending in *ин* (usually denoting a person of a certain nationality or calling) drop this termination in all the cases of the plural, taking *e* or *a* for the nominative plural (occasionally *ы*) :

		<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>
рѣмлян-ин,	Roman	рѣмлян-е	рѣмлян
англичан-ин,	Englishman	англичан-е	англичан
христиан-ин,	Christian	христиан-е	христиан
граждан-ин,	citizen	граждан-е	граждан
		[граждан-е]	
крестьян-ин,	peasant	крестьян-е	крестьян
татар-ин,	Tartar	татар-ы	татар
		[татар-е]	
болгар-ин,	Bulgarian	болгар-ы	болгар
		[болгар-е]	
бар-ин,	squire	бар-е	бар
господ-ин,	master	господ-а	господ
	gentleman		
хозя-ин,	master	хозя-ев-а ¹	хозя-ев

Dat. -ам ; *Acc.* as *Gen.* ; *Instr.* -ами ; *Loc.* -ах

(9) A few masculine nouns have the same form in the genitive plural as in the nominative singular :

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
волос, hair	волос
драгун, dragoon	драгун
турок, Turk	турок

¹ The suffix *ев* is inserted throughout the plural.

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>		<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
солд́ат,	soldier	солд́ат
глаз,	eye	глаз
арши́н,	arshin (measure)	арши́н
саже́нь,	3 arshin measure	са́жен (also сажене́й)
челове́к,	man	челове́к ¹
раз,	time (in the sense : once, twice, etc.)	раз
чуло́к,	stocking	чуло́к
цыга́н,	gipsy	цыга́н
каде́т,	cadet	каде́т
(10) <i>Nom.</i> Госпо́д-ъ (Lord)		Христ-о́с (Christ)
<i>Gen.</i>	Господ-а	Христ-а́
<i>Dat.</i>	Господ-у	Христ-у́
<i>Acc.</i>	Господ-а	Христ-а́
<i>Instr.</i>	Господ-ом	Христ-о́м
<i>Loc.</i>	Господ-е	Христ-е́

§ 21. *The Russian Accent as it affects the Parts of Speech.*

In the chapter on Russian sounds (§§ 5, 11, 14) the student's attention has been drawn to the importance of the accent for the correct pronunciation of Russian words, and for the correct fusing of the individual sounds that go to make up the words themselves. As the accent has a tendency to shift from one syllable to another in the declension of nouns and conjugation of verbs, the student will have to form the habit of pronouncing the words in each case with the right stress due to the respective form of the word. As it is impossible to give the numerous and various instances of accent-shifting within the scope of this work, the author has to confine himself to a few hints on the main types of accent-shifting, giving only a limited number

¹ This form of the genitive plural is used if it is preceded by a number:
 пять челове́к, five people ; не́сколько челове́к, a few people ;
 but : мно́го люде́й, many people (*Nom.* лю́ди). (See § 54b.)

of examples. For the rest the student will have to fall back on accented texts, and to make a point of memorizing the diverse changes of accents in words. As a more detailed guide to the Russian accent, relating to all the parts of speech, and containing extensive lists of the most essential words used in the Russian language, the author would recommend his work, 'A Guide to the Russian Accent' (published by David Nutt). This work shows at a glance the manifold variations of the accent as they affect the morphological changes of all parts of speech.

§ 22. *The Accent in the Declension of Masculine Nouns.*
(See §§ 18-20.)

A great number of masculine nouns retain the accent on the same syllable in all the cases of both singular and plural :

вóрон, raven, вóрона, -y, -ом, -ы, etc.
вопрóс, question, вопрóса, -y, -ом, -ы, etc.

In many instances, however, the accent is shifted in declension from the stem to the case-endings. The shifting of the accent in such instances is usually effected in this manner :

(1) Shifting begins with the genitive singular and extends to all the cases of both singular and plural (excepting accusative singular where the noun denotes an inanimate object, in which case the accusative is the same as the nominative).

<i>Singular</i>					
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>
топóр, axe		топорá	-ý	-óм	-é
столя́р, joiner		столяра́	-ý	-óм	-é
плод, fruit		плода́	-ý	-óм	-é

<i>Plural</i>					
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>
топоры́		-óв	-áм	-áми	-áх
столяры́		-óв	-áм	-áми	-áх
плоды́		-óв	-áм	-áми	-áх

To this accent-type belong a number of simple, mainly monosyllabic, masculine nouns ; also nouns terminating in ун, ж, ч, ш ; and many nouns with an accented vowel before the final consonant, such as ending in : ёц, ѣк, ѣк, ѣж, ѣч.

конѣц, end	старѣк, old man	дурак, fool
морѣк, sailor	мѣтѣж, mutiny	богѣч, rich man

(2) Shifting begins with the nominative plural, extending to all the cases of the plural (the accent of the oblique cases of the singular remains on the same syllable as in the nominative singular) :

	<i>Nom. Pl.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>
дар, gift	дарѣ	-ѣв	-ѣм	-ѣми	-ѣх
вѣчер, evening	вѣчерѣ				

NOTE. To this accent-type belong all the masculine nouns which take ѣ, ѣ as the termination of the nominative plural. (See § 20, group 3.)

(3) Shifting begins with the genitive plural, extending to the remaining cases of the plural. (All the cases of the singular, and nominative plural, have the accent on the stem ; if the noun denotes an inanimate object the accusative plural is the same as the nominative plural) :

	<i>Singular</i>				
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>	
волк, wolf	-ѣ	-у	-ѣм	-ѣ	
голубѣ, pigeon	-ѣ	-ю	-ѣм	-ѣ	

	<i>Plural</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>	
волки	-ѣв	-ѣм	-ѣми	-ѣх	
голуби	-ѣѣ	-ѣм	-ѣми	-ѣх	

(4) Shifting begins with the genitive singular, extending to all the cases of singular and plural, *but with the exception of nominative plural* :

		<i>Singular</i>			
		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>
ГВОЗДЬ, nail	}	-я́	-ю́	-ѣм	-ѣ
КОНЬ, horse					
		<i>Plural</i>			
		<i>Nom. Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>
ГВОЗДИ	}	-ѣи́	-я́м	-я́ми	-я́х
КОНИ					

§ 23. Declension of Neuter Nouns.

Neuter nouns terminate in о, е, ѣ, and a few in мя :

		<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Hard</i>	<i>Soft</i>	<i>Hard</i>	<i>Soft</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	-о	-е, -ѣ	-а	-я	
<i>Gen.</i>	-а	-я, -ѣ	— ¹	-ей	
<i>Dat.</i>	-у	-ю, -ѹ	-ам	-ям	
<i>Acc.</i>	-о	-е, -ѣ	-а	-я	
<i>Instr.</i>	-ом	-ем, -ѣм	-ами	-ями	
<i>Loc.</i>	-е	-е, -ѣ	-ах	-ях	

Note that the terminations of the oblique cases of both singular and plural of neuter nouns are identical with those of masculine nouns. (Except in gen. pl.)

Examples :

			<i>Singular</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	дѣл-о (affair)	пѳл-е (field)	ружь-ѣ (rifle)
<i>Gen.</i>	дѣл-а	пѳл-я	ружь-я́
<i>Dat.</i>	дѣл-у	пѳл-ю	ружь-ю́
<i>Acc.</i>	дѣл-о	пѳл-е	ружь-ѣ
<i>Instr.</i>	дѣл-ом	пѳл-ем	ружь-ѣм
<i>Loc.</i>	дѣл-е	пѳл-е	ружь-ѣ

¹ The same as stem.

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	дел-а	пол-я	ружь-я
<i>Gen.</i>	дел	пол-ей	руже-й
<i>Dat.</i>	дел-ам	пол-ям	ружь-ям
<i>Acc.</i>	дел-а	пол-я	ружь-я
<i>Instr.</i>	дел-ами	пол-ями	ружь-ями
<i>Loc.</i>	дел-ах	пол-ях	ружь-ях

§ 24. NOTE 1. *Fleeting o, e.*

The vowels *o, e* are occasionally inserted in the genitive plural before the end-consonant of the stem for the sake of euphony :

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>		<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
зло,	evil	зол
дно,	bottom	дон
кольцо,	ring	ко́лец (note : <i>ь</i> changes into <i>e</i>)
окно́,	window	о́кон
се́рдце,	heart	серде́ц
око́шко,	window	око́шек
сте́кло,	glass, pane	сте́кол
крéсло,	arm-chair	крéсел
ведро́,	bucket	ве́дер
письмо́,	letter	пи́сем (<i>ь</i> changes into <i>e</i>)

§ 25. NOTE 2.

Neuter nouns ending in *ие* (mainly belonging to the large class of abstract nouns derived from verbs) have the terminations *ии* for locative singular and *ий* for genitive plural :

	<i>Loc. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
гуля́н-ие, walk, promenade	гуля́н-ии	гуля́н-ий
имéн-ие, estate	имéн-ии	имéн-ий
желáн-ие, wish	желáн-ии	желáн-ий

Neuter nouns ending in *ье* have the termination of *ьев* for their genitive plural :

	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
плать-е, clothes	плать-ев
кушань-е, food	кушань-ев

§ 26. NOTE 3.

Some neuter nouns take the termination of masculine nouns in the nominative plural :

плечо́, shoulder	плéчи, плеч, плечáм, -áми, -áх
дно́, bottom	дны [also дóнья]
яблоко́, apple	яблоки (<i>gen.</i> яблок and яблоков)
словéчко, little word, mot	словéчки (<i>gen.</i> словéчек)
очко́, eye, bud; point in games	очки (<i>gen.</i> очко́в), eye-glasses

Augmentative masculine nouns terminating in *ище* are treated as masculine nouns, and they follow the soft masculine declension. An exception presents the word *кладбище* (churchyard), which is a pure neuter noun and belongs to the soft neuter class.

§ 26a. NOTE 4.

A few neuter nouns have some irregularities in the declension of their plural :

	<i>Nom. Pl.</i>	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Inst.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>	
(1) око, eye (only used in poetic expressions)	óчи	очéй,	-áм,	-áми,	-áх	
ухо, ear	у́ши	уше́й,	-áм,	-áми,	-áх	
колéно {	1. tribe	1. колéна	колéн,	-ам,	-ами,	-ах
	2. knee	2. колéни	колéней,	-ям,	-ями,	-ях
	3. link	3. колéнья	колéньев,	-ьям,	-ьями,	-ьях

дерево, tree	дерёвья	дерёвьев	} -ьям, -ьями, -ьях
перо, pen,	перья	перьев	
nib			
крыло, wing	крылья	крыльев	
шило, awl	шилья	шильев	

(2) *не́бо* (heaven) and *чу́до* (miracle) have the suffix *ec* inserted in all the cases of the plural :

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	не́б-о	чу́д-о	неб-ес-а́ чуд-ес-а́
<i>Gen.</i>	не́б-а	чу́д-а	неб-ёс чуд-ёс
<i>Dat.</i>	не́б-у	чу́д-у	неб-ес-а́м чуд-ес-а́м
<i>Acc.</i>	не́б-о	чу́д-о	неб-ес-а́ чуд-ес-а́
<i>Instr.</i>	не́б-ом	чу́д-ом	неб-ес-а́ми чуд-ес-а́ми
<i>Loc.</i>	не́б-е	чу́д-е	неб-ес-а́х чуд-ес-а́х

(3) A few soft neuter nouns ending in *мя*, and *дитя́* (child),¹ have irregular case-endings both in the singular and plural :

(a)	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	(b)	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	дитя́	де́т-и		вре́м-я	врем-ен-а́
<i>Gen.</i>	дитя́-ти	дет-е́й		вре́м-ен-и	врем-ён
<i>Dat.</i>	дитя́-ти	де́т-ям		вре́м-ен-и	врем-ен-а́м
<i>Acc.</i>	дитя́	дет-е́й		вре́м-я	врем-ен-а́
<i>Instr.</i>	дитя́-тею	дет-ьми́		вре́м-ен-ем	врем-ен-а́ми
	[дитёй]	[де́т-ями]			
<i>Loc.</i>	дитя́-ти	де́т-ях		вре́м-ен-и	врем-ен-а́х

To group (a) can be added a number of nouns denoting the young offspring of animals. They have the suffix *ёнок* [or *онюк* after a root ending in *к* or *д*, which are commuted into *ч* or *ж*]. Their plurals take *ята* or *ята́*. The singular is declined as a masculine noun, dropping the *о* before the *к*; the plural is treated as that of a neuter noun :

¹ In colloquial speech *ребёнок* is more frequently used.

Singular

	(foal)	(wolf cub)	(bear cub)	(puppy)
<i>Nom.</i>	жереб-ёнок	волч-ёнок ¹	медвеж-ёнок ¹	щ-енёк
<i>Gen.</i>	жереб-ёнк-а	волч-ёнк-а	медвеж-ёнк-а	щ-енк-а
<i>Dat.</i>	жереб-ёнк-у	волч-ёнк-у	медвеж-ёнк-у	щ-енк-у
<i>Acc.</i>	жереб-ёнк-а	волч-ёнк-а	медвеж-ёнк-а	щ-енк-а
<i>Instr.</i>	жереб-ёнк-ом	волч-ёнк-ом	медвеж-ёнк-ом	щ-енк-ом
<i>Loc.</i>	жереб-ёнк-е	волч-ёнк-е	медвеж-ёнк-е	щ-енк-е

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	жереб-ят-а	волч-ят-а	медвеж-ят-а	щ-ен-ята [щенки]
<i>Gen.</i>	жереб-ят	волч-ят	медвеж-ят	щ-ен-ят
<i>Dat.</i>	жереб-ят-ам	волч-ят-ам	медвеж-ят-ам	щ-ен-ят-ам
<i>Acc.</i>	жереб-ят	волч-ят	медвеж-ят	щ-ен-ят
<i>Instr.</i>	жереб-ят-ами	волч-ят-ами	медвеж-ят-ами	щ-ен-ят-ами
<i>Loc.</i>	жереб-ят-ах	волч-ят-ах	медвеж-ят-ах	щ-ен-ят-ах

NOTE. By analogy a child is also called ребёнок, *pl.* ребята. It conforms to the above mode of declension.

To this class belong :

поросёнок, sucking pig	цыплёнок, chicken
ослёнок, foal of an ass	телёнок, calf
ягнёнок, lamb	котёнок, kitten
	etc.

According to group (3) (b) are declined the following neuter nouns ending in *мя* :

бремя, burden (used only in the singular)
плёмя, tribe
тёмя, crown of the head (used only in the singular)
сёмя, seed (<i>gen. pl.</i> семян)
стрёмя, stirrup (<i>gen. pl.</i> стремян)
знамя, banner
пламя, flame (used only in the singular)
имя, name
вымя, udder

¹ Also : волчёнок, медвежёнок.

§ 27. *The Accent as it affects the Declension of Neuter Nouns.*

(1) (a) Polysyllabic nouns terminating in *o* and *e*, with the last syllable unaccented, retain the accent of the nominative singular in all the cases of both singular and plural :

заня́тие,	occupation, -я, -ю, -ем, -и
му́жество,	manliness, -а, -у, -ом, -е
	courage
жили́ще,	habitation, -а, -у, -ем, -е
простра́нство,	space, -а, -у, -ом, -е
But : { зѣркало,	mirror (shifts the accent to the case-
	ending in the plural)
{ о́зеро,	lake (shifts the accent to the
	second syllable in the plural)

<i>Nom.</i>	зерка́ла	озѣ́ра
<i>Gen.</i>	зерка́л	озѣ́р
<i>Dat.</i>	зерка́лам	озѣ́рам
<i>Acc.</i>	зерка́ла	озѣ́ра
<i>Instr.</i>	зерка́лами	озѣ́рами
<i>Loc.</i>	зерка́лах	озѣ́рах

(b) If the terminations *o* and *e* in polysyllabic neuter nouns are accented, the accent is on the case-endings in declension:

боже́ство, Deity	{	<i>Sing.</i>	-а́, -у́, -о́м, -е́
серебро́, ¹ silver		<i>Pl.</i>	-а́, -а́м, -а́ми, -а́х
лезве́е, sharp edge			-я́, -я́м, -я́ми, -я́х

Exceptions are the following nouns, terminating in accented *o* and *e*, which shift the accent back by one syllable in the entire plural :

верете́но, spindle,	верете́на,	веретѣ́н	{	-ам, -ами, -ах
долото́, chisel,	долото́та,	долото́т		
колесо́, wheel,	колѣ́са,	колѣ́с		
решето́, sieve,	решѣ́та,	решѣ́т		
ружьѣ́, rifle,	ружьѣ́я,	ружьѣ́й		-ѣ́ям, -ѣ́ями, -ѣ́ях

¹ Has no plural.

(2) (a) Dissyllabic nouns in *o* and *e*, with the accent on the first syllable in the nominative singular, retain the accent on the same syllable in all the cases of the singular; in the plural the accent is shifted to the case-ending:

Singular		Plural	
сло́во, word,	сло́ва	словá, слов	-áм, -áми,
мѣсто, place, мѣста	-у, -ом, -е	мѣстá, мѣст	-áх
по́ле, field, по́ля	-ю, -ем, -е	полѣя, полѣй	-я́м, -я́ми,
мо́ре, sea, мо́ря		морѣя, морѣй	-я́х

(b) Dissyllabic nouns in *o* and *e*, with the accent on the last syllable in the nominative singular, retain the same accent in all the cases of the singular; in the plural the accent is shifted back to the first syllable:

Singular		Plural	
селó, village		сѣла	
гнѣздó, nest	-á, -ý, -óm, -é	гнѣзда	-ам, -ами, -ах
лицó, face		лица	

(3) Neuter nouns terminating in *мя* retain the accent of the nominative singular in all the cases of the singular; in the plural the accent falls on the case-endings. (See § 26a.)

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	йм-я	плѣм-я	им-ен-á	плем-ен-á
Gen.	йм-ен-и	плѣм-ен-и	им-ѣн	плем-ѣн
Dat.	йм-ен-и	плѣм-ен-и	им-ен-áм	плем-ен-áм
Acc.	йм-я	плѣм-я	им-ен-á	плем-ен-á
Instr.	йм-ен-ем	плѣм-ен-ем	им-ен-áми	плем-ен-áми
Loc.	йм-ен-и	плѣм-ен-и	им-ен-áх	плем-ен-áх

Exception:

Nom.	знáм-я (banner)	знам-ѣн-а
Gen.	знáм-ен-и	знам-ѣн
Dat.	знáм-ен-и	знам-ѣн-ам
Acc.	знáм-я	знам-ѣн-а
Instr.	знáм-ен-ем	знам-ѣн-ами
Loc.	знáм-ен-и	знам-ѣн-ах

§ 28. Declension of Feminine Nouns.

Feminine nouns terminating in *а, я* take the following case-endings in singular and plural :

Singular		Plural	
Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft
Nom. -а	-я	-ы	-и
Gen. -ы	-и	— ¹	-ь
Dat. -е	-е	-ам	-ям
Acc. -у	-ю	-ы	-и
Instr. -ою [-ой]	-ею [-ей] -ёю [-ёй]	-ами	-ями
Loc. -е	-е	-ах	-ях

Examples :

Nom. вод-á (water)	ба́н-я (bath)	во́д-ы	ба́н-и
Gen. вод-ы́	ба́н-и	вод	ба́н-ь
Dat. вод-е́	ба́н-е	вод-а́м	ба́н-я́м
Acc. во́д-у	ба́н-ю	во́д-ы	ба́н-и
Instr. вод-о́ю [-о́й]	ба́н-ею [-ей]	вод-а́ми	ба́н-я́ми
Loc. вод-е́	ба́н-е	вод-а́х	ба́н-я́х

NOTE 1. Animate feminine nouns have the same case-ending in the accusative plural as in the genitive plural :

ба́ба, peasant woman	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gen. pl.} \\ \text{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$	баб
ры́ба, fish	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gen. pl.} \\ \text{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$	рыб
коза́, she-goat	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gen. pl.} \\ \text{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$	коз
сестра́, sister	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gen. pl.} \\ \text{acc. pl.} \end{array} \right\}$	сестёр

NOTE 2. As *но* *ы* can stand after *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ*, its place is taken by *и* in genitive singular and nominative plural :

¹ As the stem.

		<i>Gen. Sing.</i>	<i>Nom. Pl.</i>
рука́,	hand	руки́	ру́ки
нога́,	leg	ноги́	но́ги
рубáха,	shirt	рубáхи	рубáхи
свечá,	candle	свечи́	свѣ́чи
но́ша,	load	но́ши	но́ши
ро́ща,	copse	ро́щи	ро́щи

NOTE 3. Feminine nouns terminating in **ая**, **ея** have the case-endings **ай** and **ей** in genitive plural :

	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
ста́я, flock, esp. birds	стай
змея́, snake	змей
шея́, neck	шей

NOTE 4. Instrumental terminations **ою**, **ею**, **ёю** are frequently shortened into **ой**, **ей**, **ёй**, and are pronounced as a diphthong.

§ 29. *Fleeting o and e in the Declension of Feminine Nouns.*

If the stem¹ of a feminine noun ends in a double consonant, **о** or **е** is inserted in the genitive plural before the end-consonant for ease of pronunciation :

	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
овца́, sheep	ове́ц
доска́, board	досо́к
ру́чка, penholder, or small hand	ру́чек
ко́шка, cat	ко́шек
игла́, needle	и́гол
сосна́, pine-tree	со́сен
ку́кла, doll	ку́кол
земля́, earth	земѣ́ль
пáлка, stick	па́лок
сестра́, sister	сестѣ́р

When a feminine noun ends in **ня**, the genitive plural often

¹ Word without case-ending or other inflexion.

has an inserted *o* or *e* before the *н*; the soft sign *ь* is dropped and the final *н* is hard :

		<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
бáсня,	fable	бáсен
пéсня,	song	пéсен
кúхня,	kitchen	кúхон (but also кúхонь)
сóтня,	a hundred	сóтен
бáшня,	tower	бáшен
but: бáрышня,	young lady	бáрышень
дерéвня,	village	деревéнь

й and *ь* in penultimate syllable of nominative singular are changed into *e* in genitive plural :

	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
свáдьба, wedding	свáдеб
судьбá, fate	судéб
ня́нька, nursemaid	ня́нек
ше́йка, little neck	ше́ек
ле́йка, watering-can	ле́ек
копéйка, copeck	копéек
ча́йка, sea-gull	ча́ек

§ 30. Some Irregularities in the Declension of Feminine Nouns.

(1) A number of masculine nouns have terminations of feminine nouns. These are declined as feminine nouns, although they retain their masculine character and meaning :

дядя, uncle	юноша, youth
судья, judge	слугá, servant
Коля ¹ : diminutive of Николай	
Саша ¹ : diminutive of Александр ; etc.	

When such nouns are used with an adjective or pronoun the adjective or pronoun takes the respective masculine terminations: **ый, ий, ой** :

мой дядя, my uncle	ста́рый слугá, old servant
наш судья, our judge	

¹ Diminutives of names of persons (*masc.* and *fem.*) end in *я* (or *а* after ж, ч, ш, щ).

(2) A large number of feminine nouns terminating in **ня** have the case-ending **ни** for dative and locative singular and **ий** for genitive plural :

	<i>Dat. and Loc. Sing.</i>	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
ли́ния, line	ли́нии	ли́ний
импе́рия, empire	импе́рии	импе́рий
ли́лия, lily	ли́лии	ли́лий
мо́лния, lightning	мо́лнии	мо́лний
рели́гия, religion	рели́гии	рели́гий
А́нглия, England	А́нглии	} No plural
Росси́я, Russia	Росси́и	

(3) Feminine nouns ending in **ья** (**я** accented) have the case-ending **ей** in genitive plural :

	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
сви́нья, swine	сви́ней
ска́мья, bench	скаме́й
ста́тья, item, article	стате́й
се́мья, family	семе́й

But those feminine nouns which end in **ья** (**я** not accented) have **ий** as the case-ending of genitive plural :

	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
лгу́нья, liar (female)	лгу́ний
го́стья, lady visitor	го́стий (to distinguish this form from госте́й, which is gen. pl. of гость)

болту́нья, chatterbox болту́ний

(4) Some feminine nouns terminating in **жа, ша, ча, ща** have **ей** in genitive plural :

	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
вожжа́, rein[s]	вожже́й
притча́, parable	притчей
ханжа́, hypocrite	ханже́й
(<i>masc and fem.</i>)	
юноша́, a youth	юношей
(<i>masc.</i>)	
свеча́, candle	свече́й

A few other feminine nouns (in я) also have ей as the case-ending of genitive plural :

		<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
доля,	part	долѣй
заря,	dawn	зарѣй
дядя,	uncle	дядей
(<i>masc.</i>)		
ноздря,	nostril	ноздрѣй
западнѣя,	trap	западнѣй
клешнѣя,	claw	клешнѣй

§ 31. *Feminine Nouns terminating in ѣ.*

Feminine nouns ending in ѣ have a distinctive mode of declension. They are characterized by the case-ending и in genitive, dative, and locative singular. To this class belong a number of simple [original] nouns, such as кость (bone), смерть (death), вѣсть (news, message), etc., as well as the vast class of derivative abstract nouns with the suffix *ость* (mainly derived from adjectives and corresponding to the English suffix *ness*).

Example :

<i>Nom.</i>	двер-ѣ (door)	двер-и
<i>Gen.</i>	двер-и	двер-ѣй
<i>Dat.</i>	двер-и	двер-ѣм
<i>Acc.</i>	двер-ѣ	двер-и
<i>Instr.</i>	двер-ѣю	двер-ѣми [двер-ѣмѣ]
<i>Loc.</i>	двер-и	двер-ѣх

Fleeting о. In feminine nouns ending in ѣ, the letter о before the final consonant of the stem is dropped only in a few nouns. In the singular the cases affected are genitive, dative, locative, and in the plural all the cases :

Singular

<i>Nom.</i>	цѣрков-ѣ (church)	любѡв-ѣ (love)	лож-ѣ (falsehood)	рож-ѣ (rye)
<i>Gen.</i>	цѣркв-и	любв-и	лж-и	рж-и
<i>Dat.</i>	цѣркв-и	любв-и	лж-и	рж-и
<i>Acc.</i>	цѣрков-ѣ	любѡв-ѣ	лож-ѣ	рож-ѣ
<i>Instr.</i>	цѣрков-ѹю	любѡв-ѹю	лож-ѹю	рож-ѹю
<i>Loc.</i>	цѣркв-и	любв-и	лж-и	рж-и

Plural

Plural not used

<i>Nom.</i>	цѣркв-и	} The dative, instrumental, and locative cases are declined according to the hard declension
<i>Gen.</i>	цѣркв-ѣй	
<i>Dat.</i>	цѣркв-ѣм	
<i>Acc.</i>	цѣркв-и	
<i>Instr.</i>	цѣркв-ѣми	
<i>Loc.</i>	цѣркв-ѣх	

NOTE 1. When Любѡвъ denotes the name of a woman, the *o* is retained in all the cases.

NOTE 2. Feminine nouns of the abstract class with the suffix *ость* never drop the *o* in declension.

§ 31a. There is one masculine noun in this class, terminating in *ѣ* :

<i>Nom.</i>	пут-ѣ (road, way)	пут-и
<i>Gen.</i>	пут-и	пут-ѣй
<i>Dat.</i>	пут-и	пут-ѣм
<i>Acc.</i>	пут-ѣ	пут-и
<i>Instr.</i>	пут-ѣм ¹	пут-ѣми
<i>Loc.</i>	пут-и	пут-ѣх

¹ In this case only there is a masculine case-ending.

§ 31b. A number of feminine nouns of the ь class throw their accent on to the case-ending in the locative case if the noun is preceded by the prepositions **в** (in) or **на** (on). The most frequently affected nouns of this class are :

	<i>Locative</i>
глушь, thicket, wilderness	в глуши́
грудь, breast	на груди́
грязь, mud	в грязи́
дверь, door	на дверí
кровь, blood	в кровí
мель, sandbank	на мелí
печь, stove	{на } печí
	{в }
пыль, dust	в пыли́
Русь, Russia	на Руси́
связь, tie	в связи́
соль, salt	в соли́
степь, steppe	в степí
тень, shade	в тенí
цепь, chain	на цепí

§ 31c. Two feminine nouns ending in ь—мать, дочь—have the suffix **ер** inserted in all the cases of both singular and plural, with the exception of nominative and accusative singular :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> дочь-ь	мат-ь	дóч-ер-и мáт-ер-и
<i>Gen.</i> дóч-ер-и	мáт-ер-и	дóч-ер-ей мат-ер-ей
<i>Dat.</i> дóч-ер-и	мáт-ер-и	дóч-ер-ям мат-ер-ям
<i>Acc.</i> дочь-ь	мат-ь	дóч-ер-ей мат-ер-ей
<i>Instr.</i> дóч-ер-ью	мáт-ер-ью	дóч-ер-ьми мат-ер-ьми
		[дóч-ер-я́ми] [мáт-ер-я́ми]
<i>Loc.</i> дóч-ер-и	мáт-ер-и	дóч-ер-я́х мат-ер-я́х

§ 32. *The Accent in the Declension of Feminine Nouns.*

(1) Most feminine nouns ending in а, я, in which the accent of the nominative singular does not fall on the case-ending, have a *fixed* accent which remains on the same syllable in all the cases of both singular and plural. In many feminine nouns the accent is not shifted in declension even when the accent is on the case-ending in nominative singular, particularly in derivative nouns with various inflexions, but also in many simple nouns.

Examples :

княжнá, princess
клеветá, slander

госпожá, mistress
толпá, crowd

(2) When the accent shifts it usually conforms to one of two modes :

- (a) The accent remains on the case-endings in both singular and plural, with the exception of nominative plural, where it goes back to the vowel of the stem :

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	вдовá (widow)	вдóвы	свечá (candle)	свéчи
<i>Gen.</i>	вдовы́	вдов	свечи́	свеч
<i>Dat.</i>	вдовé	вдовáм	свечé	свечáм
<i>Acc.</i>	вдову́	вдов	свечу́	свéчи
<i>Instr.</i>	вдово́ю	вдовáми	свечо́ю	свечáми
<i>Loc.</i>	вдовé	вдовáх	свечé	свечáх

To this group belong the nouns : волнá, wave ; звездá,¹ star ; игрá, play ; иглá, needle ; овцá, sheep ; рекá, river ; свиньá, pig ; сестрá,¹ sister ; слугá, servant ; травá, grass ; судьá, judge.

¹ Can also have the accent on the stem throughout the plural.

- (b) The accent remains on the case-ending in both singular and plural, *with the exception of accusative singular, nominative and accusative plural* :

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	борода́	вода́	боро́ды	во́ды
	(beard)	(water)		
<i>Gen.</i>	боро́ды	во́ды	боро́д	вод
<i>Dat.</i>	боро́де	во́де	боро́дам	во́дам
<i>Acc.</i>	боро́ду	во́ду	боро́ды	во́ды
<i>Instr.</i>	боро́дою	во́дою	боро́дами	во́дами
<i>Loc.</i>	боро́де	во́де	боро́дах	во́дах

To this group belong: голова́, head ; гора́, mountain ; губа́, lip ; доска́, board ; зима́, winter ; нога́, leg ; рука́, hand ; спина́, back ; and many others.

NOTE. The nouns жена́ (wife), тюрьма́ (prison), стрела́ (arrow) have the accent on the case-endings of the singular, but on the first syllable throughout the plural :

	<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	жена́	стрела́	тюрьма́
<i>Gen.</i>	жены́	стрелы́	тюрьмы́
<i>Dat.</i>	жене́	стреле́	тюрьме́
<i>Acc.</i>	жену́	стрелу́	тюрьму́
<i>Instr.</i>	жено́ю	стрело́ю	тюрьмо́ю
<i>Loc.</i>	жене́	стреле́	тюрьме́
	<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	же́ны	стрёлы	тю́рьмы
<i>Gen.</i>	же́н	стрел	тю́рем
<i>Dat.</i>	же́нам	стрёлам	тю́рьмам
<i>Acc.</i>	же́н	стрёлы	тю́рьмы
<i>Instr.</i>	же́нами	стрёлами	тю́рьмами
<i>Loc.</i>	же́нах	стрёлах	тю́рьмах

- (3) In a few feminine nouns terminating in **ь**, the accent remains, in all the cases of both singular and plural, on

the same syllable as in the nominative singular, particularly if they are polysyllabic :

но́вость, news

благодáрность, gratitude

кровать, bedstead

But in the greater number of feminine nouns with the *ь* termination, the accent is on the same syllable as in the nominative singular in all the cases of the singular, and nominative plural; in all the other cases of the plural (excepting the accusative of inanimate nouns) it falls on the case-endings :

Plural

вещь, thing, object

вѣщи, -ѣй, -ѣм, -ѣми, -ѣх

власть, power, authority

влáсти, -ѣй, -ѣм, -ѣми, -ѣх

гость, guest

гóсти, -ѣй, -ѣм, -ѣми, -ѣх

лóшадь, horse

лóшади, -ѣй, -ѣм, -ѣми, -ѣх

§ 33. *Nouns* : (1) *used only in Singular* ; (2) *used only in Plural* ; (3) *of common gender*.

(1) *Used only in Singular*

карто́фель (<i>m.</i>),	potatoes	крыжовник,	gooseberries
капу́ста,	cabbage	мали́на,	raspberries
морко́вь (<i>f.</i>),	carrot(s)	сморо́дина,	currants
редь́ска,	radish(es)	молоко́,	milk
редь́ка,	black radish(es)	ма́сло,	butter
ре́па,	turnip(s)	со́ль (<i>f.</i>),	salt
земля́ника,	wild strawberries	пе́рец,	pepper
зо́лото,	gold	рожь (<i>f.</i>),	rye
серебро́,	silver	пшени́ца,	wheat
желе́зо,	iron	ячме́нь (<i>m.</i>),	barley
медь (<i>f.</i>),	copper, brass ¹	ове́с,	oats
клубни́ка,	strawberries	горо́х,	peas
брусни́ка,	red bilberries	гречи́ха,	buckwheat

(2) *Used only in Plural*

(a) *Masculine*

близне́ц-ы́ [ов],	twins	обо́и [ев],	wallpaper
вес-ы́ [ов],	scales, weights	подштанни́к-и [ов],	pants
дух-и́ [ов],	scent	час-ы́ [ов],	clock, watch
коньк-и́ [ов],	skates	штан-ы́ [ов],	trousers
носк-и́ [ов],	socks	щипц-ы́ [ов],	pincers, tongs

¹ жёлтая медь.

(b) *Feminine*

брюки [брюк],	trousers	подтяжки [подтяжек],	braces
вилы [вил],	garden fork	похороны [похорон],	funeral
враки [врак],	idle talk	прятки [пряток],	hide-and-seek
деньги [дѣнег],	money	сливки [сливок],	cream
жму́рки [жму́рок],	blind-man's buff	сúмерки [сúмерек],	twilight
именины [имени́н],	name's day	сúтки [сúток],	a day and a night (24 hours)
каникулы [кани́кул],	vacations, holidays	гра́бли [гра́бель],	garden rake
ко́злы [ко́зел],	driver's seat	са́ни [сане́й],	sleigh
макаро́ны [макаро́н],	macaroni	се́ни [сене́й],	entrance-hall
но́жницы [но́жниц],	scissors	щи [ще́й],	cabbage
носи́лки [носи́лок],	stretcher		soup

(c) *Neuter*

воро́та [воро́т],	gate	черни́ла [черни́л],	ink
дрова́ [дров],	firewood	очки́ [очко́в],	spectacles
пери́ла [пери́л],	hand-rail, parapet		

NOTE. The termination of genitive plural of the words enumerated in (a), (b), (c) is given in brackets.

The terminations of dative, instrumental, and locative are :

-ам, -ами, -ах of hard nouns ;

-ям, -ями, -ях of soft nouns.

The accent is on the same syllable as in the genitive in all the other oblique cases. Inserted *o* or *e* of the genitive cases is dropped in the other cases.

(3) *Of Common Gender*

бродя́га,	vagabond	пла́кса,	whimperer
бедня́га,	poor creature, poor soul	пору́ка,	bail, surety
зайка́,	stammerer	пья́ница,	drunkard
кале́ка,	cripple	разия́,	gaping fool
ла́комка,	sweet-toothed person	ро́вня,	equal
левша́,	left-handed person	самоуби́йца,	suicide
малю́тка,	baby	самоу́чка,	self-taught person
неве́жда,	ignoramus	сирота́,	orphan
не́ряха,	untidy person	у́мница,	good boy or girl
обжора́,	glutton	ханжа́,	hypocrite, bigot

NOTE. These are declined as feminine nouns.

§ 33a. *The Diminutives.*

1. Nearly every Russian noun (and some adjectives) can have a diminutive form. The diminutive can express :

(1) The diminutive value alone :

дом, house, (dim.) до́мик

(2) The diminutive, used in a sense of endearment :

го́лос, voice ; голосо́чек, dear little voice

(3) The diminutive, used in a sense of disdain :

го́лосишко, poor sort of voice

(1) The diminutive terminations of nouns are usually :

ик, ок, ек, ец for masculine nouns :

дом, house

до́мик, little house

го́лос, voice

голосо́к, small voice

огонь, fire

огонёк, little fire

хлеб, bread

хлебец, small loaf

ко, цо for neuter nouns :

окно́, window

око́шко, little window

письмо́, letter

письмецо́, little letter

ка for feminine nouns :

нога́, leg

но́жка, little leg

кни́га, book

кни́жка, little book

рука́, hand

ру́чка, little hand

NOTE. г, к are commuted into ж, ч.

(2) The diminutive terminations for expressing endearment are :

ичек, очек for masculine nouns :

нож, knife

но́жичек, pretty little knife

го́лос, voice

голосо́чек, pretty little voice

ичка, очка, ечка, енъка, ушка, юшка for feminine nouns :

сестра́, sister	сестри́чка, dear little sister
ма́ма, mother	маме́нька, dear mother
те́тя, aunt	те́тушка, dear auntie
ло́жка, spoon	ло́жечка, just a little spoon
дед, ¹ grandfather	де́душка, dear grandfather
дядя, ¹ uncle	дядю́шка, dear uncle

ечко, ышко for neuter nouns :

кольцо́, ring	коле́чко, little ring
пе́ро, feather	пе́рышко, little feather

(3) The diminutive terminations expressing disdain are :

ишка, ишко for masculine nouns :

мальчи́шка, little boy, urchin
 городи́шко, little town (of no importance)

ёнка, онка for feminine nouns :

коро́ва, cow	корове́нка, poor sort of a cow
ла́вка, shop	лавчо́нка, poor sort of a shop
ста́руха, old woman	ста́рушонка, insignificant old woman

ишко for neuter nouns :

де́ло, affair, matter де́лишко, a trifling business [affair]

2. The most used diminutive terminations of adjectives are :

ова́тый, ева́тый, онький, енъкий :

бе́лый, white	белова́тый, whitish
	бе́ленький, white little . . .
си́ний, blue	синева́тый, bluish
	си́ненький, blue little . . .
мя́гкий, soft	мя́гоенький, soft little . . .

The terminations **онький, енъкий** give the diminutive idea to the qualified noun rather than to the adjective itself.

¹ Masculine.

§ 33b. *Derivation-Suffixes in Nouns.*

Besides the termination-suffixes of diminutives, enumerated in § 33a, there are other suffixes which are used for the formation of derivative nouns from roots or from other words. While it is impossible to give here a list of all the derivation-suffixes of nouns, or to treat in detail of their functions in all cases, a few of the most important suffixes are given below.

ец [ица]	} In nouns formed from adjectives and verbs, which signify trade, calling, profession, etc.
чик [чица]	
щик [щица]	
ник [ница]	
тель [тельница]	

любимец [ица],¹ favourite, from любить, to love.

купёц, merchant, from купить, to buy [купчиха].

разносчик [чица], hawker, from разносить, to carry round.

пильщик [щица], sawyer, from пилить, to saw.

огородник [ница], gardener, from огород [огородный], garden.

житель [тельница], inhabitant, from жить, to live.

ние [нье]) In verbal nouns (often with an abstract
тие [тье]) meaning) which signify action or state.

терпение, patience, from терпеть, to suffer.

учение [ученье], learning, study, from учить[ся], to learn.

(Derived from verbs whose past passive participle terminates in нный.)

понятие, conception, from понять, to understand.

жизнь, living, from жить, to live.

(Derived from verbs whose past passive participle terminates in тый. (See § 86b, B.))

¹ [ица] for feminine nouns; occasionally: [иха].

ство { In nouns formed from nouns, adjectives, and
 ствие { verbs which signify :
 calling, trade, act or state.

рабство, slavery, from раб, slave.

действие, action, act, from действовать, to act.

(о)сть { In abstract nouns formed from adjectives which
 (е)сть { signify :
 (1) property, quality, state ;
 (2) act, object.

бѣдность, poverty, from бѣдный, poor.

рѣбость, timidity, from рѣбкий, timid.

милость, grace, favour, from милый, charming,
pleasing.

молодость, youth, from молодой, young.

свѣжесть, freshness, from свѣжий, fresh.

NOTE. For the function and meaning of *prefixes* in derivative nouns see § 63, note 4.

2. ADJECTIVES

§ 34. Russian adjectives have two forms :

- (1) The attributive (long) form.
- (2) The predicative (short) form.

Long form

но́вый дом, new house

но́вая кни́га, new book

ста́рое вино́, old wine

ста́рые дома́, old houses

Short form

дом нов, the house is new

кни́га но́ва, the book is new

вино́ ста́ро, the wine is old

дома́ ста́ры, the houses are old

The attributive (long) form stands in the same relation to other words in the sentence as the noun which it qualifies, and, consequently, conforms with its noun as regards number, gender, and case :

В НОВЫЙ ДОМ, into the new house
 ОТ НОВОГО ДОМА, from the new house
 К НОВОМУ ДОМУ, towards the new house
 С НОВЫМ ДОМОМ, with the new house
 В НОВОМ ДОМЕ, in the new house

§ 35. Declension of Attributive Adjectives.

There are two classes of adjectives :

(1) the hard ; (2) the soft.

Their nominative terminations are :

	<i>Hard</i>			<i>Soft</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	{ -ый -ой	{ -ое -е	{ -ая -я	<i>Sing.</i> -ий	-ее	-яя
<i>Plur.</i>	{ -ые[-ие]}			{ -ие}		

Adjectives have six cases, as nouns. Their respective terminations are :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Pl. (all genders)</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	{ <i>Hard.</i> -ый, -ой <i>Soft.</i> -ий	{ -ое -е	{ -ая -яя	{ -ие -ие
<i>Gen.</i>	{ <i>Hard.</i> -ого <i>Soft.</i> -его	-ой	-ей	{ -их -их
<i>Dat.</i>	{ <i>Hard.</i> -ому <i>Soft.</i> -ему	-ой	-ей	{ -им -им
<i>Acc.</i>	{ <i>Hard.</i> { as nom. ¹ or gen. } as nom. for for masc. } neuter	-ую	-юю	{ as nom. ¹ or gen. } as nom. for for masc. } neuter
<i>Instr.</i>	{ <i>Hard.</i> -ым <i>Soft.</i> -им	-ою [-ой]	-ею [-ей]	{ -ими -ими
<i>Loc.</i>	{ <i>Hard.</i> -ом <i>Soft.</i> -ем	-ой	-ей	{ -их -их

NOTE. If the nominative terminations are *ой, ая, ее*, the accent in declension will fall on the case-endings throughout.

¹ See § 13, note 1.

Examples :

<i>Hard.</i>	<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Pl. (all genders)</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	бѣл-ый (white) бѣл-ое	бѣл-ая	бѣл-ые
<i>Gen.</i>	бѣл-ого	бѣл-ой	бѣл-ых
<i>Dat.</i>	бѣл-ому	бѣл-ой	бѣл-ым
<i>Acc. M.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{бѣл-ый} \\ \text{от} \\ \text{бѣл-ого} \end{array} \right\}$ <i>N.</i> бѣл-ое	бѣл-ую	<i>as</i> <i>Nom.</i> бѣл-ые { for inanimate objects <i>or</i> <i>Gen.</i> бѣл-ых { for animate objects
<i>Instr.</i>	бѣл-ым	бѣл-ою [-ой]	бѣл-ыми
<i>Loc.</i>	бѣл-ом	бѣл-ой	бѣл-ых

<i>Soft.</i>	<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Pl. (all genders)</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	сѣн-ий сѣн-ее	сѣн-яя	сѣн-ие
<i>Gen.</i>	сѣн-его	сѣн-ей	сѣн-их
<i>Dat.</i>	сѣн-ему	сѣн-ей	сѣн-им
<i>Acc. M.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{сѣн-ий} \\ \text{от} \\ \text{сѣн-его} \end{array} \right\}$ <i>N.</i> сѣн-ее	сѣн-юю	<i>as</i> <i>Nom.</i> сѣн-ие { for inanimate objects <i>or</i> <i>Gen.</i> сѣн-их { for animate objects
<i>Instr.</i>	сѣн-им	сѣн-ею [-ей]	сѣн-ими
<i>Loc.</i>	сѣн-ем	сѣн-ей	сѣн-их

NOTE 1. After *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ*, the vowel *ы* is supplanted by *и* in the case-endings :

тѣх-ие (soft, quiet)	свѣж-ие (fresh)
тѣх-их	свѣж-их
тѣх-им	свѣж-им

After *ж, ч, ш, щ*, a non-accented *о* is changed into *е* :

свѣж-его (fresh)	горѣч-его (hot)
свѣж-ему	горѣч-ему
свѣж-ею	горѣч-ею
свѣж-ей	горѣч-ей

NOTE 2. A number of nouns have terminations of adjectives. In declension they are treated as adjectives :

нищий, -ая,	beggar	пирожное,	sweet (pastry)
кормчий	helmsman,	подлежащее,	subject
рулевой	steersman	сказуемое,	predicate
лесничий,	forester	дополнение,	object
портной,	tailor	булочная,	baker's shop
рядовой,	soldier (private)	вселенная,	universe
подданный, -ая,	subject	горничная,	chamber-maid
часовой,	sentry	запятая,	comma
учёный,	savant	кладовая,	store-room
сумасшедший,	insane person	мастерская,	workshop
-ая		мостовая,	paved street
жаркое,	roast beef	набережная,	quay
мороженое,	ice-cream	передняя,	entrance-hall
насекомое,	insect	столовая,	dining-room

§ 36. Predicative (short) adjectives are distinguished by genders and numbers, but are not declined according to cases ; their terminations are :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Pl. (all genders)</i>
<i>Hard.</i>	— ¹	-а	-о	-ы
<i>Soft.</i>	-ь	-я	-е	-и
	нов	новá	нóво	нóвы
	синь	синя́	сине	сини (see § 40)

§ 37. Possessive Adjectives formed from Nouns.

These are formed by adding *ов, ев, ёв, ин* (*ын* after *ц*) after the name of the person who possesses the object for which this form of adjective has been coined.

Examples :

Пётр	Петров дом, Peter's house
дядя	дядин сад, uncle's garden

For feminine and neuter the possessive adjectives end in :

<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Pl. (all genders)</i>
-ова	-ово	-овы
-ева	-ево	-евы
-ёва	-ёво	-ёвы
-ина	-ино	-ины
-ына	-ыно	-ыны

¹ Stem ending in a consonant.

Possessive adjectives are declined as follows :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Pl. (all genders)</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Петрѡв	Петрѡв-о	Петрѡв-а	Петрѡв-ы
<i>Gen.</i>	Петрѡв-а	Петрѡв-а	Петрѡв-ой	Петрѡв-ых
<i>Dat.</i>	Петрѡв-у	Петрѡв-у	Петрѡв-ой	Петрѡв-ым
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>	Петрѡв-о	Петрѡв-у	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	Петрѡв-ым	Петрѡв-ым	Петрѡв-ою [-ой]	Петрѡв-ыми
<i>Loc.</i>	Петрѡв-ом	Петрѡв-ом	Петрѡв-ой	Петрѡв-ых
<i>Nom.</i>	Ильин	Ильин-ѡ	Ильин-а	Ильин-ы
<i>Gen.</i>	Ильин-а	Ильин-а	Ильин-ой	Ильин-ых
<i>Dat.</i>	Ильин-у	Ильин-у	Ильин-ой	Ильин-ым
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>	Ильин-ѡ	Ильин-у	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	Ильин-ым	Ильин-ым	Ильин-ою [-ой]	Ильин-ыми
<i>Loc.</i>	Ильин-ѡм	Ильин-ѡм	Ильин-ой	Ильин-ых

NOTE. Nouns denoting proper names¹ (mainly surnames) which have the terminations **ов, ев, ѣв, ин, etc.**, are declined as possessive adjectives, except in the locative case, which has the case-ending of **e** in masculine and neuter (feminine has the ending **ой** in the locative).

	<i>Locative</i>
Пушкин	Пушкин-е
Петрѡв	Петрѡв-е
Бородинѡ	Бородин-ѣ
Никѣтин	Никѣтин-е

This form of possessive adjective frequently gives place to the genitive case of the person to whom the object belongs :

дом Петра́ instead of Петрѡв дом
сад дѣди ,, дѣдин сад

§ 38. A number of generic adjectives, or those pertaining to species, are formed by adding the terminations **ий**,

¹ Place names, such as : Тамбѡв, Кѣев, Нѣжин, etc., are declined as masculine nouns. (See § 18.)

ья, ье, ьи to the stem of the noun from which they are formed :

баран, ram, баран-ий, баран-ья, баран-ье, баран-ьи
 птица, bird, птич-ий, птич-ья, птич-ье, птич-ьи
 рыба, fish, рыб-ий, рыб-ья, рыб-ье, рыб-ьи

Adjectives of this class are declined as soft adjectives, with this difference, that the suffix ь is retained¹ in the oblique cases before the case-endings.

Examples :

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Pl. (all genders)</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	птич-ий	птич-ье	птич-ья	птич-ьи
<i>Gen.</i>	птич-ьего	птич-ьего	птич-ьей	птич-ьих
<i>Dat.</i>	птич-ьему	птич-ьему	птич-ьей	птич-ьим
<i>Acc.</i>	птич-ий	птич-ье	птич-ью	птич-ьи
<i>Instr.</i>	птич-ьим	птич-ьим	птич-ьею [-ьей]	птич-ьими
<i>Loc.</i>	птич-ьем	птич-ьем	птич-ьей	птич-ьих

(See § 51 (3), Pronouns : чей, чья, чьё.)

§ 39. Nearly all qualitative (attributive) adjectives have a short (predicative) form.

The following classes of adjectives lack the short form :

- (1) 'Species' or generic adjectives, ending in **чий, чья, чье**. (See § 38.)
- (2) Possessive adjectives, ending in **ов, ев, ын, ин**. (See § 37.)
- (3) A number of adjectives ending in **ский** :

русский, Russian немецкий, German
 английский, English etc.

¹ ь is inserted in the oblique cases of masculine (except acc.).

(4) Material-adjectives :

серёбряный,	made of silver
золотой,	made of gold
мѣдный,	made of copper
деревянный,	made of wood
железный,	made of iron

NOTE 1. The qualitative adjective большой has no short form of its own: that of великий is borrowed for the predicative form :

великий, great велик, great, big

NOTE 2. The adjectives рад (glad) and горазд (capable, handy) have no long form.

§ 40. Formation of the Predicative (short) form of Adjectives.

The short form is obtained by dropping the termination of the long form { ^{ый}
 , ^{ой}
 ^{ий} in the masculine gender, and я and е in the feminine and neuter genders :

живой (live)	жив	} The short form of this adjective is not in frequent use
живая	жива	
живое	живо	
синий (blue)	синь	} The short form of this adjective is not in frequent use
синяя	синя	
синее	сине	

Fleeting o or e. Occasionally o or e is inserted in the masculine short form for euphony where too many consonants remain on dropping the case-ending :

мѣлкий	} petty, small,	мѣлок, мелка́
мѣлкая		
короткий	} short,	корóток, коротка́
короткая		

лёгкий	} light,	лёгок,	легка́
лёгкая			
ловкий	} smart,	ловок,	ловка́
ловкая			
горький	} bitter,	го́рек,	горька́
горькая			
злой	} evil, vicious,	зол,	зла
злая			
по́лный	} full,	по́лон,	полна́
по́льная			
кислый	} sour,	кисел,	кисла́
кислая			
тёмный	} dark,	тёмен,	темна́
тёмная			
у́мный	} clever,	у́мён,	умна́
у́мная			

§ 41. Degrees of Comparison.

When forming the comparative degree of an adjective from the positive degree, the following rules have to be observed :

(1) The terminations **ый, ой, ий, ая, яя, ое, ее** of the positive degree give place to the ending **ее** for all genders and numbers.

Positive	Comparative
бе́лый, -ая, -ое, -ые	белее́
си́ний, -ая, -ее, -ие	синее́

NOTE. The comparative degree also has two forms : the long (attributive) and the short (predicative).

The short comparative form has a predicative meaning, that is to say, it supplies the predicate of the sentence in which it appears. The short comparative is not declined.

The long (attributive) form of the comparative degree has the terminations **ейший, ейшая, ейшее, ейшие**.¹

¹ Or: айший, -ая, -ее, -ие, when stem ends in г, к, х.

This form is declined according to all cases of both singular and plural, and has three genders :

прям	{	-ой	прям-ее, прям-ейший, -ая, -ее
straight		-ая	
		-ое	

бел	{	-ый	бел-ее, бел-ейший, -ая, -ее
white		-ая	
		-ое	

слаб	{	-ый	слаб-ее, слаб-ейший, -ая, -ее
weak		-ая	
		-ое	

(2) If the stem of the adjective (adjective minus the case-ending) ends in **г, к, х**, the short (predicative) form takes **е** instead of **ее**, and the **г, к, х** are changed (commuted) respectively into **ж, ч, ш**; **ек** is changed into **щ**. (See § 13a.)

кре́пк-ий, strong,	кре́пч-е, крепч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая	
-ое	

стро́г-ий, strict,	стро́ж-е, строж-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая exacting	
-ое	

ти́х-ий, quiet,	ти́ш-е, тиш-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая soft	
-ое	

ле́гк-ий, light,	ле́гч-е, легч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая easy	
-ое	

плоск-ий, flat,	плосщ-е, площ-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-----------------	--------------------------------

Often **ь** is inserted, usually after an **л** :

ме́лк-ий, petty,	ме́льч-е, мельч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая small,	
-ое shallow,	

There are, however, a few exceptions to the above rule :

бóйк-ий, lively,	бойч-ée, ¹ бойч	} айший, -ая, -ее ¹
-ая		
-ое		
дйк-ий, wild,	дич-ée, ¹ дич	
-ая		
-ое		
лóвк-ий, smart,	ловч-ée, ¹ ловч	}
-ая		
-ое		

(3) Adjective stems ending in д, т, frequently have these letters commuted into ж and ч; ст into щ, in the short form only :

твёрд-ый, hard,	твёрж-е, тверд-ейший, -ая, -ее
-ая	
-ое	
худ-ой, bad, lean,	хуж-е, худ-ший, -ая, -ее
-ая	худ-ée, худ-ейший, -ая, -ее
-ое	
молод-ой, young,	молóж-е, млáд-ший, -ая, -ее
-ая	
-ое	
чйст-ый, clean,	чйщ-е, чйст-ейший, -ая, -ее
-ая	
-ое	

Exceptions to this rule are :

богáт-ый, rich,	богáч-е, богат-ейший, -ая, -ее
-ая	also
-ое	богат-ée
гóрд-ый, haughty,	горд-ée, горд-ейший, -ая, -ее
-ая	
-ое	

¹ Not frequently used; бóлее бóйкий, бóлее лóвкий, etc., are more often used.

(4) A few adjectives with the stem ending in **к** form their comparative degree (both in the short and the long forms) a little irregularly : they drop the **к** for the short form, and commute the **к** into **ч** for the long form :

редк-ий, infrequent, рѣж-е, редч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

сла́дк-ий, sweet, сла́щ-е, сладч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

корóтк-ий, short, корóч-е, кратч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

то́нк-ий, thin, то́ньш-е, тонч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая
-ое

у́зк-ий, narrow, у́ж-е (long form lacking) or
-ая бо́лее у́зкий¹
-ое

глубо́к-ий, deep, глúб-же, глубоч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

широ́к-ий, wide, шир-е, широч-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

дешёв-ый, cheap, дешёвл-е, дешев-а́йший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

(5) A few adjectives shorten the attributive form of their comparative :

высо́к-ий, high, вьш-е, вьс-ший, -ая, -ее
-ая -ое

¹ The adverbs : бо́лее (more) and ме́нее (less) are occasionally used in colloquial speech with the positive, instead of the long comparative.

низк-ий, low, -ая -ое	низк-е, низ-ший,	-ая, -ее
стар-ый, old, -ая -ое	стар-ше, стар-ший, (of persons only) стар-ее, стар-ейший, (of objects and persons)	-ая, -ее -ая, -ее

(6) A few adjectives take their comparative form from another adjective with a similar meaning :

велик-ий, great, -ая -ое	б-ольше, б-ольший,	-ая, -ее
мал-ый, small, -ая -ое	м-еньше, м-еньший,	-ая, -ее
хорош-ий, good, -ая -ее	л-учше, л-учший,	-ая, -ее
дал-ек-ий, far distant, -ая -ое	д-альше, д-альнейший,	-ая, -ее

If the short (predicative) form is used without any object of comparison, the particle *но* is added to it :

пол-учше	means	a little better
поб-ольше	„	a little more, or a little larger
пом-еньше	„	a little less, or a little smaller
под-альше	„	a little further
поб-лиже	„	a little nearer. (See also § 90 (1))

§ 42. *The Superlative Degree.*

The superlative degree of Russian adjectives has no form of its own. It usually takes the long comparative form. (See § 41.)

Occasionally to the long comparative form is added the superlative particle **наи** :

наилу́чший, -ая, -ее, the best
 наиме́ньший, -ая, -ее, the least (the smallest)

More often the pronoun **са́мый** (the very) is placed before the positive form of the adjective. This gives a less complicated form of superlative :

са́мый стрóгий, the most strict, exacting

са́мый can also precede the long comparative :

са́мый лу́чший, the very best. (See § 41 (5).)

Also in adverbial expressions :

са́мое бо́льшее, at the very most

са́мое ме́ньшее, at the very least

Frequently when forming a predicative superlative, the pronouns **всего́**, **всех** are placed after the short comparative :

лучше всего́, ¹ better than anything	} best of all
лучше всех, ¹ better than all	
ме́ньше всего́, less than anything	} least of all
ме́ньше всех, less than all	

The particle **пре** before the positive enhances the quality of the adjective :

предо́брый, -ая, -ое, most kind

прескве́рный, -ая, -ое, most rotten, bad

It is used in a predicative sense, and is not usually declined.

§ 43. *Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives.*

Adverbs formed from adjectives take the neuter predicative (short) form :

но́вый	—	но́во,	new
хоро́ший	—	хорошо́,	well, good
ужа́сный	—	ужа́сно,	awful
поз́дний	—	поз́дно,	late
кра́йний	—	кра́йне,	extremely

¹ But also : всего́ лу́чше, всех лу́чше, etc.

Adverbs formed from adjectives ending in **ский** take **ски**, often preceded by the particle **по** :

человѣческий,	human
по-человѣчески,	humanly
по-ру́ски,	in Russian
по-англи́йски,	in English

§ 44. *The Accent in Adjectives.*

(1) Attributive adjectives in which the stress is *not* on the last syllable retain the accent of the nominative singular in all the cases of the singular and the plural.

(2) If the accent falls on the last syllable in the nominative singular, it goes to the case-endings in both singular and plural.

(3) Predicative (short) adjectives, with few exceptions, have the accent on the same syllable as in the long form for the masculine ; for the feminine, neuter, and plural the accent is shifted to the last syllable :

вели́кий	вели́к, велика́, велико́, велики́
big, great, large	
высо́кий	высо́к, высока́, высоко́, высоки́
high, tall	
тяжё́лый	тяжё́л, тяжела́, тяжело́, тяжелы́
heavy	

There are, however, exceptions to this rule, but the general tendency is for the feminine and the plural to shift the accent to the last syllable, particularly in dissyllabic adjectives.

(4) In the predicative (short) comparative the tendency is for the last syllable *but one* to take the accent—particularly in dissyllabic adjectives, but also in a few with three syllables :

весё́лый	веселе́е, ¹	gay, cheerful, joyful
здоров́ый	здоровее́, ¹	sound, healthy
зеле́ный	зелене́е, ¹	green

¹ *ée* is occasionally shortened into *éи*.

In adjectives of more than two syllables the accent in the comparative (short) form is usually on the same syllable as in the positive.

§ 45. *A list of Adjectives in frequent use, showing the Short (predicative) form in each case, also the Short Comparative (predicative) form.*

NOTE. The accent in adjectives remains on the same syllable throughout in the long (attributive) form. In the predicative form the accent is nearly always shifted to the last syllable in the feminine and the plural. Where the accent varies in the short neuter and the plural, according to popular usage in different parts of the country, the alternative accent is indicated (б [о]; ъ [ы]).

In the short comparative form the accent is always on the last syllable but one, with the exception of polysyllabic adjectives. (See § 44.)

<i>Positive (attributive)</i>	<i>Predicative</i>	<i>Short Comparative</i>
бѣдный, -ая, -ое, -ые poor	бѣден, бедна́, -о [-о], -ѣ [-ы]	бедне́е
бога́тый, -ая, -ое, -ые rich	бога́т, -а, -о, -ы	бога́че
небога́тый, -ая, -ое, -ые of moderate means	не бога́т, -а, -о, -ы	no comparative form
бе́лый, -ая, -ое, -ые white	бел, -а́, -о [-о], -ѣ [-ы]	беле́е
че́рный, -ая, -ое, -ые black	че́рен, черна́, -о, -ѣ	черне́е
больно́й, -а́я, -о́е, -ѣе sick, ill	бо́лен, больна́, -о, -ѣ	больне́е
здро́вый, -ая, -ое, -ые healthy	здро́в, -а, -о, -ы	здорове́е
бли́зкий, -ая, -ое, -ие near	бли́зок, близка́, -о, -ѣ	бли́же
дале́кий, -ая, -ое, -ие far, distant	дале́к, далека́, -о, -ѣ	да́льше
да́льний, -ая, -ое, -ие distant	has no short forms	да́лее

<i>Positive (attributive)</i>	<i>Predicative</i>	<i>Short Comparative</i>
большой, -ая, -ое, -ие big	{ велик, -а, -о, -и	{ больше
великий, -ая, -ое, -ие great		{ более
небольшой, -ая, -ое, -ие not big	не велик, -а, -о, -и	no comparative form
малый, -ая, -ое, -ие small	мал, мала, -о, -и	{ меньше
маленький, -ая, -ое, -ие small, tiny	has no short form	{ менее
будущий, -ая, -ее, -ие future	{ have no short forms	{ no comparative form
прошлый, -ая, -ое, -ие past		
весёлый, -ая, -ое, -ие gay, joyful	вёсел, весела, -о, -и	веселее
грустный, -ая, -ое, -ие sad, melancholy	грустен, грустна, -о, -и	грустнее
скучный, -ая, -ое, -ие weary, tedious	скучен, скучна, -о, -и	скучнее
невесёлый, -ая, -ое, -ие sad, weary	не вёсел, -а, -о, -и	no comparative form
видный, -ая, -ое, -ие visible, apparent	виден, видна, -о, -и	виднее
вкусный, -ая, -ое, -ие tasty	вкусен, вкусна, -о, -и	вкуснее
невкусный, -ая, -ое, -ие tasteless	не вкусен, -а, -о, -и	no comparative form
верхний, -ая, -ее, -ие top	{ have no short or comparative forms	
нижний, -ая, -ее, -ие bottom		
высокий, -ая, -ое, -ие high	высок, -а, -о [-о], -и [-и]	выше
низкий, -ая, -ое, -ие low	низок, низка, -о, -и	ниже
глубокий, -ая, -ое, -ие deep	глубок, -а, -о, -и	глубже
неглубокий, -ая, -ое, -ие shallow	не глубок, -а, -о, -и	no comparative form
глупый, -ая, -ое, -ие foolish, stupid	глуп, -а, -о, -и	глупее
умный, -ая, -ое, -ие wise	умен, умна, -о, -и	умнее

<i>Positive (attributive)</i>	<i>Predicative</i>	<i>Short Comparative</i>
глухой, -ая, -бе, -ие deaf	глух, -а, -о, -и	глуше
слепой, -ая, -бе, -ие blind	слеп, -а, -о, -и	слепее
голодный, -ая, -ое, -ие hungry	голоден, голодна, -о, -и	голоднее
сытый, -ая, -ое, -ие fed	сыт, сыта, -о, -и	сытее
горький, -ая, -ое, -ие bitter	горек, горька, -о, -и	{ горче горчее
сладкий, -ая, -ое, -ие sweet	сладок, сладка, -о, -и	
горячий, -ая, -ее, -ие hot	горяч, -а, -о, -и	более горячий -ая, -ее, -ие
тёплый, -ая, -ое, -ие warm	тёпл, -а, -о, -и	теплее
холодный, -ая, -ое, -ие cold	холоден, холодна, -о, -и	холоднее
громкий, -ая, -ое, -ие loud	громок, громка, -о, -и	громче
тихий, -ая, -ое, -ие quiet	тих, тиха, -о, -и	тише
грязный, -ая, -ое, -ие dirty	грязен, грязна, -о, -и	грязнее
чистый, -ая, -ое, -ие clean, pure	чист, чиста, -о, -и	чище
нечистый, -ая, -ое, -ие unclean, impure	не чист, -а, -о, -и	no comparative form
дешёвый, -ая, -ое, -ие cheap	дешев, дешева, -о, -и	дешевле
дорогой, -ая, -бе, -ие dear	дорог, дорога, -о, -и	дороже
недорогой, -ая, -бе, -ие inexpensive	не дорог, -а, -о, -и	no comparative form
длинный, -ая, -ое, -ие long (in distance)	длинен, длинна, -о, -и	длиннее
долгий, -ая, -ое, -ие long (in sense of time)	долго, долга, -о, -и	дольше
короткий, -ая, -ое, -ие short	короток, коротка, -о, -и	короче
краткий, -ая, -ое, -ие short, brief, concise	краток, кратка, -о, -и	кратче
добрый, -ая, -ое, -ие good, kind	добр, -а, -о, -и	добрее

<i>Positive (attributive)</i>	<i>Predicative</i>	<i>Short Comparative</i>
хоро́ший, -ая, -ое, -ие good, of good quality	хоро́ш, -а́, -о́, -и́	лу́чше
худо́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е bad	худ, худо́а, -о, -ы	ху́же
плохо́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е bad	плох, -а́, -о, -и	пло́ше
зло́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е bad, malicious	зол, зла́, зло, злы́	зле́е
зеле́ный, -ая, -ое, -ые green	зеле́н, -а́, -о, -ы	зеле́нее
же́лтый, -ая, -ое, -ые yellow	же́лт, желта́, -о, -ы	желт́ее
кра́сный, -ая, -ое, -ые red	кра́сен, красна́, -о, -ы	красне́е
си́ний, -ая, -ое, -ие blue	синь, синя́, -е, -и (not in frequent use)	синее́
живо́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е live	жив, жива́, -о, -ы	живе́е
ме́ртвый, -ая, -ое, -ые dead	ме́ртв, мертва́, -о, -ы	no comparative form
краси́вый, -ая, -ое, -ые pretty	краси́в, -а, -о, -ы	{ красивее кра́ше
некраси́вый, -ая, -ое, -ые ungainly	не краси́в, -а, -о, -ы	no comparative form in use
кре́пкий, -ая, -ое, -ие strong, hardy	кре́пок, крепка́, -о, -и	кре́пче
си́льный, -ая, -ое, -ые strong, powerful	силе́н, сильна́, -о, -ы	сильне́е
сла́бый, -ая, -ое, -ые weak	слаб, -а́, -о, -ы	слабе́е
ле́гкий, -ая, -ое, -ие light, easy	ле́гок, легка́, -о́, -и́	ле́гче
тяже́лый, -ая, -ое, -ые heavy	тяже́л, -а, -о́, -и́	тяжелее́
тру́дный, -ая, -ое, -ые hard (not easy)	тру́ден, трудна́, -о, -ы	трудне́е
ме́дленный, -ая, -ое, -ые slow	ме́дленен, ме́дленна, -о, -ы	ме́дленнее
ско́рый, -ая, -ое, -ие fast, quick	скор, -а́, -о, -ы	скоре́е
мо́крый, -ая, -ое, -ые wet	мокр, мокра́, -о, -ы	мокре́е
сухо́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е dry	сух, суха́, су́хо, су́хи	су́ше

(2) The predicative form of *должный* is much used in personal sentences in the sense of (a) to have to, (b) to owe :

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| (a) я <i>должен</i> ехать | I must go |
| я <i>должен</i> был ехать | I had to go |
| мы <i>должны</i> будем оставаться | we shall have to remain, stay |
| [нам надо будет оставаться] | |
| (b) я ему <i>должен</i> пять рублей | I owe him five roubles |
| я ему был <i>должен</i> пять рублей | I owed him five roubles |
| я ему <i>буду</i> <i>должен</i> пять рублей | I shall owe him five roubles |

Note the reverse order in :

я <i>должен</i> был	I had to
я был <i>должен</i>	I owed
я <i>должен</i> буду	I shall have to
я <i>буду</i> <i>должен</i>	I shall owe

All the personal sentences in sub-division (a) can be turned into impersonal ones by the use of *нужно* [надо] :

я <i>должен</i>	= мне <i>нужно</i>
я <i>должен</i> был	= мне <i>нужно</i> [надо] было
я <i>должен</i> буду	= мне <i>нужно</i> будет

должно [*должно*] is used in the meaning : one must . . . , it ought to . . . , it must . . .

это <i>должно</i> быть так	this must be so
это <i>должно</i> было случиться	this had to happen

должно быть used alone, adverbially, means : possibly, probably, it would seem.

<i>Positive</i> (attributive)	<i>Predicative</i>	<i>Short Comparative</i>
правый, -ая, -ое, -ые right, just	прав, -а́, -о, -ы	правее (more to the right)
неправый, -ая, -ое, -ые unjust	не прав, -а́, -о, -ы	no comparative form
левый, -ая, -ое, -ые left	—	левее (more to the left)
полный, -ая, -ое, -ые full, complete	полон, полна́, -о, -ы	полнее
неполный, -ая, -ое, -ые incomplete	не полон, -а́, -о, -ы	no comparative form
пустой, -ая, -ое, -ые empty	пуст, -а́, -о, -ы	пустее
прямой, -ая, -ое, -ые straight	прям, -а́, -о, -ы	прямее
кривой, -ая, -ое, -ые crooked	крив, крива́, -о, -ы	кривее

<i>Positive (attributive)</i>	<i>Predicative</i>	<i>Short Comparative</i>
свежий, -ая, -ее, -ие fresh	свеж, -á, -ó, -и́	све́жее
несвежий, -ая, -ее, -ие not fresh	не свеж, -á, -ó, -и́	no comparative form
светлый, -ая, -ое, -ые light	свѣтел, свѣтлá, -ó, -и́	свѣтлѣе
тёмный, -ая, -ое, -ые dark	тѣмен, темнá, -ó, -и́	темнѣе
тонкий, -ая, -ое, -ие thin	то́нок, тонкá, -о, -и	то́ньше
толстый, -ая, -ое, -ые thick	толст, -á, -о, -ы	толще
узкий, -ая, -ое, -ие narrow	у́зок, узкá, -о, -и	у́же
широкий, -ая, -ое, -ие broad	широ́к, -á, -ó, -и́	ши́ре
цѣлый, -ая, -ое, -ые whole	цѣл, -á, -о, -ы	no comparative form
чѣстный, -ая, -ое, -ые honest	чѣстен, -á, -о, -и́	чѣстнѣе
нечѣстный, -ая, -ое, -ые dishonest	не чѣстен, -á, -о, -и́	no comparative form in use
ясный, -ая, -ое, -ые clear	я́сен, яснá, -о, -ы	яснѣе
неясный, -ая, -ое, -ые not clear, indistinct	не я́сен, -á, -о, -ы	no comparative form

In adjectives with the negative particle не (which gives a reduced meaning) the negative form can also be used predicatively, but the particle не is then written separately :

небога́тый not rich	but он не бога́т	} no comparative form
немолодо́й no longer young	„ он не молод	
нестáрый not very old	„ он не стар	
небольшо́й дом a house of moderate size	„ дом не вели́к	
неинтерѣсный uninteresting	„ она́ не интерѣсна	
незнако́мый unknown	„ он не знако́м мне	
Ехсеption :		
нездоров́ый unhealthy, ailing	„ я нездоров, -а, -о, -ы I am unwell	

§ 46. *A few Adjectives which have no Predicative or Comparative form :*

вечёрный	} -ая, -ее, -ие,	of the evening
утренний		of the morning
дневной	} -ая, -ое, -ие,	of the day
ночной		of the night
ежедневный	} -ая, -ое, -ие,	daily
еженедельный		weekly
ежемесячный		monthly
ежегодный		yearly
годовой		annual
северный	} -ая, -ое, -ие,	northern, northerly
южный		southern, southerly
западный		western, westerly
восточный		eastern, easterly
вчерашний	} -ая, -ее, -ие,	of yesterday, yesterday's
сегодняшний		of to-day, to-day's
завтрашний		of to-morrow, to-morrow's
теперешний		of the present day
нынешний		of this time
всегдашний		usual, habitual
верхний	} -ая, -ее, -ие,	top one
нижний		bottom one
разный	-ая, -ое, -ие,	various, diverse
домашний	-ая, -ее, -ие,	home-made, of the house, of the household
чужой	-ая, -ое, -ие,	a stranger (in this sense used as a noun)

§ 46a. *Participles as Adjectives.*

A number of participles, both active and passive, have by popular usage been turned into adjectives :

1. настоящий	} -ая, -ее, -ие,	present
прошедший		past
будущий		future
сведущий		learned, skilled
имущий		wealthy

Some adjectives, derived from participles, have changed their termination into **чий** :

2. могу́чий	} -ая, -ее, -ие,	mighty
стоя́чий		standing, stagnant
кипу́чий		boiling, boiling hot
ходя́чий		current
горя́чий		hot
плаку́чий		weeping

3. Derived from past passive participles :

варе́нный,	boiled
уче́нный (<i>noun</i>),	learned
жа́ренный,	roasted
прида́ное (<i>noun</i>),	dowry
почте́нный,	esteemed
соверше́нный,	perfect
просвеще́нный,	enlightened
etc.	

3. PRONOUNS

§ 47. *Classes of Pronouns.*

1. Personal pronouns: я, I; ты, thou; он, he; она́, she; оно́, it; мы, we; вы, you; они́, they.

2. Possessive pronouns: мой, -я́, -ё́, -и́, my, mine; тво-й, -я́, -ё́, -и́, thy, thine; сво-й, -я́, -ё́, -и́, one's own; его́, his; её, her, hers; наш, -а, -е, -и, our, ours; ваш, -а, -е, -и, your, yours; их, their, theirs.

3. Demonstrative pronouns: э́тот, э́та, э́то, э́ти, this, these; то́т, та, то, те, that, those; так-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, such; таков-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, the mentioned; сей, си́я, си́е, си́и, this, these; о́ный, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, the named.

4. Relative-Interrogative pronouns :

кто, who ;	что, what
кото́р-ый, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е,	which
как-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е,	what sort of, which
чей, чья, чьё, чьи,	whose
како́в, -а́, -о́, -и́,	what sort of, how

NOTE. All the enumerated relative pronouns are also used as interrogative pronouns by adding the question mark.

5. **Definite pronouns:** сам, himself; самá, herself; самó, itself; са́ми, themselves.

са́м-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые, the very one (ones)

ка́жд-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые, each, every

вся́к-ий, -ая, -ое, -ие, each, every one, any one

так-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, such a one

тако́в-о́й,¹ -а́я, -о́е, -и́е, such a one, that, the mentioned

6. **Indefinite pronouns:**

кто́-то,

someone, somebody

не́кто,

a certain one

ко́е-кто

кто-нибу́дь

someone or other

что́-то,

something

не́что,

a certain thing

ко́е-что

что-нибу́дь

something or other

никто́,

no one

ничто́,

nothing

как-о́й-то, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е,

a certain

никак-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е,

not anyone

не́котор-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые,

a certain, some

и́но-й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е,

some other

друг-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -и́е,

another

NOTE. To indefinite pronouns belong the adverbial pronouns:

ско́лько,

how much, how many

сто́лько,

so much, so many

не́сколько,

a few

мнóгое,

many a thing, many things

(used only in the singular)

мнóгие,

many (many a man)

With the exception of мнóгое, they are used only in the plural and are declined as adjectives. (See § 35.)

¹ Can be used in the short (predicative) form: тако́в, а́, -о́, -и́.

сКО́лько, стО́лько, нЕ́сколько are occasionally used in the dative singular with the preposition по ; they are then treated as neuter nouns :

по сКО́лько ?	how many to each ?
(по сКО́лько), ¹	(in so far as)
по стО́лько,	so many to each
(по стО́лько), ¹	(insomuch, to that extent)
по нЕ́сколько,	a few to each

(The nouns which follow these are, however, in the genitive plural) :

я дал им по нЕ́сколько рублёй,
I gave them a few roubles each

In the declension of these pronoun-adverbs the *accent* remains on the stem in нЕ́сколько, мнО́гое, мнО́гие ; in сКО́лько, стО́лько it is shifted to the case-endings :

сКО́лькИХ	стО́лькИХ
сКО́лькИМ	стО́лькИМ
сКО́лькИМИ	стО́лькИМИ

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS

§ 48. 1. *Personal.*

Singular

<i>Nom.</i> я	ты	он	она́	онó
<i>Gen.</i> меня́	тебя́	его́	её́	его́
<i>Dat.</i> мне	тебе́	ему́	ей	ему́
<i>Acc.</i> меня́	тебя́	его́	её́	его́
<i>Instr.</i> мно́ю [-ой]	тобо́ю [-о́й]	им	ёю [ей]	им
<i>Loc.</i> мне	тебе́	ём	ей	ём

Plural

<i>Nom.</i> мы	вы	они́
<i>Gen.</i> нас	вас	их
<i>Dat.</i> нам	вам	им
<i>Acc.</i> нас	вас	их
<i>Instr.</i> на́ми	ва́ми	и́ми
<i>Loc.</i> нас	вас	их

¹ Used adverbially.

NOTE 1. Instrumental of *мно́ю, тобо́ю, ё́ю* can be shortened into *мно́й, тобо́й, ё́й*. (See § 28, note 4.)

NOTE 2. The personal-reflexive pronoun *себе́я* (one-self) has no nominative case, and no plural. It can stand both for singular and plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	(none)
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>себе́я</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>себе́</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>себе́я</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	<i>собо́ю [-о́й]</i>
<i>Loc.</i>	<i>себе́</i>

NOTE 3. Accusative of *он* and *оно́* is *always* *его́*.

NOTE 4. The oblique cases of the personal pronouns *он, она́, оно́, они́* have an inserted *н* (for euphony) if they are used with a preposition :

<i>у,</i>	<i>от,</i>	<i>него́,</i>	<i>неё́,</i>	<i>них</i>
<i>перед,</i>	<i>с,</i>	<i>ним,</i>	<i>неё́ю,</i>	<i>ни́ми</i>
<i>о,</i>	<i>на,</i>	<i>не́м,</i>	<i>ней,</i>	<i>них</i>
		<i>etc.</i>		

§ 49. 2. Possessive.

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>мо-й</i>	<i>мо-ё́</i>	<i>мо-я́</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>мо-его́</i>	<i>мо-е́й</i>	<i>мо-их</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>мо-ему́</i>	<i>мо-е́й</i>	<i>мо-и́м</i>
<i>Acc. N. or G.</i>	<i>мо-ё́</i>	<i>мо-ю́</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	<i>мо-и́м</i>	<i>мо-е́ю [-е́й]</i>	<i>мо-и́ми</i>
<i>Loc.</i>	<i>мо-е́м</i>	<i>мо-е́й</i>	<i>мо-и́х</i>

It will be noted that the case-endings of most possessive pronouns are similar to those of the oblique cases of *он, она́, оно́, они́*: (See § 48.)

твой, -я́, -ё́, -и́
свой, -я́, -ё́, -и́ } are similarly declined,

so are : *наш, -а, -е, -и*
ваш, -а, -е, -и

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	наш	наш-е	наш-а
<i>Gen.</i>	наш-его	наш-ей	наш-их
<i>Dat.</i>	наш-ему	наш-ей	наш-им
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>	наш-е	наш-у
<i>Instr.</i>	наш-им	наш-ею [-ей]	наш-ими
<i>Loc.</i>	наш-ем	наш-ей	наш-их

NOTE 1. *сво-й, -я, -ё* is only used when it directly refers to the subject of the sentence :

он про́дал свой дом,	he sold his (own) house
она́ потеря́ла свою́ шля́пу,	she has lost her (own) hat
они́ зна́ют своих дру́зей,	they know their (own) friends

NOTE 2. But an ordinary possessive pronoun frequently takes the place of *свой*. One can say :

я про́дал мой дом as well as я про́дал свой дом.

мы были на нашем огороде (we were in our kitchen garden) as well as мы были на своём огороде.

Often, to avoid ambiguity, the ordinary possessive is retained :

Я возьмѹ мою книгу, а ты свою; и
я возьмѹ свою книгу, а ты твою
(I shall take my book, and you yours)

§ 50. 3. *Demonstrative.*

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	т-от	т-о	т-а
<i>Gen.</i>		т-огó	т-ой
<i>Dat.</i>		т-омý	т-ой
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>	т-о	т-у
<i>Instr.</i>		т-ем	т-óю [-ой]
<i>Loc.</i>		т-ом	т-ой
			т-е
			т-ex
			т-ем
			<i>N. or G.</i>
			т-éми
			т-ex

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	эт-от	эт-о	эт-а	эт-и
<i>Gen.</i>	эт-ого	эт-ой		эт-их
<i>Dat.</i>	эт-ому	эт-ой		эт-им
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i> эт-то	эт-у		<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	эт-им	эт-ою [-ой]		эт-ими
<i>Loc.</i>	эт-ом	эт-ой		эт-их

NOTE 1. так-ой, таков-ой, он-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые are declined as adjectives. (See § 35.)

NOTE 2. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{с-ей} \\ \text{с-ия} \\ \text{с-иё} \\ \text{с-ий} \end{array} \right\} \text{ are declined as он, она, оно, они.} \\ \text{(See § 48.)}$

The oblique cases are merely preceded by *с*.

Accusative of neuter is *сиё* (popularly *сё*); of fem. : *сию*.

This pronoun is not frequently used now, but it occurs in everyday speech in the expressions :

сию мину́ту, this minute
то и сё, this and that
сейча́с, in a minute
сего́дня, to-day

NOTE 3. тот, та, то, те mean 'that,' 'those,' but often denote 'the one,' 'the ones,' etc.

тот, кото́рый . . . the one that . . .

NOTE 4. тот, та, то, те, followed by the particle *же*, have the meaning of 'the same' (or 'the very same,' if followed by *са́мый*) :

тот-же, the same
тот-же са́мый, the very same
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{так-ой-же} \\ \text{-ая-же} \\ \text{-ое-же} \\ \text{-ие-же} \end{array} \right\} \text{ mean : exactly as}$

§ 51. 4. *Relative and Interrogative.*

- (1)

котóр-ый, как-óй	} are declined as adjectives. (See § 35.)
-ая, -áя	
-ое, -óе	
-ые, -íе	

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
(2) <i>N.</i> к-то	ч-то	(3) че-й	чь-ё	чь-я
<i>G.</i> к-огó	ч-егó		чь-ей	чь-их
<i>D.</i> к-омý	ч-емý		чь-ей	чь-им
<i>A.</i> к-огó	ч-то	<i>N. or G.</i> чь-ё	чь-ю	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>I.</i> к-ем	ч-ем		чь-ёю	чь-ими
				[-ей]
<i>L.</i> к-ом	ч-ём		чь-ём	чь-ей
				чь-их

NOTE 1. Relative *кто, что* are occasionally interchanged with *котóр-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые* (particularly in popular speech):

человéк, котóрый был здесь вчерá
 человéк, что был здесь вчерá
 человéк, кто был здесь вчерá

NOTE 2. The particle *же* [ж] after *кто ? что ?* denotes accentuation: *кто же ? who, then ? ; что же ? what, then ? ; кто же это видел ? who, then, saw this ?*

что is also used in the meaning of a conjunction. (See § 97.)

§ 52. 5. *Definite.*

- (1) *всáкий, кáждый, -ая, -ое, -ие, -ые* are declined as adjectives. (See § 35.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>
(2) Nom.	сам	сам-ó	сам-á	сам-и
	himself	itself	herself	themselves
Gen.	сам-огó		сам-óй	сам-их
Dat.	сам-ому́		сам-óй	сам-им
Acc.	сам-огó	сам-ó	сам-оё	сам-их
Instr.	сам-ím		сам-óю [-óй]	сам-ими
Loc.	сам-óm		сам-óй	сам-их

NOTE. сам is distinct from the definite adjective-pronoun *самый*. The latter means 'the very,' and has the same meaning as *же*; the former means 'himself.'

	ТОТ ЖЕ	} the same
	ТОТ САМЫЙ	
	ТОТ ЖЕ САМЫЙ,	the very same
but :	ОН САМ,	he himself
	ОНА САМА́,	she herself etc.

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
(3) <i>Nom.</i>	вс-ѣ	вс-я	вс-е
<i>Gen.</i>	вс-его́	вс-еѣ	вс-ех
<i>Dat.</i>	вс-ему́	вс-еѣ	вс-ем
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i> вс-ѣ	вс-ю	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	вс-ем	вс-ею [-еѣ]	вс-еми
<i>Loc.</i>	вс-ѣм	вс-еѣ	вс-ех

§ 53. 6. Indefinite.

Some negative and indefinite pronouns are formed from interrogative-relative pronouns :

(1) By prefixing the particle *ни* :

что	—	ничто́,	nothing
кто	—	никто́,	no one
како́й	—	никако́й,	not anyone

(See § 135 (6), as *ни* affects adverbs.)

(2) By prefixing the particle *не* :

кто	—	не́кто, ¹	a certain man
что	—	не́что, ¹	a certain thing
ко́торый	—	не́который,	a certain person or object

(See § 135 (7).)

¹ Not declined.

(3) By adding the particle *то* :

кто-то,	someone	{ (not quite certain who or what, someone or something whose name, or what exactly, is immaterial)
что-то,	something	

какой-то	{ some person or thing (not quite certain who or what, giving the person or thing a slightly contemptuous estimation)
какая-то	
какие-то	

(4) By adding the words *нибудь*, *либо*, or by prefixing *кое* [*кой*] :

кто-нибудь,	someone or other, anyone
что-нибудь,	something or other, anything
кое-кто,	{ with a certain degree of definiteness
кое-что,	

кто-либо,	someone, anyone	{ (certainty imma- terial or prob- lematical)
что-либо,	something, anything	

(See § 135, sub-section 3, in adverbial forms.)

4. NUMERALS

§ 54. *Classes of Numerals.*

There are two classes of numerals :

(a) *Cardinal* : *один*, one ; *два*, two ; etc.

(b) *Ordinal* : *первый*, first ; *второй*, second ; etc.

§ 54a. *List of Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals :*

<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>
1 один, одна, одно	1st перв-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
2 два, две, два	2nd втор-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые
3 три	3rd трет-ий, -ья, -ье, -ьи
4 четыре	4th четвѣрт-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
5 пять	5th пят-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
6 шесть	6th шест-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые
7 семь	7th седьм-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые
8 восемь	8th восьм-ой, -ая, -ое, -ые

*Cardinal**Ordinal*

9	де́вятъ	9th	девя́т-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
10 ¹	деся́тъ	10th	деся́т-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
11	оди́ннадцатъ	11th	оди́ннадцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
12	двена́дцатъ	12th	двена́дцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
13	трина́дцатъ	13th	трина́дцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
14	четы́рнадцатъ	14th	четы́рнадцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
15	пяти́надцатъ	15th	пяти́надцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
16	шести́надцатъ	16th	шести́надцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
17	семи́надцатъ	17th	семи́надцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
18	восеми́надцатъ	18th	восеми́надцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
19	девя́тнадцатъ	19th	девя́тнадцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
20	два́дцатъ	20th	два́дцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
21	два́дцатъ одинъ, одна́, одно́, etc.	21st	два́дцатъ пе́рв-ый, -ая, -ое etc.
30	три́дцатъ etc.	30th	три́дцат-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые etc.
40	со́рок etc.	40th	сороков-о́й, -а́я, -о́е, -о́е
50	пяти́десятъ etc.	50th	пяти́десят-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые etc.
60	шести́десятъ etc.	60th	шести́десят-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые etc.
70	се́мьдесятъ etc.	70th	се́мьдесят-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые etc.
80	восе́мьдесятъ etc.	80th	восе́мьдесят-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые, etc.
90	девяно́сто etc.	90th	девяно́ст-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые etc.
100	сто	100th	со́т-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые
101	сто одинъ, одна́, одно́, etc.	101st	сто пе́рв-ый, -ая, -ое etc.
110	сто деся́тъ etc.	110th	сто деся́т-ый, -ая, -ое etc.
200	двѣсти	200th	двухсо́т-ый, -ая, -ое
300	три́ста	300th	трѣхсо́т-ый, -ая, -ое
400	четы́реста	400th	четырёхсо́т-ый, -ая, -ое
500	пяти́со́т	500th	пятисо́т-ый, -ая, -ое
600	шести́со́т	600th	шестисо́т-ый, -ая, -ое
700	се́мьсо́т	700th	семисо́т-ый, -ая, -ое

¹ The nought is called ноль (нуль) (m.).

<i>Cardinal</i>		<i>Ordinal</i>	
800	восемьсѳт	800th	восьмисѳт-ый, -ая, -ое
900	девятъсѳт	900th	девятисѳт-ый, -ая, -ое
1000	тысяча	1000th	тысячн-ый, -ая, -ое
1453	{ тысяча четыреста пятьдесят три	1453rd ¹	{ тысяча четыреста пять- десять трѳт-ий, -ья, -ье, -ьи

NOTE 1. Ordinal numerals take the termination **тый** or **той, ая, ое** if the cardinal ends in **ть** :

пять, five,	пѳтый, -ая, -ое
шесть, six,	шестѳй, -ая, -ое
девятъ, nine,	девѳтый, -ая, -ое
десять, ten,	десятъый, -ая, -ое

NOTE 2. The numbers 11-19 are formed by adding **надуать** to the first part of the numeral, which denotes the number above 10 (**на-дуать** is a contraction of **на десять**) :

	<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>
eleven (1 + 10),	одиннадуатъ	-ый
twelve (2 + 10),	двенѳдуатъ	-ый
thirteen (3 + 10),	тринадуатъ	-ый

§ 54b. Nouns used with the numbers 2, 3, 4 stand in the genitive singular :

два столѳ,	two tables
три окнѳ,	three windows
четыре кнѳги,	four books

Nouns with numbers above 4 stand in the genitive plural :

пѳть столѳв,	пѳть окон,	пѳть кнѳг
--------------	------------	-----------

If a number above 4 precedes the noun **человек** the genitive plural used is **человек** (not **людей**) : **пѳть**

¹ In ordinals only the last number is declined : thus in this example only the word **трѳтий** is declined according to all the cases.

человѣк, шесть человек, сѣмьдесят, etc., человек, but много людей.¹

With 21, 31, etc., the noun stands in either nominative or accusative :

двадцать одна книга (if subject of sentence)
двадцать одну книгу (if object)

With 22, 23, 24, 32, 33, 34, etc., the noun stands in genitive singular :

двадцать два фунта
двадцать три книги
двадцать четыре дня
but : двадцать пять дней

оба (both) requires genitive singular :

оба брата, both brothers

(See § 137, note to sub-section 7.)

§ 55. Declension of Numerals.

(1) Ordinal numerals are declined as adjectives in all genders and cases, and they conform in gender, case, and number to that of the noun which they qualify. (See § 35.)

первый дом (first house)	второй день (second day)
первого дома	второго дня
первому дому	второму дню etc.

NOTE. трѣтій, -ья, -ье, -ьи is declined as an adjective of species. (See § 38.)

(2) Cardinal numerals are declined in accordance with their terminations, respectively as masculine, feminine or neuter, some as nouns and some with predominantly adjectival terminations in the oblique cases.

¹ *Nom. pl.* люди, people.

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> один	один-о́	один-а́	один-и́ (some)
<i>Gen.</i>	один-о́го	один-о́й	один-и́х
<i>Dat.</i>	один-о́му	один-о́й	один-и́м
<i>Acc.</i> <i>N. or G.</i>	один-о́	один-у́	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	один-и́м	один-о́ю [-о́й]	один-и́ми
<i>Loc.</i>	один-о́м	один-о́й	один-и́х

<i>Nom.</i> два	две	три	четы́ре
<i>Gen.</i>	двух	трёх	четырёх
<i>Dat.</i>	двум	трём	четырёх
<i>Acc.</i> <i>N. or G.</i>		<i>N. or G.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	двумя́	тремя́	четырьмя́
<i>Loc.</i>	двух	трёх	четырёх

(3) 5-30 and 50-80 are declined as feminine nouns ending in **ь**. (See § 31) :

<i>Nom.</i> пять	шесть	семь	во́семь
<i>Gen.</i> пяти́	шести́	семи́	восьми́
<i>Dat.</i> пяти́	шести́	семи́	восьми́
<i>Acc.</i> пять	шесть	семь	во́семь
<i>Instr.</i> пяти́ю	шести́ю	семи́ю	восьми́ю
<i>Loc.</i> пяти́	шести́	семи́	восьми́

NOTE. In cardinal numbers consisting of two parts (denominations), each part is declined in accordance with its own mode of declension :

два́дцать один	два́дцать два	три́дцать три
двадцати́ одно́го	двадцати́ двух	тридцати́ трёх
двадцати́ одно́му	двадцати́ двум	тридцати́ трём
etc.	etc.	etc.

(4) In the numerals 50-80 both parts are likewise declined as feminine nouns ending in **ь**, although *пятьдесят*, *шестьдесят*, *сёмьдесят*, *во́семьдесят* do not terminate in **ь** :

<i>Nom.</i>	пятьдесят	шестьдесят
<i>Gen.</i>	пятидесяти	шестьдесяти
<i>Dat.</i>	пятидесяти	шестьдесяти
<i>Acc.</i>	пятьдесят	шестьдесят
<i>Instr.</i>	пятидесятью	шестьдесятью
<i>Loc.</i>	пятидесяти	шестьдесяти

etc.

(5) сорок has a in all oblique cases, except accusative :

<i>Nom.</i>	сорок
<i>Gen.</i>	сорока́
<i>Dat.</i>	сорока́
<i>Acc.</i>	сорок
<i>Instr.</i>	сорока́
<i>Loc.</i>	сорока́

сто and девяно́сто change the о into an а in all oblique cases of singular, except accusative :

сто	девяно́сто
ста	девяно́ста
ста	девяно́ста

сто, when used with the numbers 2-9, is declined as a neuter noun in the plural (joined in one word) :

<i>Nom.</i>	двѣсти	три́ста	четы́реста	пятьсо́т
<i>Gen.</i>	двухсо́т	трѣхсо́т	четырёхсо́т	пятисо́т
<i>Dat.</i>	двумста́м	трѣмста́м	четырёхмста́м	пятиста́м
<i>Acc.</i>	двѣсти	три́ста	четы́реста	пятьсо́т
<i>Instr.</i>	двумяста́ми	тремяста́ми	четырьмяста́ми	пятьюста́ми
<i>Loc.</i>	двухста́х	трѣхста́х	четырёхста́х	пятиста́х

(6) ты́сяча is declined as a feminine noun.

миллио́н is declined as a masculine noun.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
(7) <i>Nom.</i>	оба́	обе́
<i>Gen.</i>	обо́их	обе́их
<i>Dat.</i>	обо́им	обе́им
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>	<i>N. or G.</i>
<i>Instr.</i>	обо́ими	обе́ими
<i>Loc.</i>	обо́их	обе́их

NOTE. One oblique case only of *оба* is used in the singular—the genitive—in the expression :
обо́его по́ла, of both sexes

§ 55a. NOTE 1. Numerals, both ordinal and cardinal, precede the noun which they qualify :

пе́рвый уро́к, first lesson
два часа́, two hours etc.

Ordinals occasionally follow the noun, but only in cases where special emphasis is desired.

If cardinals follow the noun, an approximate number is implied :

два дня́, two days
дня́ два, about two days
три го́да, three years
го́да три, about three years

NOTE 2. When 2, 3, 4 qualify a noun which is preceded by an adjective, the adjective can stand either in the genitive plural or, occasionally, in the nominative plural (but not in the genitive singular, although the noun is in the genitive singular) :

два крѣпких стола́, two strong tables
два ста́ршие бра́та, two eldest brothers
 (The latter form is not frequently used.)

NOTE 3. In giving the year of some event, only the last member of the number is declined :

in the year 1923 *в ты́сяча девяты́сот тре́тьем году́*

This rule applies to all ordinal numerals, where the last member only is declined.

Dates (in the meaning of : on a certain date) are usually given in the genitive :

on the 10th May 1923 *деся́того ма́я ты́сяча девяты́сот
 два́дцать тре́тьего го́да*

But in the expression 'to-day is the 10th of May' the nominative is used : *сегодня десятое мая*.

NOTE. The form of question when asking 'what is to-day's date?' is : *какое сегодня число?* The answer implies : *число* (*neuter*).

§ 55b. *Collective (group) Numerals.*

In Russian there are collective (group) numerals up to ten, besides the cardinals. They are :

двое, трое, четверо, пятеро, шестеро, семеро, восьмеро, девятеро, десятеро

They denote a collective completed group. Their declensions are :

<i>Nom.</i> <i>двое</i>	<i>трое</i>	<i>четверо</i>	} <i>пятеро</i> <i>шестеро</i> <i>семеро</i> <i>восьмеро</i> <i>девятеро</i> <i>десятеро</i> are declined as <i>четверо</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>двоих</i>	<i>троих</i>	<i>четверых</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> <i>двоим</i>	<i>троим</i>	<i>четверым</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> <i>N. or G.</i> <i>Н. or G.</i>	<i>Н. or G.</i>	<i>Н. or G.</i>	
<i>Instr.</i> <i>двоими</i>	<i>троими</i>	<i>четверыми</i>	
<i>Loc.</i> <i>двоих</i>	<i>троих</i>	<i>четверых</i>	

NOTE 1. Collective numerals are used mainly with masculine nouns designating persons (also with the neuter noun, *дети*, children):

двое мужиков, two peasants
трое детей, three children

двое, трое, четверо are also employed with nouns (all genders) which are used only in the plural. (See § 33, sub-section (2).)

двое ворот, two gates
двое суток, two days and two nights

but : *пять ворот* (not *пятеро ворот*)
пять суток (not *пятеро суток*)

In all oblique cases the simple series of numerals is used :

двух суток (not *двоих суток*)

When used with such articles as носки́ (socks), сапоги́ (boots), it means pairs :

двое́ носко́в, two *pairs* of socks
двое́ сапо́г, two *pairs* of boots

NOTE 2. While collective numerals can be used without a noun as a predicate complement :

нас было́ трое́, there were three of us,

the simple series of cardinal numerals must always be accompanied by a noun :

нас было́ пять челове́к, де́сять челове́к, etc.
there were five, ten of us, etc.

§ 55c. Fractional Numerals.

The most in use are полови́на (half) and полтора́¹ (one and a half). Полови́на is declined as a feminine noun in **a**; in полтора́¹ the oblique cases have an inserted **y** after пол (except accusative), and the case-endings are **a** throughout :

Masculine and Neuter.

<i>Nom.</i> полтора́ рубля́	полтора́ста
(1½ roubles)	(150)
<i>Gen.</i> полу́тора рублёй	полу́тораста
<i>Dat.</i> полу́тора рублём	полу́тораста
<i>Acc.</i> полтора́ рубля́	полтора́ста
<i>Instr.</i> полу́тора рублём	полу́тораста
<i>Loc.</i> полу́тора рубля́х	полу́тораста

Feminine.

<i>Nom.</i> полторы́ страни́цы	полчасá
(1½ pages)	(half an hour)
<i>Gen.</i> полу́тора страни́ц	полчасá
<i>Dat.</i> полу́тора страни́цам	полчасу́
<i>Acc.</i> полторы́ страни́цы	полчасá
<i>Instr.</i> полу́тора страни́цами	полчасом
<i>Loc.</i> полу́тора страни́цах	полчасе́

Masculine.

¹ полтора́, when used with feminine nouns.

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	пóлдень (noon)	пóлночь (midnight)
<i>Gen.</i>	полúдня	полúночи
<i>Dat.</i>	полúдню	полúночи
<i>Acc.</i>	пóлдень	пóлночь
<i>Instr.</i>	полúднем	полúночью
<i>Loc.</i>	{ полúдне but по полúдни = p.m. } полúночи	

NOTE. полбуты́лки (half a bottle) is declined as полторы́; полфúнта (half a pound) is declined as полчасá. As пóлдень, пóлночь are declined полднѣ́ (half a day), полно́чи (half a night).

5. VERBS

§ 56. *Active and Neuter Verbs.*

Russian verbs are divided into active and neuter, corresponding to the English transitive and intransitive verbs. Some Russian neuter verbs can be turned into active verbs by the use of a prefix :

жить, to live, but *нажѣть,¹ to gain, to acquire
 быть, to be, „ *забыть,¹ to forget

§ 56a. *Reflexive Verbs.*

Verbs, both transitive and intransitive, can be made reflexive by tacking on the reflexive pronoun-particle *ся* (the Slavonic form for себя́, oneself) after the inflexion *тъ* of the infinitive. If the inflexion of the infinitive is *тѣ́*, *ся* is shortened into *сь*.

мыть, to wash	мы́ться, to wash oneself
брить, to shave	бри́ться, to shave oneself
одева́ть, to dress	одева́ться, to dress oneself

NOTE. In the verbs ending in *ся* (or *сь* after a vowel), the *ся* or *сь* is retained in all the tenses and all the persons in conjugation.

¹ See note to § 60, p. 104.

A few verbs have a reflexive termination without being proper reflexive verbs or having any reflexive meaning :

ошибаться, to err	гордиться, to be proud
бояться, to fear	нравиться, to please, to be liked
надяться, to hope	смеяться, to laugh

In modern Russian these verbs express no meaning without *ся*.

§ 56b. A number of verbs in the reflexive form are used only in impersonal sentences :

нравиться ¹	—мне нравится,	it pleases me, I like
хотеться	—мне хочется,	I should like, I want
спаться	—мне не спится,	I cannot sleep
нездоровиться	—мне нездоровится,	I do not feel well
сниться	—мне снится [снилось],	I see [saw] in my dream (see § 122).

The termination *ся* is usually not accented. There are, however, a few exceptions when *ся* is accented in the past tense :

звался,	was called
брался	} took up
взялся	
начался,	began

Many verbs of the reflexive form in *ся* can be classed as verbs describing a more or less passive state, hence the tendency to use them for impersonal sentences in which the *logical* subject becomes an inverted object. The expressions in the above examples could all be transcribed (paraphrased) so as to turn the sentences into personal ones :

<i>Impersonal Sentence</i>	<i>Personal Sentence</i>
мне нравится	я люблю, I like
мне хочется	я хочу, I want
мне не спится	я не могу спать, I cannot sleep
мне нездоровится	я нездоров, I am unwell
мне снится [снилось]	я вижу [видел] сон, I see [saw] a dream

¹ This verb can also be used in personal sentences.

But the psychological meaning (or purpose) of the impersonal sentence to express primarily a passive, vague, or not quite clearly defined state, would be defeated by turning an impersonal sentence into a personal one; the latter would express too much individual and defined volition. This observation holds good in the case of nearly all Russian impersonal sentences. (See § 122.)

§ 56c. *Reciprocal Verbs.*

Some verbs of the reflexive form ending in **ся**, **сь** have a reciprocal meaning :

дра́ться	— мы дерёмся) we fight
бита́сь	— мы бьёмся	
руга́ться	— они́ руга́ются,	they swear at each other
боро́ться	— они́ бо́рются,	they wrestle
целова́ться	— они́ целу́ются,	they kiss (one another)

Many of these reciprocal verbs are often used in a neuter sense, where no reciprocal meaning can be traced at all :

я борю́сь means : I struggle

я бьюсь „ I fight (against hard circumstances)

NOTE. The particle **ся** is pronounced **са**; **ться** is pronounced **тса**.

§ 56d. A few Russian verbs, both transitive and intransitive, can be used side by side with their reflexive forms, both verbs expressing almost the same meaning :

(a) стуча́ть,	to knock	стуча́ться,	to knock at the door
признава́ть,	to admit	признава́ться,	to confess
слу́шать,	to listen	слу́шаться,	to obey

In the above verbs the reflexive form accentuates the personal element of the performance.

- (b) белѣть — белѣться, to appear white
 чернѣть — чернѣться, to appear black
 серѣть — серѣться, to appear grey

In each of these examples the two verbs express the idea in equal degree. The reflexive form is, however, more frequently used.

- But : (c) *побелѣть means to turn white
 *почернѣть „ to turn black
 *посерѣть „ to turn grey etc.

These three verbs, and others of a similar meaning, are not used in a reflexive form.

§ 57. Tenses of the Indicative Mood.¹

Russian verbs can have three tenses :

1. The present.
2. The past.
3. The future.

The future tense can be either a compound one, formed with the help of the present form of the auxiliary verb *быть* (to be) and the infinitive of the principal verb in imperfective verbs, or it can be a simple future in perfective verbs which is expressed by the present form of the verb itself, but has a future meaning (see § 58) :

- | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| писать (<i>imp.</i>) | я буду писать, | I shall be writing |
| *написать (<i>perf.</i>) | я напишу, | I shall write |

§ 58. Aspects.

Russian verbs have two main aspects :

- (1) Imperfective (verbs denoting an incomplete action or state).
- (2) Perfective (verbs denoting a completed action or state).

Verbs of imperfective aspect describe an action, or a state, which is still going on at whatever time (tense) we refer to it (and which is not completed at that time). Imperfective verbs have three tenses : present, past, and future.

¹ For the conditional and the subjunctive moods see §§ 106, 132.

Verbs of perfective aspect describe an action, or just the moment of its commencement, which is already completed, or will be completed, at whatever time (tense) we refer to the action or state. Verbs of this class have only two tenses : past and future (simple).¹

To the imperfective class also belong verbs which describe an action or a state which took place more than once in the past. These verbs are usually referred to as iterative. They are only used in the past tense :

писывал, used to write

говаривал, used to say

хаживал, used to go, etc. (See § 62.)

§ 59. Every verb is capable of expressing many ideas of action or state.

1. (a) Repetition, or (b) continuity, of action or state :

читать, to read

писать, to write

спать, to sleep

2. Beginning of action or state :

*начать, to begin

*запеть, to start singing

3. Completion (termination) of action or state :

*сделать, to make (to have made)

*спеть, to sing something (a single song)

4. Performance of action on a single occasion :

*дунуть, to blow once

*тронуть, to touch once

5. Momentary character of action :

*сверкнуть, to flash

The first two ideas : repetition and continuity (No. 1), are conveyed by the aspect of the verb which denotes incomplete (unfinished) action or state, namely, by the imperfective aspect.

¹ The present *form* of their conjugation serves as the future tense.

The other ideas (Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5) are conveyed by the aspect of the verb which denotes completed action or state ; namely, by the **perfective aspect**.

It follows that when the moment of inception, or termination, of the action or state is not uppermost in our mind, the aspect to be used is the **imperfective**, which gives merely the general idea of the action or state. The perfective aspect is used when the question of the beginning, or completion, of an action or state comes into play. The perfective is also used when the action is performed on a single occasion, or is only of a momentary character.

он приехал [пришёл] вчера, he arrived [came] yesterday (and remained)—**perfective** ;

он приезжал [приходил], he came (but did not stay and went back ; or, he came more than once)—**imperfective** ; etc.

§ 60. *Formation of Perfective Verbs.*

The student is advised to learn to recognize the structure of the infinitive of verbs. This will help him to discriminate between the aspects. He will learn by observation that the infinitive of derivative verbs usually consists of a stem (infinitive without the termination **ТЬ, ТИ**) which comprises root, and often a suffix, and some prepositional prefix. Gradually he will also learn to distinguish the meaning of the prepositional prefixes and the changes which they effect in the meaning of the verb itself.

(*Note.—All perfective verbs in this book are marked *.*)

Perfective Verbs.

(1) Many simple (primary) imperfective verbs can be turned into perfectives by the use of a prepositional prefix :

ехать,	to go on a journey
*по-ехать,	to start on a journey
*при-ехать,	to arrive
*пере-ехать,	to travel across
*у-ехать,	to go away etc.

Here the prefixes, besides giving the verbs a perfective meaning, also impart an idea of direction.

The function of certain prepositional prefixes is merely to lend to the imperfective verb the character of a perfective, and thus to give its present form a future meaning, without altering it fundamentally. To such prefixes belong **по, на, с, у**. But these and many other prepositional prefixes, besides turning the imperfective verb into a perfective, can also give it a modified meaning and direction, in accordance with the basic meaning of the directing prefix. The student will learn from experience and observation the exact changes in the meaning of the verb which are effected by various prepositional prefixes :

дѣлать,	to do, to make	(imperfective)
*с-дѣлать,	to do, to make	} (perfective)
*пере-дѣлать,	to alter	
*при-дѣлать,	to attach, to fix	
*на-дѣлать,	to make in a quantity	
*за-дѣлать,	to stop up, block up	
*под-дѣлать,	to forge	

(See detailed statement about prefixes in § 63.)

(2) Although the greater number of primary verbs are of the imperfective aspect, there are a few primary verbs which are of the perfective aspect :

The corresponding imperfective verbs are :

*бросить,	to throw	бросать
*кончить,	to finish	кончать
*стать,	to become	становиться
*пасть [пад-ть],	to fall	падать
*пустить,	to let (go)	пускать
*лечь [лег-ть],	to lie down	ложиться
*сесть [сед-ть],	to sit down	сидиться
*взять, ¹	to take	брать
*хватить,	to snatch, to seize	хватать

¹ This is a derivative verb. (See § 64, 7.)

(3) Many perfective verbs are formed from imperfective verbs by changing the accented suffixes *á, ý, vá*¹ of the latter into *и, е, ну*, or by shifting the accent :

пленя́ть,	to captivate	*плени́ть
пуска́ть,	to let (go)	*пусти́ть
проща́ть,	to forgive	*прости́ть
дава́ть,	to give	*да́ть
покупа́ть,	to buy	*купи́ть
па́дать,	to fall	*пасть [*у-]
стоя́ть,	to stand	*ста́ть
дева́ть,	to put	*де́ть
надева́ть,	to put on	*наде́ть
избегáть,	to avoid	*избе́гнуть
ду́ть,	to blow	*ду́нуть
крича́ть,	to shout, to cry	*кри́кнуть
кида́ть,	to throw	*ки́нуть
гляде́ть,	to glance	*гля́нуть
двига́ть,	to move	*двигну́ть
трога́ть,	to touch	*тро́нуть

NOTE 1. The perfective verbs ending in *ну́ть* signify that the action is only performed once. (See § 79 (b).)

NOTE 2. A number of verbs ending in *ну́ть* have an inchoative character (which is quite distinct from the meaning of one performance only). These are of the imperfective aspect and can be turned into perfectives by a prefix. (See § 79 (a).)

Perfective

тони́ть,	to be drowning	*утони́ть,	to be drowned
ги́бнуть,	to be perishing	*поги́бнуть,	to perish
гасну́ть,	to be extin- guished	*погáсну́ть,	to become ex- tinguished
ме́рзнуть,	to be freezing	*заме́рзнуть,	to get frozen
со́хнуть,	to turn dry	*засо́хнуть,	to become dry
тяну́ть,	to draw, to drag	*дотяну́ть,	to draw to the end etc.

¹ The suffix *vá* is dropped.

NOTE 3. Some imperfective verbs have their perfective counterpart in verbs of a different root :

ловить, to catch	*поймать
говорить, to speak	*сказать, to say
брать, to take	*взять
класть, to put	*положить
бить, to beat	*ударить, to strike
(besides	*побить, to give a beating)

§ 60a. A few verbs have both an imperfective and a perfective meaning (double aspect) :

велеть, to bid	я велю, I bid, I shall bid
казнить, to execute	он казнит, he executes, he will execute
ранить, to wound	он ранит, he wounds, he will wound

§ 60b. A few verbs have no imperfective aspect and are used in the perfective only :

*опомниться, to come to oneself again, to recover
*очнуться, to come back to consciousness
*погодить, to wait
*поймать, to catch. (See note 3 above)
*сжалиться, to take (have) pity

§ 60c. A number of verbs have no perfective aspect, and are only used in the imperfective. They are mainly neuter verbs which describe a general state :

зависеть (от + <i>gen.</i>),	to depend on
недомогать,	to be ailing
нуждаться (в + <i>loc.</i>),	to be in need (of)
обладать (<i>instr.</i>),	to be in possession of
обонять,	to smell
опасаться (<i>gen.</i>),	to fear, to be apprehensive (of)
отсутствовать,	to be absent
повиноваться (<i>dat.</i>),	to obey
подражать (<i>dat.</i>),	to imitate

предвидѣть,	to foresee
принадлежать (<i>dat.</i>),	to belong
присутствовать,	to be present
преслѣдовать (<i>acc.</i>),	to persecute
сожалѣть (<i>o + loc.</i>),	to regret
содержать,	to keep, maintain
состоять { (<i>из + gen.</i>) } { (<i>при + loc.</i>) }	to consist of; to be (in the capacity of)
стоить,	to cost
участвовать (<i>в + loc.</i>),	to participate
etc.	

§ 61. *Definite and Indefinite Verbs.*

In Russian nearly all verbs can imply both a definite (applied) meaning and an indefinite (general) meaning:

я учу can mean 'I teach now' and 'I teach habitually.'

However, the distinction between these two meanings is often expressed by two different verbs, or by the same verb in a different form (mostly in verbs conveying the idea of movement):

летать,	to fly habitually
летѣть,	to fly now on a definite occasion and in a definite direction
птица летает,	a bird flies (habitually)
человѣкъ ходит,	a man goes (, ,), walks
рыба плавает,	a fish swims (, ,)
птица летит,	the bird flies (over the roof)
человѣкъ идѣтъ,	the man goes (down the street)
рыба плывѣтъ,	the fish swims (towards the boat)

NOTE 1. The definite verbs of this class are mostly simple (primary) verbs; the indefinite are derivatives (usually with the insertion of a suffix).

NOTE 2. Verbs in the indefinite class are always of the imperfective aspect, and their aspect is not altered even when a prepositional prefix is added for direction.

Definite verbs, on the other hand, become perfective by the addition of a prepositional prefix. (See § 63.)

Imperfective

прилетать, to come flying
приходить, to come (here)
переносить, to carry across ;
to suffer

Perfective

*прилететь
*придти
*перенести

§ 61a. The most frequently used verbs, of both the indefinite and definite class, are :

Indefinite

видать, to see
слыхать, to hear
бегать, to run
гонять, to drive
сажать, to plant
носить, to carry ; to wear
ходить, to go, to walk
водить, to lead
возить, to cart
летать, to fly
плавать, to swim
ездить, to travel

Definite

видеть
слышать
бежать
гнать
садить
нести
итти [идти]
вести
везти
лететь
плыть
ехать

NOTE 1. The respective shades of meaning of the indefinite and definite forms of a Russian verb can be approximately conveyed in English as :

I do	} (<i>indefinite</i>)	I am doing	} (<i>definite</i>)
I read		I am reading	

NOTE 2. видать, слыхать are never used in the present tense. They are used in the past only in an iterative sense :

не видал,	не слыхал	(See § 62.)
видал,	слыхал	

NOTE 3. The indefinite verbs бѣгать, сажать, плавать, ѣздить are not used for the formation of new imperfectives with a directional prefix; their iterative forms бѣгать, саживать, плаывать, езжать take their place in such cases. (See §§ 63-64.)

§ 62. *Iterative Verbs.* (See § 58.)

The imperfective-iterative verbs are usually formed from imperfective verbs by changing the vowel of the stem in the infinitive (before *тъ*) into *ыва*, *ива*, *ва*, or an accented *á* or *й*.

быть,	to be	{ бывáть, бывáл [бывáло],	used to be [used to]
дѣлать,	to do	{ дѣлывáть, дѣлывáл,	used to do
гулять,	to stroll; to be idle	{ гу́ливáть, гу́ливáл	{ used to stroll; used to be idle
ходить,	to go	{ хáживáть, хáживáл,	used to go
сидѣть,	to sit	{ сй́живáть, сй́живáл,	used to sit
знать,	to know	{ знавáть, знавáл,	used to know
ѣхать,	to travel	{ ежжáть, ежжáл,	used to travel
есть, [ед-тъ]	to eat	{ едáть, едáл,	used to eat
печь, [пек-тъ]	to bake	{ пекáть, пекáл,	used to bake
топить,	to heat	{ тáпливáть, тáпливáл,	used to heat

NOTE 1. **з, д** of the imperfective are commuted into **ж** in the iterative ; **с** is commuted into **ш** ; **т** is commuted into **ч** or **ш**.

Often an **и** is inserted for euphony if the stem of the imperfective ends in a labial consonant.

о of the root is changed into **а**.

NOTE 2. Iterative verbs can be turned into imperfectives by prefixing a prepositional prefix, often with the meaning of the newly formed verb slightly altered. (See §§ 63-64.)

§ 63. *Prepositional Prefixes which frequently modify or alter the original meaning of an Imperfective Verb to which they are attached, besides turning it into a Perfective one. (See § 60.)*

The meaning and direction which prepositional prefixes impart to verbs to which they are attached are set out below. Nearly all the newly formed perfective verbs can be turned again into imperfectives, with the identical modified meaning, by tacking on the same prepositional prefix to the iterative (or indefinite) form of each verb (see §§ 61-62). These modified imperfectives are given in the right-hand column.

NOTE 1. The perfective verbs are shown by an asterisk (*).

NOTE 2. The first and second person singular and third person plural are given after each infinitive. The form of the second person singular indicates the class of conjugation to which the verb belongs, and also shows whether the accent is fixed or not. For further guidance see § 70 for the formation of the present tense, and § 72 for the accent.

For the formation of the past tense see § 83 ; for the accent in the past tense see § 84 ; for the formation of the imperative see § 82.

В- [во-] = *motion inside* :ит-ти, to go
[ид-ти]*вой-ти, to enter
вой-ду́, -дѣшь, -ду́твход-и́ть
вхож-у́, вхо́д-ишь
вхо́д-ят
въезжа́-тьѣх-ать, to travel,
to drive*въѣх-ать, to drive in,
to enter, by driving
въѣд-у, въѣд-ешь
въѣд-ут-ю, -ешь
-ютбеж-а́ть, to run
бег-у́, беж-и́шь
бег-у́т*вбеж-а́ть, to run in
вбег-у́, вбеж-и́шь
вбег-у́твбегá-ть
-ю, -ешь
-ют**Вз-** [взо-, воз-] = *motion upwards* :

ит-ти

*взой-ти, to rise (sun),
to go up
взойд-у́, взойд-ѣшь
взойд-у́твсход-и́ть
всхож-у́, всхо́д-ишь
всхо́д-ят

NOTE. **з** changes into **с** before a voiceless consonant :
встать (to get up) instead of взстать (**с** is then absorbed).

Вы- = *motion from inside* :

ит-ти

*вый-ти,¹ to get out, to
go out
выд-у́ (й is dropped)
выд-ешь, выд-утвыход-и́ть
выхож-у́
выхо́д-ишь, выхо́д-ят

ѣх-ать

*выех-ать, to drive out
выед-у, выед-ешь
выед-утвыезжа́-ть
-ю, -ешь
-ют

беж-а́ть

*выбеж-а́ть, to run out
выбег-у, выбеж-ишь
выбег-утвыбегá-ть
-ю, -ешь
-ют**До-** = *completion (to a finish)* :

ит-ти

*дой-ти, to go as far
дойд-у́, дойд-ѣшь
дойд-у́тдоход-и́ть
дохож-у́, дохо́д-ишь
дохо́д-ят

ѣх-ать

*доѣх-ать, to drive as far
*доѣд-у, доѣд-ешь
доѣд-утдоезжа́-ть
-ю, -ешь
-ют

беж-а́ть

*добеж-а́ть, to run as far
добег-у́, добеж-ишь
добег-у́тдобегá-ть
-ю, -ешь
-ют

¹ **вы-** always takes the stress-accent in perfective verbs, but not in imperfectives.

за- *has mostly a meaning of starting, also of turning in :*

ит-ти	*зай-ти, to look in ; to set (sun)	заход-ить
	зайд-у, зайд-ешь	захож-у, заход-ишь
	зайд-ут	заход-ят
ех-ать	*заех-ать, to look in (turn in) while driving	заезжа-ть
	заед-у, заед-ешь	-ю, -ешь
	заед-ут	-ют
беж-ать	*забеж-ать, to run in	забегá-ть
	забег-у, забеж-ишь	-ю, -ешь
	забег-ут	-ют

на- = 1. *do in quantities* (mostly with transitive verbs) ;
 = 2. *have enough* (mostly with reflexive verbs) ;
 = 3. *get close to an object* (almost step on it) ;
 = 4. *put on, or on top :*

1. бр-ать, to take	*набр-ать, to get a quantity	набирá-ть
бер-у, бер-ешь	набер-у, набер-ешь	-ю, -ешь
бер-ут	набер-ут	-ют
2. пи-ть, to drink	*напи́-ться, to drink enough ; to get drunk	напивá-ться
пь-ю, пь-ёшь	напь-юсь, напь-ёшься	-юсь, -ешься
пь-ют	напь-ются	-ются
3. ит-ти	*най-ти, to come upon ; to find	наход-ить
	найд-у, найд-ешь	нахож-у, нахóд-ишь
	найд-ут	нахóд-ят
4. кры-ть, to cover	*накр-ыть, to cover up ; to cover over	накрывá-ть
крó-ю, крó-ешь	накрó-ю, накрó-ешь	-ю, -ешь
крó-ют	накрó-ют	-ют

о- [об-, обо-] = *motion about, around :*

ит-ти	*обой-ти, to go round	обход-ить
	обойд-у, обойд-ешь	обхож-у, обхóд-ишь
	обойд-ут	обхóд-ят

от- [ото-] = *motion away from :*

ит-ти	*отой-ти, to go, move away	отход-ить
	-д-у, -д-ешь	отхож-у, отхóд-ишь
	-д-ут	отхóд-ят

- пере- = 1. *motion across* ;
 = 2. *repetition* ;
 = 3. *doing over again* :

- | | | |
|-------------------|---|---------------|
| 1. ёх-ать | *переёх-ать, to drive across,
over | переезжа-ть |
| | переед-у, переед-ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| | переед-ут | -ют |
| 2. чита-ть | *перечита-ть, to read over
again, anew | перечитыва-ть |
| -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ют | -ют | -ют |
| 3. дела-ть, to do | *передела-ть, to alter | переделява-ть |
| -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ют | -ют | -ют |

по- 1. *denotes completion of action* ;

2. *denotes action or state of short duration* :

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. ес-ть, to eat | *поёс-ть, to have a meal | поед-ть, to be devouring |
| ем, ешь, ест | поём, поёшь, поест | -ю, -ешь |
| ед-ём, ед-ите | поед-ём, поед-ите | -ют |
| ед-ят | поед-ят | |
| 2. говор-ить, to
talk, to speak | *поговор-ить, to have
a chat | поговарива-ть, to go on
talking |
| -ю, -ишь | -ю, -ишь | -ю, -ешь |
| -ят | -ят | -ют |

под- 1. *denotes motion under, up to* ;

2. *gives the meaning of doing slightly* ;

3. *denotes subterfuge* ;

4. *gives idea of preliminary action* :

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|----------------|
| 1. ёх-ать | *подъёх-ать, to drive up | подъезжа-ть |
| | подъед-у, подъед-ешь | -ю, -ешь |
| | подъед-ут | -ют |
| 2. крас-ить, to
paint | *подкрас-ить, to touch up,
to paint a little | подкрашива-ть |
| краш-у | подкраш-у | -ю |
| крас-ишь | подкрас-ишь | -ешь |
| крас-ят | подкрас-ят | -ют |
| 3. смотр-еть,
to look | *подсмотр-еть, to
espy | подсматрива-ть |
| смотр-ю | подсмотр-ю | -ю |
| смóтр-ишь | подсмóтр-ишь | -ешь |
| смóтр-ят | подсмóтр-ят | -ют |

дела-ть, to do	*поддела-ть, to forge	поддѣлыва-ть
-ю, -ешь	-ю, -ешь	-ю, -ешь
-ют	-ют	-ют
4. гото́в-ить, to prepare	* подгото́в-ить, to coach, to prepare	подгото́вли-ть
гото́вл-ю	подгото́вл-ю	-ю
гото́в-ишь	подгото́в-ишь	-ешь
гото́в-ят	подгото́в-ят	-ют

при- denotes : 1. *arrival* ; 2. *fixing, attaching* :

1. ит-ті	*прит-ті, to come	приход-іть
	прид-у, прид-ешь	прихож-у, приход-ишь
	прид-ут (й is dropped)	приход-ят
ѣхать	*приѣх-ать, to arrive	приезжа-ть
	приѣд-у, приѣд-ешь	-ю, -ешь
	приѣд-ут	-ют
2. дела-ть	*придела-ть, to fix, attach	придѣлыва-ть
-ю, -ешь	-ю, -ешь	-ю, -ешь
-ют	-ют	-ют

про- denotes : 1. *action through* ; 2. *motion through* ;
3. *covering a certain unit of time or space* :

1. би-ть, to beat	*пробі-ть, to beat through	пробива-ть
бь-ю, бь-ешь	пробь-ю, пробь-ешь	-ю, -ешь
бь-ют	пробь-ют	-ют
2. } ит-ті	*прой-ті, to go through ;	проход-іть
3. }	to go a certain distance	

раз- denotes : 1. *division* ; 2. *dispersion* ;
3. *highest point of action or state* :

1. би-ть, to beat	*разбі-ть, to beat asunder, to break up, to smash	разбива-ть
	разобь-ю, разобь-ешь	-ю, -ешь
	разобь-ют	-ют
2. ит-ті, to go	*разой-тісь, to disperse, to separate	расход-іться
	разойд-усь	расхож-усь
	разойд-ешься	расход-ишься
	разойд-утся	расход-ятся
3. та-ять, to melt (snow, ice)	*раста-ять, to melt away	растаива-ть
-ю, -ешь, -ют	-ю, -ешь, -ют	-ю, -ешь, -ют

- c-* denotes : 1. *moving away* [off] ;
 2. *coming together* (in reflexive verbs) ;
 3. *completion of action* :

1. двига-ть, to move -ю, -ешь, -ют	*сдвин-уть, to shift -у, -ешь, -ут	сдвига-ть -ю, -ешь, -ют
2. ит-ти	*сой-тись, to come together сойд-уться, сойд-ёшься сойд-утся	сход-иться схож-уться, сход-ишься сход-ятся

NOTE. *сходить* means : just to go once.

3. жечь-ь, to burn [жег-ть]	*сжечь, to burn up сожж-ёт, сожж-ёшь сожж-ут	сжиг-ать -ю, -ешь -ют
--------------------------------	--	-----------------------------

y- means mostly : *away into distance ; disappearance* :

ит-ти	*уйти, to go away	уходить
бежать	*убежать, to run away	убегать
ехать	*уехать, to go away, on a journey	уезжать

NOTE 1. The prepositional prefixes **вз** [воз], **раз**, change into **ве** [вое], **рае** if they are tacked on to verbs beginning with a voiceless consonant :

всходить, to come up, to rise
**растаять*, to melt away

NOTE 2. Besides the prepositional prefixes enumerated above there are a few others, such as : **из**, **низ**, **без**, **пред**, denoting roughly : out, down, without, before. The student is advised to verify the exact modified meaning of any compound verb by consulting the dictionary, even if he is clear about the meaning of the parent verb and of the directional meaning of the prepositional prefix.

NOTE 3. If a prepositional prefix ending in a consonant is attached to a verb beginning with the soft vowels **я**, **ю**, **е**, the hard sign (**ь**) is inserted for euphony. The soft **и** is usually turned into **ы**.

NOTE 4. A modified directional meaning is imparted by prepositional prefixes when they are attached to nouns derived from verbs :

вход,	entry
уход,	departure
восход,	rise (sunrise)
закход,	setting (of the sun)
приход,	arrival ; income
расход,	expenditure
доход,	income
проход,	passage
находка,	find
обход,	roundabout way
отход,	departure (of train)
отъезд,	departure (of a person)
переход,	transition
перевод,	translation
сходка,	meeting
сход,	meeting, descent
etc.	

§ 64. Below is a list of a few main groups of verbs in frequent use which receive a modified, and often different, meaning when prefixed by a prepositional prefix. In the list are set out :

- (1) The original (parent) verb.
- (2) The derivative perfective, through the addition of the prepositional prefix, with its modified meaning.
- (3) The modified perfective turned imperfective again through the addition of an iterative suffix. (See §§ 61-62.)

It will be seen that not in all cases does the same prepositional prefix convey to the derivative verbs the identical meaning and direction.

NOTE. In the conjugation patterns the 1st and 2nd person singular and 3rd person plural are given.

1. (a) **говори́ть — ка́зать group.**

говор-и́ть
to speak

*ска́з-а́ть
to tell

ска́зыва-ть
to say

Conjugation pattern:

-ю, -ишь, -ят

скаж-у́

-ю

скаж-е́шь

-е́шь

скаж-у́т

-ю́т

Imperative:

-и́, -и́те

скажи́ [-те]

-и́ [-и́те]

Past: -л, -ла, -ло, -ли

Accent of past tense is on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

*вы́каз-а́ть, to show

выка́зыва-ть

*дока́з-а́ть, to prove

дока́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

*зака́з-а́ть, to order

зака́зыва-ть (*y + gen.*)

*нака́з-а́ть, to punish

нака́зыва-ть

*ока́з-а́ть, to render

ока́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

*ока́з-а́ться, to turn out

ока́зыва-тьсѧ (*instr.*)

*отка́з-а́ть, to refuse

отка́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

*отка́з-а́ться (*neuter*),
to refuse

отка́зыва-тьсѧ (*от + gen.*)

*переска́з-а́ть, to repeat

переска́зыва-ть

*подска́з-а́ть, to prompt

подска́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

*пока́з-а́ть, to show

пока́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

*прика́з-а́ть, to give an
order

прика́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

*расска́з-а́ть, to relate,
to tell

расска́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

*ука́з-а́ть, to indicate

ука́зыва-ть (*dat.*)

(b) **говори́ть — гово́ривать group.**

*вы́говор-и́ть, to reserve
for oneself; to utter

выгово́рива-ть (*себе + acc.*)

*догово́р-и́ть, to finish
talking

-ю, -е́шь, -ю́т
догово́рива-ть

*догово́р-и́ться, to come
to an agreement

догово́рива-тьсѧ (*о + loc.*)

*загово́р-и́ть, to begin
to speak

загово́рива-ть

*нагово́р-и́ть, to slander

нагово́рива-ть

*отговор-ить, to dissuade	отговáрива-ть
*переговор-ить, to talk over	переговáрива-ть (о, об + loc.)
*поговор-ить, to have a talk	(no new imperfective form)
*подговор-ить, to incite, to induce	подговáрива-ть
*приговор-ить, to condemn, to sentence	приговáрива-ть
*уговор-ить, to persuade, to induce	уговáрива-ть

NOTE. All the perfective forms in this group are conjugated as говор-ить — сказ-ать. All the imperfective forms are conjugated as говáр-ива-ть — скáзыва-ть. The imperfectives have a fixed accent.

2. да-ва́-ть — да-ть group (to give) (dat. + acc.).

дава́-ть

*да-ть

Conjugation pattern :

да-ю́

дам

дад-и́м

да-е́шь

дашь

дад-и́те

да-ю́т

даст

дад-у́т

Imperative : дава́й, -те да-и́, -те

*вы́да-ть, to issue, to give out

выд-ав-а́ть

*зада́-ть, to set (a task or question, etc.)

зад-ав-а́ть

*отда́-ть, to return ; to give away

отд-ав-а́ть

*переда́-ть, to hand over, to pass on, to tell

перед-ав-а́ть

*пода́-ть, to hand, to serve

под-ав-а́ть

*прида́-ть, to add, to attach

прид-ав-а́ть

*продá-ть, to sell

прод-ав-а́ть

*разда́-ть, to distribute

разд-ав-а́ть

*сда́-ть, to hand in

сд-ав-а́ть

NOTE 1. All the perfective forms in this group are conjugated as да-ть ; all the imperfective forms are conjugated as да-ва́-ть. The suffix ва of the imperfective is dropped in the conjugation of the present tense. The accent is shifted to the personal terminations.

NOTE 2. The accent in the past of the perfectives is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine, but goes back to the prefix in the masculine, neuter, and plural :

за́дал, -а́, -о, -и	при́дал, -а́, -о, -и
о́тдал, -а́, -о, -и	про́дал, -а́, -о, -и
пе́редал, -а́, -о, -и	ро́здал, -а́, -о, -и ¹
по́дал, -а́, -о, -и	

3. брать — взять group (to take).

брать	*взять	<i>Iterative</i>
<i>Conjugation pattern :</i>		биро́-ть
беру́	возьму́	биро́-ю
берёшь	возьмёшь	биро́-ешь
берёт	возьмёт	биро́-ют
<i>Imperative :</i> бери́, -те	возьми́, -те	(not frequently used, except for forming imperfective forms)
*вы́бр-ать, to select		выби́ра-ть
*забр-ать, to take away		заби́ра-ть
*набр-ать, to gather		наби́ра-ть
*отобр-ать, ² to take away		отби́ра-ть
*подобр-ать, ² to pick up		подби́ра-ть
*прибр-ать, to tidy up		приби́ра-ть
*разобр-ать, ² to sort out, to take to pieces		разби́ра-ть
*собр-ать, to collect, to gather		соби́ра-ть
*убр-ать, to clear away		уби́ра-ть

* NOTE. All perfective forms are conjugated as брать ; all imperfective as биро́-ть. The accent in the past of the perfectives is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine : убрáл, убрáла, убрáло, убрáли.

4. -ста-ва́-ть — ста-ть group (to become).

NOTE. -ставáть has no independent meaning of its own.

Conjugation pattern :

-ставáть	*ста́ть
-ста-ю́, -ста-ёшь, -ста-ю́т	ста́н-у, ста́н-ешь, ста́н-ут
<i>Imperative :</i> -става́й, -те	ста́нь, -те
<i>Past :</i> -л, -ла, -ло, -ли	

Accent of past tense is on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

¹ Masculine, neuter, and plural change а of prefix into о.

² The euphonic о of the prefix is dropped in the present form : отберу́, подберу́, etc.

*вста-ть, to get up	вста-ва́-ть
*доста́-ть, to get, to obtain	доста-ва́-ть
*заста́-ть, to find (a person); to meet with	заста-ва́-ть
*наста́-ть, to approach, to come (seasons, time)	наста-ва́-ть
*оста́-ться, to remain, to stay	оста-ва́-ться
*отста́-ть, to get behind	отста-ва́-ть (<i>absolute, or</i> <i>от + gen.</i>)
*переста́-ть, to cease	переста-ва́-ть
*приста́-ть, to attach oneself	приста-ва́-ть (<i>к + dat.</i>)
*расста́-ться, to part	расста-ва́-ться (<i>с + instr.</i>)
*уста́-ть, to get tired	уста-ва́-ть

NOTE. All the perfective forms in this group are conjugated as *стать*; all the imperfectives as *-ставать*. The suffix *ва* of the imperfective is dropped in the present tense, and the accent goes over to the personal terminations. In the past tense the suffix *ва* is not dropped.

5. БЫВА́-ТЬ — БЫ́-ТЬ group (to be).

Conjugation pattern:

быва́ть

быва́-ю, быва́-ешь, быва́-ют

Imperative: быва́й, -те

бы́ть

бу́д-у, бу́д-ешь, бу́д-ут

бу́дь, -те

*доб-ы́ть, to obtain, to procure

*заб-ы́ть, to forget

*поб-ы́ть, to stay a short time

*приб-ы́ть, to arrive

*проб-ы́ть, to stay some definite time

*сб-ы́ть, to dispose of

добыва́-ть

забыва́-ть

побыва́-ть

прибыва́-ть

пробыва́-ть

сбыва́-ть

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as *быть*; all the imperfectives as *быва́ть*. The accent in the past of the perfectives is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine, but goes to the prefix in the masculine, neuter, and plural in:

добы́ть, до́был, -а́, -о, -и

побы́ть, по́был, -а́, -о, -и

прибы́ть, при́был, -а́, -о, -и

пробы́ть, про́был, -а́, -о, -и

but: забы́ть, за́был, -а, -о, -и

6. **дева́-ть — де-ть group (to put).***Conjugation pattern :*

дева́ть	*деть
дева́-ю, дева́-ешь, дева́-ют	де́н-у, де́н-ешь, де́н-ут
<i>Imper.:</i> дева́й, -те	де́нь, -те
<i>Past:</i> дева́л, -а, -о, -и	де́л, -а, -о, -и
*де́-ться, to put (get) oneself to take refuge	дева́-ться
*наде́-ть, to put on	надева́-ть
*оде́-ться, to dress oneself	одева́-ться
*разде́-ться, to undress oneself	раздева́-ться
*переоде́-ться, to change (clothes)	переодева́-ться

NOTE 1. The reflexive particle **ся** or **сь** is tacked on immediately after the personal termination in conjugation.

NOTE 2. The suffix **ва** in the imperfective verbs of groups 5 and 6 is *not* dropped in the conjugation of the present tense.

NOTE 3. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as **деть** ; all the imperfectives as **дева́ть**.

7. **-има́ть — -я́ть group (to take).**

In verbs of this group the suffixes **им** and **я** are derived from a Slavonic root which had a nasal element of **м**. Prepositional prefixes take a euphonic **н** for the formation of derivatives, with the exception of **взя́ть** (see § 73f), in the infinitive. **-има́ть** and **-я́ть** have no independent meaning in modern Russian.

*взя́-ть (see Group 3)	взима́-ть, to collect (taxes, etc.)
<i>Past:</i> взял, взяла́, -о, -и	
*дона́-ть, to vex, to plague	донима́-ть
дойм-у́, дойм-ёшь, дойм-у́т	-ю, -ешь, -ют
<i>Imper.:</i> дойми́, -те	-й, -йте
<i>Past:</i> до́нял, до́няла́, до́няло, до́няли	
*зана́-ть, to occupy ; to borrow	занима́-ть
займ-у́, займ-ёшь, займ-у́т	-ю, -ешь, -ют
<i>Imper.:</i> займи́, -те	-й, -йте
<i>Past:</i> за́нял, за́няла́, за́няло, за́няли	

<p>*наня-ть, to hire найм-у, найм-ёшь, найм-ут <i>Imper.:</i> найми, -те <i>Past:</i> нанял, наняла, наняло, наняли</p>	<p>нанима-ть -ю, -ешь, -ют -й, -йте</p>
<p>*обня-ть, to embrace обним-у, обним-ёшь, обним-ут <i>Imper.:</i> обними, -те <i>Past:</i> обнял, обняла, обняло, обняли</p>	<p>обнима-ть -ю, -ешь, -ют -й, -ите</p>
<p>*отня-ть, to take away отним-у, отним-ёшь, отним-ут <i>Imper.:</i> отними, -те <i>Past:</i> отнял, отняла, отняло, отняли</p>	<p>отнима-ть (<i>acc.</i> + у, от от + <i>gen.</i>) -ю, -ешь, -ют -й, -ите</p>
<p>*переня-ть, to intercept; to imitate перейм-у, перейм-ёшь, перейм-ут <i>Imper.:</i> перейми, -те <i>Past:</i> перенял, переняла, переняло, -ли</p>	<p>перенима-ть (<i>acc.</i> + у + <i>gen.</i>) -ю, -ешь, -ют -й, -ите</p>
<p>*подня-ть, to raise, to lift подним-у, подним-ёшь, подним-ут <i>Imper.:</i> подними, -те <i>Past:</i> поднял, подняла, подняло, -ли</p>	<p>поднима-ть -ю, -ешь, -ют -й, -ите</p>
<p>*поня-ть, to grasp, to understand пойм-у, пойм-ёшь, пойм-ут <i>Imper.:</i> пойми, -те <i>Past:</i> понял, поняла, поняло, -ли</p>	<p>понима-ть -ю, -ешь, -ют -й, -ите</p>
<p>*приня-ть, to receive, to accept *приня-ться, to set oneself to прим-у (сь), прим-ёшь (ся) прим-ут (ся) <i>Imper.:</i> прими, -те <i>Past:</i> принял, приняла, принялo, -ли [ся, ась, ось, ись]</p>	<p>принима-ть принима-ться (за + <i>acc.</i>) -ю, -ешь (сь, ся) -ют (ся) -й, -ите (сь)</p>
<p>*сня-ть, to take off сним-у, сним-ёшь, сним-ут <i>Imper.:</i> сними, -те <i>Past:</i> снял, сняла, сняло, -ли</p>	<p>снима-ть (<i>acc.</i> + с + <i>gen.</i>) -ю, -ешь, -ют -й, -ите</p>

*снѣ-ться, to take one's photograph

снима-ться

сним-усь, сним-ешься, сним-утся

-юсь, -ешься, -ются

Imper.: сним-йсь, сним-йтесь

-йсь, -йтесь

Past: снялся, снялась, снялись

*уны-ть, to restrain, to calm

унима-ть (*acc.*)

уйм-у, уйм-ешь, уйм-ут

-ю, -ешь, -ют

Imper.: уйми, -те

-й, -йте

Past: унял, уняла, уняло, -ли

NOTE. In the imperfective forms the euphonic **н** of the infinitive is retained in conjugation throughout. In the perfective forms the **н** is retained only if the prepositional prefix ends in a consonant (**от, об, под, с**). If the prepositional prefix ends in a vowel the **н** is dropped in conjugation. The **я** of the perfective infinitive (**-ять**) is replaced in conjugation by **йм** after a prefix ending in a vowel, and by **им** after a prefix ending in a consonant.

The accent. In the perfective verbs of this group the accent is on the personal terminations in the present form if the prefixes end in a vowel (**до, за, на, пере, по, у**), with the exception of **при**. But if the prefix ends in a consonant (**об, от, под, с**) the accent is on the personal termination in the first person of the present form but goes back by one syllable in all the other persons. The same applies to **принять**. In the past tense the accent is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine; in the masculine, neuter, and plural it goes back to the prefix.

8. ходить — идти group. (See § 63.)

9. ездить — езжать-ехать group. (See § 63.)

9a. бежать — бегать group. (See § 63.)

10. нос-ить — нес-ти group (to carry, to wear).

Conjugation pattern:

нош-у, нѳс-ишь, нѳс-ят

нес-у, нес-ѳшь, нес-ут

Imper.: нос-й, -йте

нес-й, -йте

Past: носил, -а, -о, -и

нѳс, несла, -ѳ, -и

нес-ти́, to carry	*внес-ти́, to carry in	внос-ить (в + acc.)
	*вынес-ти, to carry out; to endure	вынос-ить (из + gen.)
	*донес-ти́, to carry as far: to report	донос-ить (до + gen., acc = dat.)
	*занес-ти́, to take in; to enter (in book-keeping)	заноc-ить
	*отнес-ти́, to take to a certain place	относ-ить
	*перенес-ти́, to carry across; to bear, to endure	перенос-ить
	*понес-ти́, to carry away	понос-ить, to run down somebody, to slander
	*пронес-ти́, to carry past	пронос-ить
	*принес-ти́, to fetch	принос-ить
	*разнес-ти́, to carry in all directions	разнос-ить
	*унес-ти́, to carry away	унос-ить

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as нести́; all the imperfectives as носить.

11. воз-ить — вез-ти́ group (to cart, to convey).

Conjugation pattern:

ВОЖ-У́, ВОЗ-ИШЬ, ВОЗ-ЯТ

Imper.: воз-и́, -ите

Past: возил, -а, -о, -и

ВЕЗ-У́, ВЕЗ-ЁШЬ, ВЕЗ-У́Т

ВЕЗ-и́, -ите

ВЕЗ, везла́, -о́, -и́

везти́	*ввез-ти́, to cart in; to import	ввоз-ить (в + acc.)
	*вывез-ти, to cart out	вывоз-ить (из + gen.)
	*довез-ти́, to cart as far	довоз-ить (до + gen.)
	*завез-ти́, to cart in; to cart beyond	завоз-ить
	*навез-ти́, to cart in quantities	навоз-ить
	*отвез-ти́, to cart off	отвоз-ить
	*повез-ти́, to cart off, away	(no corresponding imperfective; повоз-ить means to go on carting for a little time)
	*перевез-ти́, to cart across	перевоз-ить (через + acc.)
	*развез-ти́, to cart in all directions	развоз-ить
	*свез-ти́, to cart off, to cart together	своз-ить
	*увез-ти́, to cart away	увоз-ить

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as везти́; all the imperfectives as возить.

12. вод-ить — вес-ти́ group (to lead, to conduct).

Conjugation pattern :

вож-у́, вод-ишь, вод-ят	вед-у́, вед-ёшь, вед-ут
<i>Imper.:</i> вод-и́, -йте	вед-и́, -йте
<i>Past:</i> вод-и́л, -а, -о, -и	вед-и́л, вел-и́л, -о́, -и́
вес-ти́ *ввес-ти́, to lead in	ввод-ить (в + acc.)
*вы́вес-ти, to lead out	вывод-ить (из + gen.)
*довес-ти, to lead as far; to bring (to the notice)	довод-ить (до + gen.)
*завес-ти́, to install; to lead beyond	завод-ить
*навес-ти́, to lead on; to direct	навод-ить
*отвес-ти́, to lead away	отвод-ить
*повес-ти́, to lead off	(no corresponding imperfective)
*перевес-ти́, to transfer; to translate	перевод-ить
*провес-ти́, to lead past, to conduct (to dupe someone, to pass the time)	провод-ить
NOTE. *провод-ить means: to escort, to see off (see § 66)	
*развес-ти́, to distribute; to separate; to cultivate	развод-ить
*свес-ти́, to lead on one occasion; to bring together; to settle (account)	свод-ить
*увес-ти́, to lead away	увод-ить

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as вести́; all the imperfectives as водить.

13. па́дать — [у] пасть [пад-ть] group (to fall, to drop).

Conjugation pattern :

пад-аю, -ешь, -ют	*упа́сть
<i>Imper.:</i> пада-й, -йте	упад-у́, -ёшь, -у́т
<i>Past:</i> па́дал, -а, -о, -и	-и́, -ите
	пал, -а, -о, -и
*попа́сть (в + acc.), to fall into; to hit	попа́дать
*пропа́сть, to be lost	пропа́дать
*распа́сться, to fall to pieces, to fall to ruin (<i>absolute</i> , or на + acc.)	распа́даться
*напа́сть, to fall on, to assail (на + acc.)	напа́дать

*совпасть (с + *instr.*), to coincide with

совпадать

*спасть (с + *gen.*), to fall off

спадать

*упасть, to fall (off)

(no new imperfective form)

NOTE. All the perfectives in this group are conjugated as упасть. All the imperfectives as падать.

14. кла́дыва-ть — клас-ть [клад-ть]; -лага́-ть — -лож-ить group (to put, to place).

Conjugation pattern :

кла́дыва-ю, -ешь, -ют

клад-у́, -ёшь, -у́т

-лага́-ю, -ешь, -ют

-лож-у́, -ишь, -а́т

Imper.: -й, -йте

-й, -йте

Past: -л, -ла, -ло, -ли клал, -а, -о, -и -ложил, -а, -о, -и

*вложить (в + *acc.*), to put in, to pay in

вкла́дывать

*выложить (из + *gen.*), to put out (lay out), to unpack

выкла́дывать

*доложить, to add (*acc.*), to report (*dat.*)

докла́дывать

*заложить, to pledge, to mortgage (в + *loc.*); to harness (horse) (в + *acc.*)

закла́дывать

*изложить, to expound, to state

изла́гать

*наложить, to put on, to impose

{ накла́дывать, to put on
нала́гать, to impose*отложить, to put aside, to postpone (на + *acc.*)

откла́дывать

*подложить, to put under

подкла́дывать

*положить, to put

полага́ть, to suppose

*положиться (на + *acc.*), to depend upon

полагать́ся

*переложить (из + *gen.* + в + *acc.*), to put to another place; to change horses

перекла́дывать

*предложить (*dat.*), to offer

предлага́ть

*приложить, to attach; to enclose (при + *loc.*); to apply, to affix (*acc.* + к + *dat.*)прикла́дывать
прилага́ть*разложить, to analyse; to resolve (на + *acc.*); to lay out, to unpack{ разлага́ть
раскла́дывать

*разложиться, to become decomposed

разлага́ться

*сложить, to put together

скла́дывать

*удложить, to put away, to pack up (trunk, etc.) (*acc.* + в + *acc.*)

укла́дывать

NOTE 1. All the perfectives are conjugated as -ложить; all the imperfectives either as кла́дывать or as -лага́ть.

NOTE 2. New imperfectives are formed from the iterative *кладывать* when the new verb has a concrete, literal meaning. If the verb has a metaphorical meaning it is formed from the iterative *пагать*.

§ 65. *Formation of Perfective Verbs from Imperfectives in frequent use by prefixing a prepositional prefix without altering their fundamental meaning.*

The prefixes so used are: *по, с, (раз), на, у* (see § 60). The appropriate prefix used for the perfective is given in brackets:

благодар-ить [**по-*], to thank
 -ю, -ишь, -ят
 буд-ить [**раз-*], to wake, to call
 буж-у, буд-ишь, буд-ят
 бежать [**по-*], to run (see § 63)
 варить [**с-*], to cook
 вар-ю, вар-ишь, вар-ят
 верить [**по-*], to believe, to trust
 -ю, -ишь, -ят
 вид-еть [**у-*], to see
 виж-у, вид-ишь, вид-ят
 везти [**по-*], to cart (see § 64)
 вести [**по-*], to lead (see § 64)
 говорить [**по-*], to speak (see § 64)
 гор-еть [**с-*], to burn
 -ю, -ишь, -ят
 гуля-ть [**по-*], to stroll, to take a walk
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 готов-ить [**при-*], to prepare
 готов-лю, -ишь, -ят
 дела-ть [**с-*], to do
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 делаться [**с-*], to become (*instr.*)
 дума-ть [**по-*], to think
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 дыш-ать [**по-*], to breathe (*absolute*
 and *instr.*)
 дыш-у, дыш-ишь, дыш-ат

ездить [**с-*],¹ to travel
 ехать [**по-*], to travel (see § 63)
 есть [**по-*], to eat (see § 63)
 жда-ть [**подо-*], to wait (*absolute*
 and *gen.*)
 жд-у, жд-ёшь, жд-ут
 жел-ать [**по-*], to wish (*gen.*)
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 жечь [**с-*], to burn (see § 73)
 завтрака-ть [**по-*], to have break-
 fast
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 зв-ать [**по-*], to call
 зов-у, зов-ёшь, зов-ут
 знаком-иться [**по-*], to get, to be-
 come, acquainted (*с + instr.*)
 -люсь, -ишься, -ятся
 зна-ть [**у-*], to know
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 звон-ить [**по-*], to ring, to ring up
 (*dat.*)
 звон-ю, звон-ишь, звон-ят
 игра-ть [**по-*], to play
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 иск-ать [**по-*], to seek, to look for
 (*gen.*)
 ищ-у, ищ-ёшь, ищ-ут
 итти [**по-*], to go (see § 63)²

¹ to travel on one occasion (see § 63).

² иду, идёшь, идут.

каз-аться [*по-], to appear, to seem
 (*instr.*)
 каж-ётся, каж-ешься, каж-утся
 крич-ать [*за-], to shout, to cry
 -у, -ишь, -ят
 кур-ить [*по-], to smoke
 кур-ю, кур-ишь, кур-ят
 куша-ть [*по-], to eat
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 леж-ать [*по-], to lie; [*лечь, to
 lie down] (see § 73).
 леж-у, леж-ишь, леж-ат
 люб-ить [*по-], to love, to be fond
 of
 люб-лю, люб-ишь, люб-ят
 молч-ать [*по-], to be silent
 молч-у, молч-ишь, молч-ат
 also *замолч-ать, to stop talk-
 ing, to shut up
 мёрзн-уть [*по-], to freeze
 -у, -ешь, -ут
 *замёрзн-уть, to become frozen
 моч-ь [*с-], to be able to, to be in a
 position to
 мог-у, мог-ешь, мог-ут
 нести [*по-, *с-], to carry (see
 § 64)
 нос-ить [*по-], to wear (see § 64)
 нрав-иться [*по-], to please, to be
 pleasing (*dat.*)
 -люсь, -ишься, -ятся
 обеда-ть [*по-], to dine, to have
 dinner
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 пе-ть [*с-], to sing
 по-ю, по-ёшь, по-ют
 печ-ь [*с-, *ис-], to bake
 пек-у, пек-ёшь, пек-ут
 пис-ать [*на-], to write
 пиш-у, пиш-ешь, пиш-ут
 пи-ть [*по-, *вы-], to drink
 пь-ю, пь-ёшь, пь-ют
 плак-ать [*по-], to cry, to weep
 плач-у, плач-ешь, плач-ут
 *заплак-ать, to start crying

плат-ить [*за-], to pay
 плач-у, плач-ишь, плач-ят, pro-
 nounced as плотишь, плотят
 помн-ить [*во-], to remember
 -ю, -ишь, -ят
 прос-ить [*по-], to ask, to request
 (*absolute and gen.*)
 прош-у, прос-ишь, прос-ят
 раб-ота-ть [*по-], to work
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 рв-ать [*по-], to tear
 рв-у, рв-ёшь, рв-ут
 рез-ать [*по-], to cut
 реж-у, реж-ешь, реж-ут
 сид-еть [*по-], to sit
 сиж-у, сид-ишь, сид-ят
 сл-ать [*по-], to send, to dis-
 patch
 шл-ю, шл-ёшь, шл-ют
 слуш-ать [*по-], to listen
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 слыш-ать [*у-], to hear
 -у, -ишь, -ат
 смотр-еть [*по-], to look
 смотр-ю, см-отр-ишь, см-отр-ят
 сме-яться [*по-], to laugh
 сме-юсь, сме-ёшься, сме-ются
 сп-ать [*по-], to sleep
 сп-лю, сп-ишь, сп-ят
 став-ить [*по-], to put, to put up,
 to place
 -лю, -ишь, -ят
 сто-ять [*по-], to stand
 сто-ю, сто-ишь, сто-ят
 сто-ить, to cost. (No perfective in
 use.)
 ст-ю, ст-ишь, ст-ят
 сты-ть [ст-ан-уть], [*о-], to turn
 cold (food, etc.)
 -ну, -нешь, -нут
 тер-я-ть [*по-], to lose
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 тон-уть [*у-, *по-], to drown, to
 sink
 тон-у, тон-ешь, тон-ут

топ-ить [*вы-], to heat (stove)
 [*у-], to drown
 [*рас-], to melt
 топ-лю, топ-ишь, топ-ят
 *затоп-ить, to light (stove)
 уме-ть [*с-], to be able to, to have
 the ability
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 ужина-ть [*по-], to sup
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 учи-ть[ся], [*по-], to teach (to
 study, with ся)
 уч-у[сь], уч-ишь[ся], уч-ат[ся]

хот-еть [*за-], to wish, to want
 хоч-у, хоч-ешь, хочет; хотím,
 хотíte, хотят
 цел-ов-ать[ся] [*по-], to kiss (one
 another) (с + *instr.*)
 цел-у-ю[сь], цел-у-ешь[ся], цел-
 у-ют[ся]
 чита-ть [по-], to read
 -ю, -ешь, -ют
 шь-ть [*с-], to sew
 шь-ю, шь-ёшь, шь-ют

NOTE. In all the verbs in the above list the prepositional prefix imparts to the perfective form just the idea of completion, or of commencement, of the action or state; occasionally it also shows that the action or state goes on for a short time only (mostly with the prefix *по). In no case does the prepositional prefix lend to the perfective verb any altered or materially modified meaning. Consequently there is normally no need to find a new imperfective form for such verbs, with the same prepositional prefix, for expressing an idea of duration or repetition. Exceptions are presented by the verbs гореть, жечь, спать. New imperfective forms can be formed for these: сгорать, сжигать, посылать.

§ 66. A few verbs in current use take their perfective form by changing the iterative suffix *а*, *я* of the imperfective form into *и* or *у* (*ну*), or by dropping the iterative suffixes *ив*, *ив*, *и*, *ы*:

возвраща-ться, to return

встреча-ть[ся] (с + *instr.*), to meet

вынима-ть, to take out

замеча-ть, to notice

зарабатыва-ть, to earn

*возвра-титься

-шусь, -тишься, -тятся

*встрé-тить[ся]

-чу[сь], -тишь[ся], -тят[ся]

*вын-уть

-у, -ешь, -ут

*замé-тить

-чу, -тишь, -тят

*зарабóта-ть

-ю, -ешь, -ют

засыпа́-ть, to fall asleep	*засн-у́ть ¹ -у́, -ёшь, -у́т
конча́-ть, to finish	*кóнч-ить -у, -ишь, -ат
нагиба́-ться, to stoop	*нагн-у́ться ² -у́сь, -ёшься, -у́тся
начина́-ть, to begin	*нач-а́ть -ну́, -нёшь, -ну́т
оставля́-ть, to leave	*оста́в-ить -лю, -ишь, -ят
отворя́-ть, to open	*отвор-и́ть -ю́, -ишь, -ят
отвеча́-ть, to answer	*отве-ти́ть -чу, -тишь, -тят
отдыха́-ть, to rest	*отдохн-у́ть -у́, -ёшь, -у́т
пада́-ть, to fall	*(у) па́сть [пад-ть] упад-у́, -ёшь, -у́т
повторя́-ть, to repeat	*повтор-ить -ю́, -ишь, -ят
позволя́-ть (<i>dat.</i>), to permit, to allow	*позво́л-ить -ю, -ишь, -ят
поздравля́-ть, to congratulate	*поздра́в-ить -лю, -ишь, -ят
пока́зыва-ть (See § 64 for other verbs of the -каза́ть group.)	*показа́ть
покупа́-ть, to buy	*куп-и́ть -лю́, -ишь, -ят
получа́-ть, to receive	*получ-и́ть -у́, -ишь, -ат
помога́-ть (<i>dat.</i> + <i>v</i> + <i>loc.</i>), to assist	*помóчь помогу́, помóжешь, помóгут
поправля́-ть, to repair, to correct	*попра́в-ить -лю, -ишь, -ят
посеща́-ть, to visit	*посе-ти́ть -щу́, -тишь, -та́т
посыла́-ть (See note to § 65.)	*посла́ть
починя́-ть, to repair	*почин-и́ть -ю́, -ишь, -ят [-ишь, -ят]

¹ See note to проспну́ться, next page.² б is dropped before н for euphony.

предлага́-ть (<i>dat.</i>), to offer	*предложѣть предложу́, предложѣишь, предложат
прибавля́-ть, to add	*прибавѣ-ть -лю, -ишь, -ят
провожа́-ть, to escort, to see off (see § 64, group 12)	*проводѣть провожу́, проводишь, проводят
просыпа́-ться, to wake up	*проснѣ-тъся ¹ -усь, -ѣшься, -ѣтся
реша́-ть, to decide; to solve	*решѣ-ть -у́, -ишь, -а́т
реша́-ться (на + <i>acc.</i>), to make up one's mind	*решѣ-тъся -усь, -ишься, -а́тся
сажа́-ть [сади́ть], to seat, to plant	*посадѣ-ть саж-у́, сади-ишь, сади-ят
сообща́-ть, to communicate	*сообщѣ-ть -у́, -ишь, -а́т
спра́шива-ть, to ask, to enquire	*спросѣ-ть спрош-у́, спросѣишь, спросѣ-ят
согла́ша-ться (с + <i>instr.</i> ; also на + <i>acc.</i>), to agree	*согласѣ-тъся согласѣ-усь, согласѣ-ишься, согласѣ-а́тся
успева́-ть, to succeed; to be in time	*успѣ-тъ -ю, -ешь, -ет
устра́ива-ть, to arrange, to fix up	*устрѣ-бить -ю, -ишь, -ят

NOTE 1. All the imperfective verbs in this list retain the *a* of the stem (before the *тъ*) in conjugation. The terminations are -ю, -ешь, -ют. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive throughout.

NOTE 2. Nearly all the above imperfective verbs were originally derived from their perfective variety by the insertion of an iterative suffix and by the commutation of the consonants: *д* into *ж*, *с* into *ш*, *т* into *ч* and *щ*, or by the insertion of a euphonic *л* after labial consonants. (See § 62, note 1, and § 63.)

¹ *д* is dropped before *н* for euphony.

§ 67. *Reflexive and Reciprocal Verbs.*

бры́-ться [*по-], to shave oneself	бре́-юсь, бре́-ешься, бре́-ются <i>Imper.</i> бре́-йся, бре́-йтесь
возвра́щаться (с, из + <i>gen.</i>) *возврати́ться to return	(see § 66)
встреча́ться (с + <i>instr.</i>) *встрети́ться to meet	(see § 66)
[по]закрыва́-ться (<i>instr.</i>)	-аюсь, -аешься, -аются <i>Imper.</i> -айся, -айтесь
*[по]закр-ы́ться, to cover oneself over	-оюсь, -оешься, -оются <i>Imper.</i> -ойся, -ойтесь
купа́-ться *вы́купа-ться to bathe	-юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь
лож-и́ться [*лечь], to lie down	-усь, -ишься, -ятся <i>Imper.</i> -ись, -итесь
мы́-ться [*по-, *у-], to wash oneself	мо́-юсь, мо́-ешься, мо́-ются <i>Imper.</i> мо́-йся, мо́-йтесь
одева́-ться, to dress oneself раздева́-ться, to undress oneself переодева́-ться, to change clothes	-юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь -нусь, -нешься, -нутя <i>Imper.</i> -нись, -нитесь
*оде́-ться, to dress oneself	
*разде́-ться, to undress oneself	
*переоде́-ться, to change one's clothes	
поднима́-ться, to get up; to rise	-юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь
*подня́-ться, to raise oneself	подним-усь, подни́м-ешься, подни́м-утся <i>Imper.</i> подним-ись, подним-итесь
спуска́-ться, to descend	-юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь
*спуст-и́ться, to descend	спущ-усь, спущ-ишься, спущ-ятся <i>Imper.</i> спуст-ись, спуст-итесь
целова́ться [*по-] (с + <i>instr.</i>), to kiss	-уюсь, -уешься, -уются <i>Imper.</i> -уйся, -уйтесь

§ 68. *Intransitive [neuter] Verbs, ending in ся.*

жал-оваться [*по-], to complain	-уюсь, -уешься, -уются <i>Imper.</i> -уйся, -уйтесь
бо-яться [*по-], to fear (<i>gen.</i>)	-юсь, -ишься, -ятыся <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь
браться *взяться, to take up, to undertake (<i>3a + acc.</i>)	} (see § 64)
год-иться [*при-], to be of use	
	гож-усь, год-ишься, год-ятыся <i>Imper.</i> год-ись, год-итесь (not in frequent use)
извиня-ться	-юсь, -ешься, -ются
*извин-иться (перед + <i>instr.</i>) to apologize	-юсь, -ишься, -ятыся <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь -ись, -итесь
кланя-ться	-юсь, -ешься, -ются
*поклон-иться to greet, to send greetings	<i>Imper.</i> йся, -йтесь -юсь, -ишься, -ятыся <i>Imper.</i> -ись, -итесь
надé-яться [*по-], to hope (<i>на + acc.</i>)	-юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь
поправля-ться	-юсь, -ешься, -ются
*поправ-иться to recover, to improve	<i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь -люсь, -ишься, -ятыся <i>Imper.</i> -ься, -ьтесь
приход-иться	} (see § 63)
*прит-тись, to come about, to be obliged to (<i>dat.</i> in impersonal sentences)	
простужива-ться	-юсь, -ешься, -ются <i>Imper.</i> -йся, -йтесь
*просту-диться to catch a chill, cold	-жусь, -дишься, -дятыся <i>Imper.</i> -дись, -дйтесь
сад-иться	саж-усь, сад-ишься, сад-ятыся <i>Imper.</i> сад-ись, сад-итесь
*сес-ть to sit down	сяд-у, сяд-ешь, сяд-ут <i>Imper.</i> сядь, сядьте
серд-иться [*рае-], to be, become angry (<i>на + acc.</i>)	серж-усь, сёрд-ишься, сёрд-ятыся <i>Imper.</i> сёрд-ись, сёрд-итесь

случа́-ться	-юсь, -ешься, -ются
*случ-и́ться	-усь, -ишься, -атся
to happen	<i>Imper.</i> случи́сь ¹
собира́-ться	-юсь, -ешься, -ются
*собр-а́ться	<i>Imper.</i> -йся, -итесь
to get ready	собиер-у́сь, собиер-е́шься,
	собиер-у́тся
удивля́-ться (<i>dat.</i>)	<i>Imper.</i> собиер-и́сь, собиер-и́тесь
*удив-и́ться	-юсь, -ешься, -ются
	<i>Imper.</i> -йся, -итесь
	удив-лю́сь, удив-и́шься, удив-я́тся
	<i>Imper.</i> удив-и́сь, удив-и́тесь
уч-и́ться [<i>*по-, *на-</i>]. to learn,	уч-у́сь, уч-и́шься, уч-а́тся
to study (<i>dat.</i>)	<i>Imper.</i> уч-и́сь, уч-и́тесь

§ 69. *Reflexive Verbs used in a passive sense.* (See § 131.)

		Past	
встреча́-ться, to be met with	-ется, -ются	{ -лся -лась } -лись	
да-ва́-ться, to be given; to be staged (play or opera)	да-е́тся, да-ю́тся	" "	" "
дела́-ться, to become; to be done	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
изда-ва́-ться, to be published	изда-е́тся, изда-ю́тся	" "	" "
конча́-ться, to end	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
называ́-ться, to be called	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
находи́-ться, to be found	наход-и́тся, наход-я́тся	" "	" "
начина́-ться, to begin	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
объясня́-ться, to be explained	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
печа́та-ться, to be printed	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
писа́-ться, to be written	пиш-е́тся, пиш-у́тся	" "	" "
поднима́-ться, to be raised	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
позволя́-ться, to be allowed	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
чита́-ться, to be read	-ется, -ются	" "	" "
стро́-иться, to be built	стро́-и́тся, стро́-я́тся	{ -ился -илась } -ились	

NOTE 1. Verbs of the above class are mainly used in the third person singular or plural.

¹ Singular only used in a conditional sense (see § 106). Imperfective imperative not in use.

NOTE 2. To convey the perfective meaning, either in the past or in the future, the short passive participle of the perfective verb (without *ся*) is used with *был*, *была́*, *было*, *были*, or *будет* :

печататься : кни́га печата́ется
the book is printed (being printed)
кни́га была́ напеча́тана
the book was printed
кни́га бу́дет напеча́тана
the book will be printed

издава́ться : кни́га изда́ется
the book is published
кни́га была́ изда́на
the book was published
кни́га бу́дет изда́на
the book will be published

NOTE 3. Many transitive verbs can be used in the reflexive form in a passive sense.

§ 70. Conjugation of Verbs.

Russian verbs are divided into two main groups for purposes of conjugation :

1. Verbs of the first conjugation.
2. Verbs of the second conjugation.

1. Verbs of the first conjugation have the following personal terminations :

		де́лать	чита́ть	писа́ть
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>1st pers.</i>	-у, -ю	я де́ла-ю	я пи́ш-у́
	<i>2nd „</i>	-ешь	ты де́ла-ешь	ты пи́ш-ешь
	<i>3rd „</i>	-ет	он, -а, -о де́ла-ет	он пи́ш-ет
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>1st „</i>	-ем	мы де́ла-ем	мы пи́ш-ем
	<i>2nd „</i>	-ете	вы де́ла-ете	вы пи́ш-ете
	<i>3rd „</i>	-ут, -ют	они́ де́ла-ют	они́ пи́ш-ут

2. Verbs of the second conjugation have these personal terminations :

	сидѣть	носѣть	горѣть
<i>Sing. 1st pers.</i> -у, -ю	я сиж-у	я нош-у	я гор-ю
2nd „ -ишь	ты сид-ишь	ты нос-ишь	ты гор-ишь
3rd „ -ит	он, -а, -о сид-ит	он, -а, -о нос-ит	он гор-ит
<i>Plur. 1st „ -им</i>	мы сид-им	мы нос-им	мы гор-им
2nd „ -ите	вы сид-ите	вы нос-ите	вы гор-ите
3rd „ -ат, -ят	они сид-ят	они нос-ят	они гор-ят

NOTE 1. The conjugation-group to which a verb belongs is determined by the termination of the second person singular : if this is **ешь** or **ѣшь**, the verb is of the first conjugation, and all the other persons, except the third plural, will have **е** as the conjugation vowel ; the third person plural will have the termination **ут** or **ют**. But if the termination of the second person singular is **ишь**, the verb is of the second conjugation ; then **и** will be the conjugation vowel and the third person plural will have the termination **ат** or **ят**.

NOTE 2. After **ж, ч, ш, щ**, the vowels **я, ю** are replaced by **а, у**.

NOTE 3. The accented **е** of the personal termination is changed into **ѣ**, which is retained after **ж, ч, ш, щ**, but is pronounced as **о**.

§ 71. *Types of Conjugation.*

While it is possible to determine the conjugation-group of a verb from the second person singular, it is not always possible to decide that from the infinitive. In order to give the student some guidance as to the best way of deciding from the infinitive to what group a Russian verb belongs, a certain attempt at classification will be made which should enable the beginner to find his way in what will at first seem to him as the maze of the Russian verb. The verbs most often used can be committed to memory

by constant conjugation *aloud*. After a time practice and observation will simplify the task.

All Russian verbs, according to the terminations of their infinitive, can be divided into 7 categories: 5 of the first conjugation and 2 of the second conjugation.

1. To the first conjugation belong:

- (a) all verbs with a consonantal stem, the infinitive of which ends in **ТЬ, ТИ**; to these also belong verbs ending in **ЧЬ** (which is a commutation of **Г-ТЬ, К-ТЬ**), and
- (b) the greater number of verbs with the infinitival ending of **АТЬ, ЯТЬ, ОТЬ, УТЬ, ЫТЬ**. To this subdivision belong a small number of primary verbs ending in **ИТЬ** (see § 75, group c) and a few in **ЕТЬ**.

2. To the second conjugation belong all verbs with the infinitival ending of **ИТЬ** (except the few primary verbs mentioned above), and some ending in **ЕТЬ** (or **АТЬ** after **Ж, Ч, Ш, Щ**).

A full statement of the conjugation of verbs according to their categories is set out in §§ 73-81.

§ 72. *Preliminary General Statement about the Accent in the Conjugation of Russian Verbs.*

1. THE ACCENT IN THE PRESENT TENSE (or future in Perfectives)

The student will note three types of accent in the present tense of verbs:

Type 1. The accent remains on the stem (on the same syllable as in the infinitive) in all the persons of the present:

ВЯН-УТЬ, to wither; **ВЯН-У**, **ВЯН-ЕШЬ**, **ВЯН-УТ**

Type 2. The accent is on the personal termination in the first person of the present, but goes back to the stem in all the other persons :

тон-ýть, to be drowning ; тон-ý, тон-ешь, тон-ут

Type 3. The accent is on the personal termination in all the persons of the present :

бр-ать, to take ; бер-ý, бер-ешь, бер-ут

NOTE. The accent of the imperative is on the same syllable as in the first person of the present tense :

вѣн-у — вѣнь ; тон-ý — тони́ ; бер-ý — бери́

2. THE ACCENT IN THE PAST TENSE

The accent in the past tense corresponds largely to the accent in the infinitive. Three types of accent are usually prevalent in the past tense :

Type 1. The accent remains on the stem :

мыть, to wash ; мыл, мыла, мыло, мыли

Type 2. The accent goes to the termination in the feminine only ; in masculine, neuter, and plural it remains on the stem :

жить, to live ; жил, жила́, жи́ло, жи́ли

Type 3. The accent is always on the termination :

нес-ти́, to carry ; нёс, неслá, неслó, несли́

The appropriate types of accent will be stated for each category of verbs.

A. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION (Categories I-V)

§ 73. I. *To the first category* belong all primary or root-verbs in which either the root or the stem ends in a consonant (with the exception of verbs in sub-divisions (f), (g), (h), the stem of which ends in a vowel) :

- (a) грес-ти́ [греб-ти́], to row, грес-у́, грес-ёшь, грес-ут
скрес-ти́ [скреб-ти́], to scratch, скреб-у́, скреб-ёшь, скреб-ут

NOTE. б of the root (stem) is replaced by е in the infinitive.

- (b) вез-ти́, to cart, to convey, вез-у́, вез-ёшь, вез-ут
грыз-ть, to gnaw, грыз-у́, грыз-ёшь, грыз-ут
полз-ти́, to crawl, полз-у́, полз-ёшь, полз-ут
лез-ть, to crawl, to climb, лез-у́, лез-ёшь, лез-ут
нес-ти́, to carry, нес-у́, нес-ёшь, нес-ут
тряс-ти́, to shake, тряс-у́, тряс-ёшь, тряс-ут
пас-ти́, to shepherd, пас-у́, пас-ёшь, пас-ут
- (c) тер-еть, to rub, тр-у, тр-ёшь, тр-ут
*запер-еть, to lock up, запер-у́, запер-ёшь, запер-ут
*умер-еть, to die, умер-у́, умер-ёшь, умер-ут

NOTE. The е of the stem is dropped in conjugation of the present tense (form).

- (d) печь [пек-ть], to bake, пек-у́, печ-ёшь, пек-ут
течь [тек-ть], to run, to flow, тек-у́, теч-ёшь, тек-ут
сечь [сек-ть], to whip; to chop, сек-у́, сеч-ёшь, сек-ут
толо́чь [толо́к-ть], to mix, толк-у́, толч-ёшь, толк-ут
вlech [влек-ть], to drag, влек-у́, влеч-ёшь, влек-ут
стричь [стриг-ть], to cut, to shear, стриг-у́, стри́ж-ёшь, стриг-ут
жечь [жег-ть], to burn, жг-у, жж-ёшь, жг-ут
беречь [берег-ть], to guard, to берег-у́, береж-ёшь, берег-ут
look after
- *запрячь [зап्रा́г-ть], to harness, запряг-у́, запряж-ёшь, запряг-ут
*лечь [лег-ть], to lie down, ляг-у, ляж-ёшь, ляг-ут
мочь [мог-ть], to be able to, мог-у́, мо́ж-ёшь, мо́г-ут

NOTE. In all the verbs of this sub-section the г-ть and к-ть of the infinitive are commuted into чь. In conjugation of the present tense (form), the г and к are commuted into ж and ч before soft (jotated) vowels.

(e) вес-ти́ [вед-ти́], to lead,	вед-у́,	вед-ёшь,	вед-у́т
бред-ти́ [бред-ти́], to saunter,	бред-у́,	бред-ёшь,	бред-у́т
*сес-ть [сед-ть], to sit down,	сяд-у,	сяд-ёшь,	сяд-ут
клад-ть [клад-ть], to put, to put down,	клад-у́,	клад-ёшь,	клад-у́т
крас-ть [крад-ть], to steal,	крад-у́,	крад-ёшь,	крад-у́т
*пас-ть [пад-ть], to fall,	пад-у́,	пад-ёшь,	пад-у́т
пряс-ть [пряд-ть], to spin,	пряд-у́,	пряд-ёшь,	пряд-у́т
плес-ти́ [плет-ти́], to plait,	плет-у́,	плет-ёшь,	плет-у́т
мес-ти́ [мет-ти́], to sweep	мет-у́,	мет-ёшь,	мет-у́т
рас-ти́ [раст-ти́], to grow,	раст-у́,	раст-ёшь,	раст-у́т
цвес-ти́ [цвет-ти́], to blossom,	цвет-у́,	цвет-ёшь,	цвет-у́т
*прочёс-ть [прочёт-ть], to read through	прочт-у́,	прочт-ёшь,	прочт-у́т

NOTE. The *д* and *т* of the root (stem) of the verbs of this sub-section are commuted into *с* in the infinitive.

(f) жа-ть, ¹ to press, to squeeze,	жм-у,	жм-ёшь,	жм-ут
жа-ть, ² to reap, to harvest,	жн-у,	жн-ёшь,	жн-ут
*начá-ть, to begin,	начн-у́,	начн-ёшь,	начн-у́т
(See remark to жать ² .)			
*взя-ть, to take,	возьм-у́,	возьм-ёшь,	возьм-у́т
(я is derived from a Slavonic nasal sound with the element of <i>м</i> ; see remark to жать ¹ .)			
мя-ть, to crumple,	мн-у,	мн-ёшь,	мн-ут
(See remark to жать ² .)			
(g) плы-ть, to swim,	плыв-у́,	плыв-ёшь,	плыв-у́т
слы-ть, to be known as,	слыв-у́,	слыв-ёшь,	слыв-у́т
жи-ть, to live,	жив-у́,	жив-ёшь,	жив-у́т
(в is inserted for euphony.)			
(h) пе-ть, to sing,	по-ю́,	по-ёшь,	по-ю́т

§ 74. The Accent.

In nearly all the verbs in Category I (see § 73), the accent is on the personal termination in the present tense (future in perfective verbs). The only exceptions are :

лезть : лез-у, лез-ёшь	} Type 1
*сесть : сяд-у, сяд-ёшь	
*лечь : ляг-у, ляж-ёшь	
мочь : мог-у́, мо́ж-ёшь	Type 2

¹ The *а* is derived from a Slavonic nasal sound with the element of *м*.

² The *а* is derived from a Slavonic nasal sound with the element of *н*.

In the past tense of verbs of the first category, all the three types of accent (see § 72) can be found. It may be useful to note that in nearly all cases where the accent remains on the stem in the present tense (or form), it will fall on the same syllable in the past tense as in the present (Type 1) (see §§ 83-84):

лезть : лёз-у, лёз-есть ; лез, лёзла, лёзло, лёзли
 *сесть : сяд-у, сяд-есть ; сел, сёла, сёло, сёли

Exception :

*лечь : ляг-у, ляж-есть ; лёг ; лег-ла, лег-ло, лег-ли
 (Type 3).

If the accent falls on the personal termination in the present tense (or future of perfectives), it will in most cases also be on the termination in the past tense (Type 3) :

нес-ти : нес-у, нес-есть ; нёс, нес-ла, нес-ло, нес-ли

In a few cases, however, the accent remains on the stem in the past tense, even if it falls on the personal terminations in the present tense (Type 1) :

мять : мну, мнёшь ; мял, мяла, мяло, мяли

жать : { жму, жмёшь } ; жал, жало, жала, жали
 { жну, жнёшь }

The same also applies to красть, класть, прясть, пасть, сечь, стричь, грызть. In all these verbs the accent in the past is on the stem throughout (Type 1).

кра-л	} -ла, -ло, -ли
кла-л	
пря-л	
па-л	
сек ¹	
стриг	
грыз	

¹ Also : секла, -о, -и.

In the verbs **взять** and **жить** the accent remains on the stem in masculine, neuter, and plural of the past tense. In the feminine it is shifted to the last syllable :

взял, взяла, взяло ; взяли
жил, жила, жило ; жили

In **умереть** and **начать** the accent goes to the prefix in masculine, neuter, and plural, and is shifted to the last syllable in the feminine :

умер, умерла, умерло, умерли
начал, начала, начало, начали (Type 2)

§ 75. II. *To the second category* belong verbs of the first conjugation of which the infinitive has the terminations **отъ, ыть**, six monosyllabic verbs in **ить** (sub-division (c)), and the large class of verbs ending in **ать, ять** ; also **еть** and **уть**. These verbs have the distinctive feature of having the ending **ю** in the first person singular present, and **ют** in the third person plural. The past tense has the terminations **л, ла, ло, ли**, which replace the termination **ть** of the infinitive.

The verbs of sub-division (d) retain the vowel before **ть** in conjugation, except **давать, узнавать, вставать**, which drop the suffix **ва** in the present tense.

(a) полѡ-ть , to weed,	пол-ю,	пол-ешь,	пол-ют
колѡ-ть , to chop,	кол-ю,	кол-ешь,	кол-ют
молѡ-ть , to mill, to grind,	мел-ю,	мел-ешь,	мел-ют
порѡ-ть , to tear, to whip,	пор-ю,	пор-ешь,	пор-ют
(b) мы-ть , to wash,	мѡ-ю,	мѡ-ешь,	мѡ-ют
ры-ть , to dig,	рѡ-ю,	рѡ-ешь,	рѡ-ют
кры-ть , to cover,	крѡ-ю,	крѡ-ешь,	крѡ-ют
вы-ть , to howl,	вѡ-ю,	вѡ-ешь,	вѡ-ют
ны-ть , to ache, to grieve,	нѡ-ю,	нѡ-ешь,	нѡ-ют
(c) бри-ть , to shave,	брѣ-ю,	брѣ-ешь,	брѣ-ют
би-ть , to beat,	бѣ-ю,	бѣ-ешь,	бѣ-ют
пи-ть , to sew,	шѣ-ю,	шѣ-ешь,	шѣ-ют
ли-ть , to pour,	лѣ-ю,	лѣ-ешь,	лѣ-ют
ви-ть , to wind,	вѣ-ю,	вѣ-ешь,	вѣ-ют
пи-ть , to drink,	пѣ-ю,	пѣ-ешь,	пѣ-ют

(d) зна-ть, to know,	зна-ю,	зна-ешь,	зна-ют
дава-ть, ¹ to give,	да-ю,	да-ешь,	да-ют
узнава-ть, ¹ to recognize,	узна-ю,	узна-ешь,	узна-ют
встава-ть, ¹ to get up,	вста-ю,	вста-ешь,	вста-ют
чита-ть, to read,	чита-ю,	чита-ешь,	чита-ют
дела-ть, to do,	дела-ю,	дела-ешь,	дела-ют
гуля-ть, to stroll,	гуля-ю,	гуля-ешь,	гуля-ют
уме-ть, to be able, to know,	уме-ю,	уме-ешь,	уме-ют
ду-ть, to blow,	ду-ю,	ду-ешь,	ду-ют

NOTE. In all the verbs of this sub-division the end-vowel of the stem is retained in conjugation (with the exception of: дава́ть, узнава́ть, встава́ть).

§ 76. The accent of the present tense in the verbs of this category can be of all the three types (see § 72), as follows:

In the verbs of sub-division (a) the accent is of Type 2 (shifting accent):

поло-ть, пол-ю, пол-ешь

In the verbs of sub-division (c) the accent belongs to Type 3 (always on the personal termination), except:

бри-ть, бре-ю, бре-ешь

In the verbs of sub-divisions (b), (d) the accent belongs to Type 1 (it always remains on the same syllable in conjugation as in the infinitive):

зна-ть, зна-ю, зна-ешь

Exceptions: дава́ть, узнава́ть, встава́ть, which drop the suffix *ва*, and the accent goes to the personal termination.

The accent of the past tense in all the verbs of Category II is on the same syllable as in the infinitive:

поло-ть: полóл, -а, -о, -и

дава-ть: дава́л, -а, -о, -и

гуля-ть: гуля́л, -а, -о, -и

¹ The suffix *ва* is dropped in the present tense of these verbs. (See § 64, groups 2, 4.)

Exceptions are: *ЛИТЬ, ВИТЬ, ПИТЬ*, which shift the accent to the feminine termination in the past:

ЛИЛА́, but *ЛІ́ЛО*, *ЛІ́ЛИ*
ВИЛА́, „ *ВІ́ЛО*, *ВІ́ЛИ*
ПИЛА́ „ *ПІ́ЛО*, *ПІ́ЛИ*

§ 77. III. *To the third category* belong a few simple (primary) verbs ending in *ать*. They drop the entire termination of *ать* in the conjugation of the present tense. In the past *ать* is changed into *ал, ала, ало, али*.

The accent in the present falls on the personal terminations. In the past it is on the same syllable as in the infinitive, excepting the feminine, where it is on the last syllable:

Exceptions: *соса́ть* — *соса́ла*
ржа́ть — *ржа́ла*

occasionally also: *тка́ть* — *тка́ла*
лгáть — *лгáла*

The verbs of this group are:

				<i>Past Fem.</i>
<i>сос-а́ть</i> , to suck,	<i>сос-у́,</i>	<i>сос-ёшь,</i>	<i>сос-у́т</i>	
<i>тка-а́ть</i> , to weave,	<i>тка-у́,</i>	<i>тка-ёшь,</i>	<i>тка-у́т</i>	
<i>лг-а́ть</i> , to lie,	<i>лг-у́,</i>	<i>лж-ёшь,</i>	<i>лг-у́т</i>	
<i>вр-а́ть</i> , to fib,	<i>вр-у́,</i>	<i>вр-ёшь,</i>	<i>вр-у́т</i>	<i>вралá</i>
<i>жр-а́ть</i> , to devour,	<i>жр-у́,</i>	<i>жр-ёшь,</i>	<i>жр-у́т</i>	<i>жралá</i>
<i>бр-а́ть</i> , to take,	<i>бер-у́,</i>	<i>бер-ёшь,</i>	<i>бер-у́т</i>	<i>бралá</i>
<i>др-а́ть</i> , to tear,	<i>дер-у́,</i>	<i>дер-ёшь,</i>	<i>дер-у́т</i>	<i>дралá</i>
<i>рж-а́ть</i> , to neigh,	<i>рж-у́,</i>	<i>рж-ёшь,</i>	<i>рж-у́т</i>	
<i>зв-а́ть</i> , to call,	<i>зов-у́,</i>	<i>зов-ёшь,</i>	<i>зов-у́т</i>	<i>звалá</i>
<i>рв-а́ть</i> , to tear,	<i>рв-у́,</i>	<i>рв-ёшь,</i>	<i>рв-у́т</i>	<i>рвалá</i>
<i>жд-а́ть</i> , to wait,	<i>жд-у́,</i>	<i>жд-ёшь,</i>	<i>жд-у́т</i>	<i>ждалá</i>

NOTE 1. *братъ, дра́ть* take a euphonic *e*, *звaтъ* takes a euphonic *o* in the conjugation of the present tense. In *лгaтъ* the *г* is commuted into *ж* before a soft vowel in the conjugation of the present tense.

NOTE 2. All the verbs in Category III have *y* in the first person singular and *у́т* in the third person plural of the present tense.

§ 78. IV. *To the fourth category belong :*

(a) A number of verbs of the first conjugation, ending in **ать** with a preceding

	с	з	д	т	ст	г	к	ск	сл
which change into	ш	ж	ж	ч	щ	ж	ч	щ	шл

and

	б	п	м
which change into	бл	пл	мл

(See § 13a.)

The accent is a variable one in the present tense, belonging to all the three types. (See § 72.)

The commutation of consonants, or the insertion of the euphonic **л**, which takes place in the first person singular, is extended to all the persons of the present tense, both singular and plural.

In the past the accent remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive in all verbs of this sub-division.

колеб-ать, to shake,	колебл-ю,	колебл-ешь,	-ют
треп-ать, to scutch (flax), to pull about,	трепл-ю,	трéпл-ешь,	-ют
щип-ать, to pluck,	щипл-ю,	щáпл-ешь,	-ют
сып-ать, to strew, to scatter,	сыпл-ю,	сыпл-ешь,	-ют
дрем-ать, to slumber,	дремл-ю,	дрéмл-ешь,	-ют
прят-ать, to hide,	прáч-у,	прáч-ешь,	-ут
свист-ать, ¹ to whistle,	свищ-у,	свищ-ешь,	-ут
рѣз-ать, to cut,	рѣж-у,	рѣж-ешь,	-ут
мáз-ать, to smear, to paste,	мáж-у,	мáж-ешь,	-ут
вяз-ать, to tie, to bind,	вяж-у,	вяж-ешь,	-ут
пис-ать, to write,	пиш-у,	пиш-ешь,	-ут
двиг-ать, to move,	движ-у,	движ-ешь,	-ут
плáк-ать, to cry,	плáч-у,	плáч-ешь,	-ут
скач-ать, to gallop,	скач-у,	скач-ешь,	-ут
иск-ать, to seek,	ищ-у,	ищ-ешь,	-ут
сл-ать, to send, etc.	сл-ю,	сл-ешь,	-ют
стл-ать, to spread,	стел-ю,	стéл-ешь,	стéл-ют

¹ свист-ѣть belongs to Category VII (a) of the second conjugation.

(b) Verbs ending in **овать, евать** which drop the termination **ать** in the conjugation of the present tense; the suffixes **ов, ев** are changed into **у, ю** respectively:

ков-ать, to forge,	ку-ю,	ку-ёшь,	ку-ют
сов-ать, to thrust,	су-ю,	су-ёшь,	су-ют
плюв-ать, to spit,	плю-ю,	плю-ёшь,	плю-ют
ночев-ать, to lodge at night,	ноч-ю,	ноч-ёшь,	ноч-ют
воев-ать, to wage war,	вою-ю,	вою-ёшь,	вою-ют
совѣтов-ать, to advise,	совѣту-ю,	совѣту-ёшь,	совѣту-ют
диктов-ать, to dictate,	дикту-ю,	дикту-ёшь,	дикту-ют
торгов-ать, to trade,	торг-ю,	торг-ёшь,	торг-ют
рисов-ать, to draw,	рис-ю,	рис-ёшь,	рис-ют
атаков-ать, to attack,	атак-ю,	атак-ёшь,	атак-ют
танцов-ать, to dance,	танц-ю,	танц-ёшь,	танц-ют

In the past tense the termination **ать** is changed into **ал, ала, ало, али**, with the accent on the same syllable as in the infinitive. The suffixes **ов, ев** are retained in the past tense.

The accent of the present tense of these verbs is on the same syllable as in the infinitive in derivative verbs. In primary (simple) verbs it is on the personal termination:

ков-ать, ку-ю, ку-ёшь
плюв-ать, плю-ю, плю-ёшь

NOTE. The verbs, **здоров-аться** (to salute), **сомнев-аться** (to doubt), do not belong to this class:

здоров-ваюсь, -ваешься, -ваются
сомне-ваюсь, -ваешься, -ваются

(c) To this sub-division belong a few verbs in **ять** (**яться**) with a preceding vowel. The accent remains on the same syllable in the conjugation of the present and past tenses:

ла-ять, to bark,	ла-ю, ла-ешь, ла-ют;	ла-ял, -а, -о, -и
та-ять, to melt,	та-ю, та-ешь, та-ют;	та-ял, -а, -о, -и
се-ять, to sow,	се-ю, се-ешь, се-ют;	се-ял, -а, -о, -и
сме-яться, to laugh,	сме-юсь, сме-ёшься, сме-ются;	
	смеялся, -лась, -лось, -лись	

NOTE. All the verbs in Category IV have **ю** in the termination of the first person singular and **ют** in the

third person plural (except where the stem ends in ж, ч, ш, щ). The vowel before ть of the infinitive is dropped in conjugation.

§ 79. V. *To the fifth category belong :*

(a) Verbs in нуть which have an inchoative meaning, and also with the meaning of going over from one state into another. They are mainly formed from adjectives :

слѣп-нуть, to go blind,	слѣпн-у,	слѣпн-ешь,	-ут
глѣх-нуть, to go deaf,	глѣхн-у,	глѣхн-ешь,	-ут
сѣх-нуть, to go dry,	сѣхн-у,	сѣхн-ешь,	-ут

The accent in the present and the past remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive.

In the past of verbs of this class the entire ending нуть is dropped :

*о-слѣп-нуть, to have gone blind,	ослѣп,	ослѣпла,	ослѣпли
*о-глѣх-нуть, to have gone deaf,	оглѣх,	оглѣхла,	оглѣхли
сѣх-нуть,	сѣх,	сѣхла, -о, -и	
*за-сѣх-нуть, to have gone dry,	засѣх,	засѣхла,	засѣхли

NOTE. In the imperfective forms of these verbs the suffix ну is occasionally retained in the past tense :

слѣпнул, глѣхнул

(b) A number of verbs ending in нуть, which describe either a quick action or one in a series of similar actions (mainly implying movement) :

хлеб-ать, to take liquid food			
*хлеб-нуть, to sip once,	хлебн-у,	хлебн-ешь,	-ут
ляг-ать, to kick			
*ляг-нуть, to kick once,	лягн-у,	лягн-ешь,	-ут
крич-ать, to shout, to cry			
*крич-нуть, to shout out once,	крикн-у,	крикн-ешь,	-ут
кид-ать, to throw			
*ки-нуть, to throw once,	кин-у,	кин-ешь,	-ут

To this group belong verbs ending in **нуть** which convey impressions of sound :

свист-ать, to whistle

*свист-нуть, свист-ну, свист-нешь, -нут

хлоп-ать, to clap

*хлоп-нуть, хлоп-ну, хлоп-нешь, -нут

All verbs of sub-division (b) with the suffix **ну** are of the perfective aspect. In the conjugation of the future and past tenses the accent remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive. The suffix **ну** is not dropped in the past tense :

хлопнул, хлопнула, хлопнули, etc.

B. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

§ 80. VI. *To this category* belong all derivative verbs in **ить**.

The past tense ends in **ил, ила, ило, или**.

The accent of the present tense in verbs in this category follows all the three types. (See § 72.)

The accent in the past tense follows the infinitive and first person singular of the present :

сол-ить, to salt,	сол-ю,	сол-ишь	Accent is of Type 2; ценить can also follow Type 3.	3rd person plural ends in ят (or at after ч).
цен-ить, to value,	цен-ю,	цен-ишь		
ход-ить, to walk,	хож-у́,	ход-ишь		
люб-ить, to love,	любл-ю́,	люб-ишь		
вар-ить, to boil, to cook,	вар-ю́,	вар-ишь	Accent is of Type 1.	
уч-ить, to teach,	уч-у́,	уч-ишь		
ран-ить, to wound,	ран-ю́,	ран-ишь		
сто-ить, to cost,	сто-ю́,	сто-ишь		
стро-ить, to build,	стро-ю́,	стро-ишь		

NOTE. **д, з**, before **ить** change into **ж** in the first person singular present ; **т** changes into **ч** ; labials **б, в, п, м** have an inserted **л**, for euphony, in the first person present singular only. (See § 13a.)

§ 81. VII. *To this category* belong both primary and derivative verbs of the second conjugation ending in **еть** (formerly **ѣть**) or **ать** after **ж, ч, ш, щ**. The past tense ends in **ел**, or **ал**. Verbs of this category are mainly intransitive. Some of these verbs describe sounds or imitation of sounds.

(a) вел- еть , to bid,	вел- ю ,	вел- ишь ,	- ят
гор- еть , to burn,	гор- ю ,	гор- ишь ,	- ят
скрип- еть , to scratch,	скрип- лю ,	скрип- ишь ,	- ят
шум- еть , to make noise,	шум- лю ,	шум- ишь ,	- ят
сид- еть , to sit,	сид- ю ,	сид- ишь ,	- ят
лет- еть , to fly,	лет- ю ,	лет- ишь ,	- ят

NOTE. Commutation of consonants and insertion of euphonic **л** the same as in § 80.

(b) леж- ать , to lie,	леж- ю ,	леж- ишь ,	- ат
слыш- ать , to hear,	слыш- у ,	слыш- ишь ,	- ат
сто- ять , to stand,	сто- ю ,	сто- ишь ,	- ят
бо- аться , to fear,	бо- юсь ,	бо- ишься ,	- ятся

NOTE. The vowel before **ть** of the infinitive in verbs of sub-sections (a) and (b) is dropped in the conjugation of the present tense.

The accent of the present is either on the stem or on the personal termination. In both cases it is a fixed one. The accent of the infinitive and the past tense are usually on the same syllable :

сид- еть ,	сид- ю ,	сид- ел
гор- еть ,	гор- ю ,	гор- ел
слыш- ать ,	слыш- у ,	слыш- ал

§ 82. Formation of the Imperative Mood.

The imperative mood is used only for two persons : second person singular and second person plural. It is best formed from the third person plural of the present tense (or future in perfective verbs) by dropping the personal terminations **ут, ют, ат, ят**, and by replacing these by **и** for the singular and **ите** for the plural. For the accent it is useful to follow the first person singular of the present tense. If

the stem of the verb ends in a vowel, the *и, ите* are changed into *й, йте* :

пряс-ть, to spin { пряд-у } пряд-й, пряд-йте
[пряд-ть] { пряд-ут }

дума-ть, to think { дума-ю } дума-й, дума-йте
{ дума-ют }

пис-ать, to write { пиш-у } пиш-й, пиш-ите
{ пиш-ут }

In stems of one syllable only, when the *termination* of the second person is *not accented*, the endings of the imperative *и, ите* change into *ь, ьте*. If the stem in the third person plural ends in *ь*, it is changed into *е* for the imperative :

вѣр-ить, to believe { вѣр-ю } вер-ь, вѣр-ьте
{ вѣр-ят }

бы-ть, to be { буд-у } буд-ь, буд-ьте
{ буд-ут }

ли-ть, to pour { ль-ю } ле-й, ле-йте
{ ль-ют }

би-ть, to beat, { бь-ю } бе-й, бе-йте
to strike { бь-ют }

The following verbs have an irregular formation of the imperative :

есть, to eat { е-м } еш-ь, еш-ьте
[ед-ть] { ед-ят }

лечь, to lie { ляг-у } ляг, ляг-те
[лег-ть] { ляг-ут }

An accommodation imperative for expressing a wish is formed also for the third person (singular and plural) by attaching the verbal forms *пусть, or пускай* (let), to the

third person singular and plural of the present tense (or future of perfective verbs) :

пусть он чита́ет, let him read
 пусть они́ чита́ют, let them read

NOTE. пусть and пуска́й (let) are used with the indicative mood (third person of the present singular or plural, *not* with the infinitive as in English).

§ 83. Formation of the Past Tense.¹

The past tense of Russian verbs is formed for all persons by changing **ТЬ** of the infinitive into **Л, ЛА, ЛО, ЛИ** for masculine, feminine, neuter, and plural :

чита́ть : чита́-л, -ла, -ло, -ли

я чита́л (<i>masc.</i>)	мы чита́ли	} (<i>plural</i>)
я чита́ла (<i>fem.</i>)	вы чита́ли	
ты чита́л (<i>masc.</i>)	они́ чита́ли	
ты чита́ла (<i>fem.</i>)		
он чита́л (<i>masc.</i>)		
она́ чита́ла (<i>fem.</i>)		

NOTE 1. In reflexive or similar verbs ending in **ться**, the **ся** is tacked on after the **л**, but is altered into **сь** after vowels :

верну́-ться, to return

я	} верну́-лся	мы	} верну́-лись
ты		вы	
он		они́	
она́ верну́-лась			

NOTE 2. If the stem of the verb ends in one of the consonants **с, з, г, к, or б**, the **л** is usually dropped, for euphony, in the masculine gender singular :

вез-ти́, to cart вёз (not вёзл)
 but : везла́
 везли́

¹ For formation of Conditional Mood see Appendix I, p. 308.

нес-ти́,	to carry,	нёс	(not нёсл)
		but : неслá	
		несли́	
сечь,	to whip,	сек	(not секл)
[сек-ть]		but : секлá	
		секли́	
печь,	to bake,	пёк	(not пёкл)
[пек-ть]		but : пеклá	
		пекли́	
мочь,	to be able,	мог	(not могли)
[мог-ть]		but : моглá	
		могли́	
also терé-ть,	to rub,	тёр	(not тёрл)
		but : тёрла	
		тёрли	
умерé-ть,	to die,	ýмер	(not ýмерл)
		but : умерлá	
		ýмерли	

NOTE 3. In stems ending in д, т, these consonants are usually dropped before the л :

пасть,	to fall,	пал	(not падл)
[пад-ть]		пáла („ пáдла)	
		пáло („ пáдло)	
		пáли („ пáдли)	
вести́,	to lead,	вёл	(„ вёдл)
[вед-ти́]		велá („ ведлá)	
		велó („ ведлó)	
		вели́ („ ведли́)	
есть,	to eat,	ел	(„ едл)
[ед-ть]		éла („ éдла)	
		éли („ éдли)	

итѣ [ид-ти] (to go) forms the past tense from an obsolete verb, *шед-ть*, dropping the *д* :

шѣл

шла

шло

рас-тѣ, to grow, рос
росла
росли

NOTE 4. A number of verbs ending in *нѣть*, when they have an inchoative meaning (see § 79), drop the ending *нѣть* in the past tense :

сох-нѣть, to go dry,	сох, сох-ла, сох-ло, сох-ли
*оглѣх-нѣть, to have gone deaf	оглѣх, оглѣх-ла, оглѣх-ли
*погас-нѣть, to become extinguished	погас, погас-ла, погас-ли
*исчѣз-нѣть, to vanish,	исчѣз, исчѣз-ла, исчѣз-ли

§ 84. *The Accent in the Past Tense (general summary).*

I. In nearly all verbs terminating in *ать*, *ять*, *еть*, *итѣ*, *ытѣ*, *утѣ*, *нѣть*, the accent remains on the same vowel in conjugation as in the infinitive. (See § 72.)

NOTE. Exceptions to this rule are :

- (1) A number of primary, mainly monosyllabic, verbs in which the feminine of the past has the accent on the last syllable :

быть — была́,	жить — жи́ла
брать — бра́ла,	дать — да́ла

- (2) A number of verbs with a prepositional prefix to which the accent is shifted in the past tense in masculine and neuter singular, and in the plural. In the feminine singular the accent is on the last syllable. To this class also belong compounds of the verb *-ять*. (See § 64, group 7.)

*поня́ть, to understand,	по́нял, -ли, поняла́
*продáть, to sell,	прóдал, -ли, прода́ла
*нача́ть, to begin,	нача́л, -ли, нача́ла
*нали́ть, to pour in, to fill,	на́лил, -ли, нали́ла

II. In the past tense of verbs terminating in **зть, сть, ерьть**, the accent is on the root vowel :

грыз-ть, to gnaw,	грыз,	гры́зла,	гры́зли
крас-ть, to steal,	крал,	кра́ла,	кра́ли
ес-ть, to eat,	ел,	éла,	éли
тер-еть, to rub,	тёр,	тёрла,	тёрли

III. In the past tense of verbs terminating in **сти, зти, чь [г-ть, к-ть]**, the accent falls on the last syllable. (See § 72, 2, Type 3, of past.)

вести́, to lead,	вёл,	велá,	вели́
везти́, to cart,	вёз,	везла́,	везли́
нести́, to carry,	нёс,	несла́,	несли́
мочь, to be able to,	мог,	могла́,	могли́
* поджечь, to set fire to,	поджёл,	подожгла́,	подожгли́

Exception : стричь, to clip, to cut

стриг, стрíгла, стрíгли

§ 85. *Accent of the Past Tense in Reflexive and similar verbs, ending in ся.*

In those verbs (mainly primary) where the feminine takes the accent on the last syllable in the past tense (see § 72, 2, Type 2, past), the accent will also be on the last syllable of masculine, neuter, and plural when the reflexive particles **ся, съ** are tacked on, although these forms would not have the accent on the last syllable if they had no **ся** or **съ** :

рвать, рвала́ :	рвала́сь	
to tear	рвался́	(but : рва́ло, рва́ли)
	рвало́сь	
	рвали́сь	

гнать, гналá :	гнала́сь	
to drive	гнался́	(but : гна́ло, гна́ли)
	гнало́сь	
	гнали́сь	

родить, родилá :	родила́сь	
to give birth to	родился́	(but : роди́ло, роди́ли)
	родило́сь	
	родили́сь	

(but also : роди́лся, роди́лись)

§ 86. Participles.

Participles are not often used in the spoken language, but they are frequently used in the written language. They have the same terminations, and are declined, as adjectives.

§ 86a. I. Formation of the Present and Past Active Participles.

(a) The present of active participles is formed by replacing the *т* of the personal termination of the third person plural of the present tense with the terminations **щий, щая, щее, щие** :

чита́ю-т	—	чита́ю-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие
ру́бя-т	—	ру́бя-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие
сидя́-т	—	сидя́-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие

The accent of the present active participle is usually on the same syllable as in the third person plural of the present tense. In a few verbs the accent goes forward by one syllable :

корми́ть,	ко́рмя-т,	кормя́-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие
to feed		
плати́ть,	пла́тя-т,	платя́-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие
to pay	(pronounced	
	плóтят)	
смотре́ть,	смóтря-т,	смотря́-щий, -щая, -щее, -щие
to look		

(b) The past active participle is formed by replacing the *л* of the past tense with *вший, вшая, вшее, вшие*, or by adding *ший, шая, шее, шие* if the stem of the verb ends in a consonant:

сиде-ть,	сиде-л	—	сиде-вший,	-вшая,	-вшее,	-вшие
писа-ть,	писа-л	—	писа-вший,	-вшая,	-вшее,	-вшие
чита-ть,	чита-л	—	чита-вший,	-вшая,	-вшее,	-вшие
*умер-еть,	умер,	—	умер-ший,	-шая,	-шее,	-шие
*принес-ти,	принёс	—	принёс-ший,	-шая,	-шее,	-шие
*отвез-ти,	отвёз	—	отвёз-ший,	-шая,	-шее,	-шие

The accent in the past active participle is usually on the syllable which precedes the terminations *ший, шая, шее, шие*.

NOTE 1. Both the present and the past active participles are occasionally used as attributive verbal adjectives. They have no short (predicative) form. They are declined as adjectives according to gender and number in all their cases. (See § 46a.)

NOTE 2. In reflexive verbs the particle *ся* is tacked on after the terminations (which is not contracted into *сь*):

-щий,	-щая,	-щее,	-щие
-вший,	-вшая,	-вшее,	-вшие
-ший,	-шая,	-шее,	-шие

NOTE 3. Both transitive and intransitive verbs can have present and past active participles.

§ 86b. II. Formation of the Present and Past Passive Participles. (Formed from transitive verbs only.)

A. The present passive participle is formed from the first person plural of the present tense by tacking on the

terminations **ый, ая, ое, ые** for the long (attributive) form, and **а, о, ы** for the short (predicative) form.

ЧИТАЕМ	ЧИТАЕМ-ЫЙ,	-ая,	-ое,	-ые
	ЧИТАЕМ,	-а,	-о,	-ы
ГОНИМ	ГОНИМ-ЫЙ,	-ая,	-ое,	-ые
	ГОНИМ,	-а,	-о,	-ы
ВЕДЕМ	ВЕДОМ-ЫЙ,	-ая,	-ое,	-ые
	ВЕДОМ,	-а,	-о,	-ы
НЕСЕМ	НЕСОМ-ЫЙ,	-ая,	-ое,	-ые
	НЕСОМ,	-а,	-о,	-ы

NOTE 1. **ё** of the present tense is changed into **о**.

NOTE 2. Present passive participles have a short (predicative) form for all three genders, and for the plural.

NOTE 3. The accent in the present passive participle is usually on the same syllable as in the present tense if the conjugation vowel is **е**. If this is **ё** or **и**, these vowels take the accent in the present passive participle.

B. The past passive participle is formed by replacing the **л** of the past tense with **нный, нная, нное, нные** for the long (attributive) form, and **н, на, но, ны** for the short (predicative) form :

ЧИТА-Л	ЧИТА-ННЫЙ,	-нная,	-нное,	-нные
	ЧИТА-Н,	-на,	-но,	-ны
ПИСА-Л	ПИСА-ННЫЙ,	-нная,	-нное,	-нные
	ПИСА-Н,	-на,	-но,	-ны

To this class belong all the verbs ending in **ать** and all derivative verbs in **еть, ить**.

NOTE 1. **и** of the stem in the past tense changes into **е** in the past passive participle.

NOTE 2. з, с, г, к of the stem in the past tense are commuted into ж, ш, ж, ч in the past passive participle.

[*с-]же-чь — жѣг, жжѣ-нный, -нная, -нное, -нные
[же-гть] сожжѣ-н, -на, -но, -ны

NOTE 3. After labials of the stem, a euphonic л is inserted in the past passive participle :

*купѣ-ть — купѣ-л, кѹпле-нный, -нная, -нное, -нные
кѹпле-н, -ле-на, -ле-но, -ле-ны

Verbs ending in уть, ыть, оть, ереть, and a few primary in ить (all of the first conjugation class), replace the л by тый, тая, тое, тые (т, та, то, ты for the short form) in the formation of the past passive participle :

кры-ть — кры-л, to cover	кры-тый, -тая, -тое, -тые кры-т, -та, -то, -ты
колѡ-ть — колѡ-л, to chop, split	колѡ-тый, -тая, -тое, -тые колѡ-т -та, -то, -ты
ши-ть — шил, to sew	ши-тый, -тая, -тое, -тые ши-т, -та, -то, -ты

To this class belong брить, лить, бить, вить, пить (see § 75), and also жить (see § 73).

§ 86c. *A list of Past Passive Participles of Verbs in frequent use.*

NOTE. Of the participles, the past passive participle is the most frequently used, both in the long and in the short (predicative) form. They are used in passive constructions in principal and subordinate clauses (see § 131). The past passive participle of the perfective aspect is that most often used. Of the long form the masculine only is given. The feminine and neuter have the terminations ая, ое.

Predicative

бить [*по-], to beat, to give a beating; [*у-], to kill	по- } бѣтый, у- }	по- } бѣт, -а, -о, -ы у- }
*взять, to take,	взятый,	взят, -а, -о, -ы
брить [*по-], to shave	{ побрѣтый, выбрѣтый,	{ побрѣт } -а, -о, -ы выбрѣт }
*бросить, to throw,	брошенный,	брошен, -а, -о, -ы
варить [*с-], to cook,	сваренный,	сварен, -а, -о, -ы
везти [*с-], to cart,	свезѣнный,	свезѣн, -а, -о, -ы
нести [*у-], to carry,	унесѣнный,	унесѣн, -а, -о, -ы
*выбрать, to select,	выбранный,	выбран, -а, -о, -ы
*сказать, to say,	сказанный,	сказан, -а, -о, -ы
*заказать, to order,	заказанный,	заказан, -а, -о, -ы
греть [*со-], to warm,	согрѣтый,	согрѣт, -а, -о, -ы
дѣлать [*с-], to make,	сдѣланный,	сдѣлан, -а, -о, -ы
крыть {[*за-], to cover, [*от-], to uncover	за- } крытый, от- }	за- } крыт, -а, -о, -ы от- }
*одѣть, to dress,	одѣтый,	одѣт, -а, -о, -ы
*надѣть, to put on,	надѣтый,	надѣт, -а, -о, -ы
*раздѣть, to undress,	раздѣтый,	раздѣт, -а, -о, -ы
*забыть, to forget,	забытый,	забыт, -а, -о, -ы
*начать, to begin	{ начатый } начатый	начат, -а, -о, -ы
обещать, to promise,	обещанный, ¹	обещан, -а, -о, -ы
*обязать, to oblige,	обязанный,	обязан, -а, -о, -ы
*огорчить, to grieve, to vex,	огорчѣнный,	огорчѣн, -а, -о, -ы
*[о]кончить, to finish,	[о]конченный,	[о]кончен, -а, -о, -ы
мыть [*по-, *у-], to wash	{ по- } мытый, у- }	по- } мыт, -а, -о, -ы у- }
*отослать, to send away,	отосланный,	отослан, -а, -о, -ы
*послать, to send,	посланный,	послан, -а, -о, -ы
печь [*ис-], to bake,	испечѣнный,	испечѣн, -а, -о, -ы
писать [*на-], to write	написанный,	написан, -а, -о, -ы
*заплатить, to pay,	заплаченный (pronounced заплоченный)	заплачен, -а, -о, -ы
*занять, to occupy; to borrow	занятый [бѣ],	занят, -а, -о, -ы
*поднять, to lift,	поднятый,	поднят, -а, -о, -ы
*принять, to receive,	принятый,	принят, -а, -о, -ы
*понять, to understand,	понятый,	понят, -а, -о, -ы

¹ This participle has a perfective character.

Predicative

*снять, to take off	{ снятой } { снятый }	снят, -а, -о, -ы
*приложить, to attach, to enclose	приложенный,	приложен, -а, -о, -ы
рѣзать [*с-], to cut,	срезанный,	срезан, -а, -о, -ы
*ранить, to wound,	раненный,	ранен, -а, -о, -ы
*прочитать, to read through,	прочитанный,	прочитан, -а, -о, -ы
*купить, to buy,	купленный,	куплен, -а, -о, -ы
*приготовить, to prepare,	приготовленный,	приготовлен, -а, -о, -ы
*продать, to sell,	проданный,	продан, -а, -о, -ы
*лишить, to deprive,	лишённый,	лишён, -а, -о, -ы
*найти, to find,	найденный,	найден, -а, -о, -ы
шить [*с-], to sew,	сшитый,	сшит, -а, -о, -ы

§ 87. *The Accent in the Past Passive Participle.* (For the accent in the present passive participle see § 86b.)

(1) In nearly all the verbs which form their past passive participle with the **нн** suffix (**н** for predicative forms), the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the termination (see § 86b) :

читать — читанный
*купить — купленный

If the suffix **нн** (**н**) is preceded by **е**, this **е** will take the accent only if the verbs from which the passive participles are formed have the termination of the infinitive in **сть, зть, сти, зти, чь** ; also in a few verbs terminating in **ить** which belong to accent Type 3 (see § 72) :

*запрячь, to harness,	запряжённый
*прочесть, to read through,	прочтённый
*привезти, to bring by carting,	привезённый
*покорить, to subjugate,	покорённый
*отличить, to distinguish,	отличённый

(2) In verbs which form their past passive participle

Ф

with the *т* suffix the accent in the participle is on the same syllable as in the past tense :

*наду́ть, наду́л, наду́тый, inflated
 *запе́реть, за́пер, за́пертый, locked
 *закры́ть, закры́л, закры́тый, covered

Exceptions to this rule present verbs terminating in *отъ* and *нуть*. These throw the accent back by one syllable in the past passive participle :

коло́ть, коло́л, ко́лотый, chopped
 *обману́ть, обману́л, обману́тый, deceived

§ 88. Gerunds (*Verbal Adverbs*).

(1) The present gerund is formed by changing the terminations *ут, ют, ат, ят* of the third person plural of the present tense into *я* (or *а* after *ж, ч, ш, щ*) :

чита́-ют — чита́-я
 говор-я́т — говор-я́
 жив-у́т — жив-я́

(2) The past gerund is formed by replacing the *л* of the past tense with *вши* (or *в* only), or *ши*, in the same way as in the case of the past participle (see § 86a, I (b)) :

сиде́-л — сиде́-вши (or сиде́-в)
 сде́ла-л — сде́ла-вши (or сде́ла-в)
 сказа́-л — сказа́-вши (or сказа́-в)
 пёк — пёк-ши
 нёс — нёс-ши

NOTE 1. In reflexive verbs the particle *ся* (*сь*) is placed after *вши, ши* :

умы́-лся — умы́-вшись

NOTE 2. In the present gerund the accent is either on the last syllable or on the last syllable but one (the accent mainly follows that of the third person plural of the present tense) :

звать,	to call,	зов-ѹт	— зов-я
класть,	to lay,	клад-ѹт	— клад-я
[клад-ть]			
жить,	to live,	жив-ѹт	— жив-я
жевать,	to chew,	жу-ѹт	— жу-я
смеяться,	to laugh,	сме-ѹтся	— сме-ясь
but : лежать,	to lie,	леж-аѹт	— лёж-а
сидеть,	to sit,	сид-яѹт	— сид-я
молчать,	to be silent,	молч-аѹт	— молч-а

In the past gerund the accent is always on the syllable preceding the terminations *вши*, *в*, *ши* :

- *написа́вши — написа́ть
 *закры́вши — закры́ть
 *прочита́вши — прочита́ть

If the accent of the infinitive is *not* on the last syllable, the accent of the past gerund always follows that of the infinitive :

- ду́мать — ду́мавши
 *сде́лать — сде́лавши

NOTE 3. The gerunds are not declined and have no special terminations for genders or numbers.

NOTE 4. The gerund of the auxiliary verb *быть* is :

- Present* : бу́дучи
Past : бы́в

NOTE 5. The cardinal function of the verbal adverb (gerund) is to present a verbal form describing a phase of the action or state while it is going on, or when referring to such a phase while it was going on in the past. For both these purposes the present verbal adverb (gerund) is sufficient. One can say :

Я слѹшал его́ игру́ на роя́ле, прислу́шиваясь в то же вре́мя к тому́, что происхо́дит на дво́ре.

I listened to his playing the piano, at the same time trying to hear what was going on outside.

The past verbal adverb is mostly used when referring to an action or state now finished :

написа́в пи́сьмо, я поше́л спать
having written the letter, I went to sleep

Verbal adverbs in the past form are not often used for imperfective verbs. But there is also a tendency to use the present verbal adverb for a perfective verb :

подойдя́ ко мне, он ни́зко поклони́лся (instead of
подоше́дши)
coming up to me, he made a low bow
придя́ домо́й, он сейча́с взя́лся за рабо́ту (instead of
прише́дши)
coming home, he at once began to work

A number of verbal adverbs are now used as adverbs :

несмотря́ на, notwithstanding
смотря́ по, according to
мо́лча, in silence, etc.

6. ADVERBS

§ 89. An adverb is a word that modifies or qualifies an adjective, verb, or other adverb, expressing a relation of place, time, circumstance, manner, etc.

§ 90. Group A.

By their origin adverbs represent many groups. To the largest group belong those derived from adjectives. They can be formed from all qualitative adjectives, and also from some others.

(1) Adverbs derived from adjectives are usually in the neuter of the short (predicative) form. They qualify verbs. They can also have a comparative form. Many of these

adverbs can be used as a complete impersonal sentence with an implied predicate (see § 122, note (d)):

хорошо, well	лучше, better	гораздо лучше, much better лучше всего, better still, best of all
громко, loudly	громче, louder	громче всего, loudest of all
скоро, quickly, soon	скорее, sooner, quicker	гораздо скорее, much sooner скорее всего, soonest
легко, lightly, easily	легче, easier, lighter	гораздо легче, much easier легче всего, easiest of all
поздно, late	позднее } later позже }	гораздо позднее } much later [позже] }
рано, early	раньше, earlier	гораздо раньше, much earlier

NOTE. Adverbs in the comparative form are often qualified by the particle *no* and the adverb *как можно* :

получше,	a little better
как можно лучше,	in the best possible way
поскорее,	a little quicker
как можно скорее,	quickest possible, as soon as possible
полегче,	a little lighter
как можно легче,	as lightly as possible
погромче,	a little louder
как можно громче,	as loudly as possible
позже, попозднее,	a little later
как можно позднее,	as late as possible
пораньше,	a little earlier
как можно раньше,	as early as possible

(2) Other adverbs from adjectives are :

(a) возможно } possible	These have a verbal character, and are used in all three tenses: present, past, and future:
можно }	
нужно } necessary	
надо }	
возможно } it is possible	(воз)можно было, it was possible
можно }	(воз)можно будет, it will be possible

нужно }
 надобно } it is necessary
 надо }

нужно }
 надобно } было, it was necessary
 надо }

нужно }
 надобно } будет, it will be necessary
 надо }

To this class belong a few adverbs formed from adjectives, which are used in impersonal sentences with a verbal meaning :

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
тепло, it is warm	было тепло, it was warm	будет тепло, it will be warm
жарко, it is hot	было жарко	будет жарко
холодно, it is cold	было холодно	будет холодно
весело, it is cheerful	было весело	будет весело
скучно, it is dull	было скучно	будет скучно
рано, it is early	было рано	будет рано
поздно, it is late	было поздно	будет поздно
приятно, it is pleasant	было приятно	будет приятно
неприятно, it is unpleasant	было неприятно	будет неприятно
удобно, it is comfortable, convenient	было удобно	будет удобно
неудобно, it is inconvenient, uncomfortable	было неудобно	будет неудобно
хорошо, it is good, it is all right	было хорошо	будет хорошо
плохо } it is bad	было плохо	будет плохо
скверно }	было скверно	будет скверно

But ordinarily adverbs formed from adjectives go to qualify verbs, and have no other function :

я читаю громко, I read aloud
 он пишет медленно, he writes slowly

Such adverbs are distinct in meaning from short neuter adjectives which stand as predicates for neuter nouns.

(б) должно быть } probably	именно, namely
вероятно }	иначе, otherwise
внезапно, suddenly	крайне, extremely
вообще, generally	по крайней мере, at least
гораздо, much (with comparative)	по меньшей мере, at the least

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| лишь, only | навернѹю } as a certainty |
| очень, very | наверняка } |
| мгновѣнно, momentarily | подобно, similar |
| навѣрно } for certain | давно, long ago, long since |
| навѣрное } | недавно, recently |
- (c) вдалекѣ, far off
вкратцѣ, briefly
вполнѣ, entirely
впроче́м, besides, as for the rest
- (d) до́сыта, to satiation
издалека́, from afar
сду́ру, from stupidity
слегка́, lightly
- (e) понемно́гу, little by little
повидимо́му, evidently
- (f) по-ру́сски, in Russian
по-а́нглийски, in English
по-но́вому, in the new way, manner
по-ста́рому, in the old manner,
fashion
по-во́лчьи, in the manner of
wolves
(but во́лком, as a wolf)
по-соба́чьи, in the manner of dogs
(but соба́кой, as a dog)
- сно́ва, again, anew
спроста́, in simplicity
сперва́, firstly
- понапра́сну, all for nothing
потихо́ньку, very quietly
- по-медве́жьи, in the manner of
bears
(but медве́дем, as a bear)
по-бра́тски, in a brotherly
manner
по-дру́жески, in a friendly
manner
(but дру́гом, as a friend)

§ 91. Group B.

Adverbs derived from : (a) *Nouns* ; (b) *Numerals* ;
(c) *Pronouns*

(a) Those derived from nouns are mainly formed from oblique cases, with or without a preposition. (Preposition and noun are merged in the adverb.)

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| вверх, upwards | вне, outside (used as preposition) |
| вниз, downwards | внутри́, inside (used as prep.) |
| вверху́, at the top | извне́, from outside |
| наверху́, on the top | изнутри́, from inside |
| внизу́, at the bottom | возле́, near (mainly used as prep.) |
| вдаль, into the distance | подо́ле, beside (mainly used as prep.) |
| вдали́, in the distance | вперѣ́д, forward |
| на́дали, from a distance | наза́д, backward |

вперёд, in front (used as prep.)
 позади, behind (used as prep.)
 направо, to the right
 налево, to the left
 справа, from the right
 слева, from the left
 спереди, at the front
 сзади, at the back
 около, about (used as prep.)
 кругом, around
 наравнѣ, on level with
 вдоль, alongside (used as prep.)
 кромѣ, besides, beside (used as prep.)
 поперѣк, across (used as prep.)
 наружу, outside
 снаружки, from outside
 взамен, in exchange
 вмѣсто, instead (used as prep.)
 вмѣстѣ, together
 [врозь] } apart, separately
 врознь }
 прѣжде, before
 послѣ, afterwards, after (used as prep.)
 наконец, at last
 напримѣр, for instance
 не в примѣр, incomparably
 слишком, too much
 чересчур, overmuch
 отчасти, partly
 насилу, with difficulty
 кстѣти, by the way ; appropriately
 некстѣти, inappropriately
 вслух, aloud
 наизусть, by heart
 напрасно, in vain
 нарочно, on purpose
 натошак, on an empty stomach
 настежь, wide open
 поневоле, willy-nilly, against one's will
 точь-в-точь, exactly
 вряд, hardly, scarcely
 вряд ли, doubtful if . . .
 нельзя, impossible

до-нѣльзя, to the utmost
 даром, as a gift, for nothing
 дома, at home
 домой, homewards
 верхом, on horseback
 бегом, at a run
 шагом, at a walking pace
 лесом, by way of the forest
 полем, by way of the field
 дорогою, along the road
 весной, in the spring
 лѣтом, in the summer
 осенью, in the autumn
 утром, in the morning
 днѣм, in the day-time
 вечером, in the evening
 ночью, in the night
 порой } at times
 временами }
 по временам }
 вчера, yesterday
 сегодня, to-day
 завтра, to-morrow
 послезавтра, the day after to-morrow
 ежедневно, daily
 еженедѣльно, weekly
 ежемесячно, monthly
 ежегодно, yearly
 трѣтѣго дня } the day before yesterday
 позавчера }
 позавчера } day
 наконец, at last
 сначала, at first
 тотчас, the same minute, instantly
 наканунѣ, on the eve
 сейчас, immediately
 сейчас-же, the very moment
 вдруг, suddenly
 сию минуту, this moment
 о сю пору, about this time
 нынѣ, at present
 отнынѣ, from now
 донынѣ, till now

пóездом, by train
 трамва́ем, by tram
 автобу́сом, by bus
 парохо́дом, by steamer
 бе́регом, along the shore, bank
 мо́рем, by sea

вёсом, in weight, by weight
 длино́ю, of the length
 величино́ю, of the size
 глубино́ю, of the depth
 толщино́ю, of the thickness
 ширино́ю, of the width

NOTE. The unit of weight or measurement after these adverbs usually stands in the accusative preceded by the preposition **в** :

длино́ю в два ме́тра, of the length
 of two metres

вёсом в два килогра́ма, of the
 weight of two kilos
 в длину́, in length

в величи́ну, in size

в глубину́, in depth

в толщину́, in thickness

в ширину́, in width
 etc.

(b) *Adverbs derived from Numerals.*

одна́жды,¹ once
 два́жды,¹ twice
 три́жды,¹ thrice
 вдвоём, two together
 втроём, three together
 вдво́е, twice as much
 втрое́, thrice as much

вче́тверо, four times as much

впя́теро, five times as much

тепе́рь, now

одна́ко, however

во-пе́рвых, firstly

во-второ́ых, secondly

в-тре́тих, thirdly

(c) *Adverbs derived from Pronouns and Pronoun-roots.*

аво́сь, perhaps, may be
 вот, here
 вон, there
 весьма́, very
 везде́, everywhere
 всегда́, always
 во́все, at all
 во́все не, not at all
 где, where
 ко́е-где, somewhere (in some places)
 где-нибу́дь, somewhere or other
 где́-то, somewhere
 здесь, here

заче́м, why

иногда́, sometimes

как, how

ко́е-как, somehow

как-нибу́дь, in some way or other

ка́к-то, such as ; somehow

как мо́жно, as possible

как мо́жно ? how is it possible ?

когда́, when

когда́-нибу́дь, at some time or
 other

когда́-то, some time ago

куда́, whither

¹ Not in frequent use except одна́жды in the meaning of: once (upon a time).

куда-нибудь, somewhere or other (anywhere)	так себе, 'so-so,' 'middling'
куда-то, somewhere	такі, though
нигде, no room (place) where to ...	всё-таки } all the same, nevertheless
нигде, nowhere	всё-же } less
никогда, no time to ...	всё (colloquial for всё время, see всердѣ), all the time, al- ways
никогда, never	всё равно, it's all the same, it makes no difference
всюду } everywhere	всего, in all, altogether
повсюду }	опять-таки, again, and then, once again; again, you see ...
никуда, nowhere to ...	только, only
никуда, nowhere	несколько, a few
откуда, where from	нисколько, none at all, not in the least
отсюда, from here	совсем, altogether, quite, entirely
оттуда, from there	не совсем, not quite
туда, there } (motion)	ничего, that's nothing
сюда, here }	ничего себе, not so bad
тут, here } (rest)	совсем не, not at all
там, there }	сам-собой, by itself
тогда, then	ужели } is it possible, indeed
пока, while	ужели }
покамест, meanwhile	по-моему, in my opinion, in my own way
сколько, how much	по-своему, in one's own way
поскольку, in so far as	по-нашему, in our own way, in our opinion
много, much	
немного, not much, a little	
столько, so much	
постольку, inasmuch, to that ex- tent	
так, so	

§ 92. Group C.

To group C belong a few primary adverbs and those derived from verbs.

(a) Primary Adverbs.

эле } scarcely, hardly	не, not
едва }	нет, no
едва-ли, doubtful, hardly	да, yes
едва не, almost	уже, already
ещё, still, yet	уже не, no longer
ещё не }	уже нет, no longer, no more (when нет is a predicate)
нет ещё }	
ещё-бы, I should think so; of course	

(b) *Adverbs derived from verbs.*

значит, so it means (used parenthetically)
 кажется, so it seems (used parenthetically)
 видишь [вишь], you see (used parenthetically)
 было, on the point of, very nearly, about to
 будет, enough, that will do
 будто, будто-бы, as if
 пускай, пусть, let; 'all right'; 'I don't care'
 почти, almost
 знать, it seems, apparently (used parenthetically)
 спасибо, thanks
 молча, in silence
 спустя, on the passing, elapsing (of time)
 может быть, perhaps (used parenthetically)

стало-быть, consequently (used parenthetically)
 чуть, scarcely, hardly
 чуть не, almost, scarcely not
 чуть-чуть, just a little
 чуть было не, very nearly
 ничуть, not in the least
 ведь, indeed, but; well then, now you must know
 дескать { mean: says he (she), say they. Are used to introduce, in a narrative, words, and even thoughts, of another person
 мол {
 пожалуй, perhaps; if you like
 пожалуйста, please, if you please
 нечаянно } inadvertently, by accident
 невзначай }
 то-есть, that is to say
 разве, then? perhaps? is it true that? perhaps only?

7. PREPOSITIONS

§ 93. *Meaning and Function of Prepositions.*

A close acquaintance with the meaning of Russian prepositions (and adverbs used as prepositions), and the cases of declinable parts of speech which they govern, is very important, as the student will have to acquire a thorough and practical knowledge of the various cases required after each preposition. He will have to make himself thoroughly familiar with the respective inflexions of each case before he can tackle Russian texts intelligently, and also in order to make his own Russian intelligible.

Many prepositions are used as prepositional prefixes to verbs, both for the purpose of forming perfective verbs from imperfective ones, and also to give to the verbs a modified directional, and often different, meaning in accordance with the basic meaning of the prepositional prefix. (See §§ 63-65.)

§ 94. The function of prepositions, and adverbs used as prepositions, is to indicate *concretely* the position and movement of objects in space, and *abstractly* their position in relation to time. The meaning of prepositions can be divined from the direction which is given to them by the verb:

итти в город } (acc.), to go [travel] to town
 ехать в город }
 жить в городе (loc.), to live in town

Prepositions govern various cases in accordance with the meaning and direction of the verb in the sentence (either apparent or implied). Consequently some prepositions can govern more than one case, as in the above example.

§ 95. Prepositions are divided into three main groups:

(1) Those of movement, answering to the question: откуда? where from?

из города, from town
 от города, away from town

с горы, down hill
 со станции, from the railway station

(2) Those of movement, answering to the question: куда? where to?

в город, into town
 к городу, in the direction of the town
 ко мне, towards me
 за город, beyond the town, into the country

на горы, up the hill
 на станцию, to the railway station
 под горы, down hill
 через мост, over the bridge
 сквозь туман, through the mist

(3) Those of stable position, answering to the question: где? where?

в городе, in town
 на горе, on the hill
 при мне, by, near me
 за городом, outside the town
 над городом, over the town
 под городом, near the town
 перед городом, in front of the town

между городом } between the town
 и селом } and the village
 по берегу, along the bank
 по горам, on the hills
 по ту сторону, over the other side
 около дома, around the house
 возле дома, near the house
 против дома, in front of the house

Prepositions outside these three groups :

без, without	про, concerning
с [со], with	про } for (intended for)
о, about	для }
без меня, without me	за, for (in exchange for), on behalf of
с ним, with him	про меня, for me, concerning me
со мною, with me	о нём, about him

A detailed list of prepositions (and adverbs used as prepositions), and the cases which they govern is given below. (See § 96.)

The student will note that some directional prepositions of movement have their distinct reverse-counterparts, such as :

- (a) в — из; (b) к — от; (c) на — с (со);
(d) за — из-за

(a) я еду в город I go to town	я приехал из города I came from town
я иду в школу I go to school	я иду из школы I come from school
я иду в театр I go to the theatre	я иду из театра I come from the theatre
я иду в оперу I go to the opera	я иду из оперы I come from the opera
(b) я иду к школе I go towards the school	я иду от школы I come away from the school
(c) мы едем на станцию we go to the station	мы едем со станции we come from the station
мы едем на собрание we go to the meeting	мы едем с собрания we come from the meeting
мы едем на почту we go to the post office	мы едем с почты we come from the post office
мы едем на вечер we go to a party (evening)	мы едем с вечера we come from a party
мы едем на рынок we go to the market	мы едем с рынка we come from the market

- | | |
|---|--|
| я вышел на улицу
I went into the street | он пришёл с улицы
he came from the street |
| я вышел на двор
I went into the yard (outside) | он пришёл со двора
he came from the yard |
| (d) мы поёдем за-границу (motion)
we shall go abroad
он за-границей (rest)
he is abroad | он приехал из-за границы
he came [arrived] from abroad |
| мы поёдем за город (motion)
we shall go beyond the town (for
an outing)
за городом (rest) | он приехал из-за города
he came [arrived] from beyond
the town |
| за реку (motion)
to the other side of the river
за рекой (rest)
at the other side of the river | из-за реки
from the other side of the river |

(e) на — под; под — из-под

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (e) на гору, up hill | под гору, down hill |
| под стол (motion)
under the table | из-под стола
from under the table |
| под столом (rest) | |

§ 96. *Prepositions and the cases which they govern.*(1) *Prepositions governing the Genitive case :*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| без, without | насу́против, opposite, facing |
| близ, near | около, about |
| вдоль, along | относительно, concerning |
| вместо, instead of | от, away from |
| внутри, inside of | позади, at the back of |
| вне, outside of | поб́ле, near (by) |
| вб́зле, near (by) | поперёк, across |
| вокруг, around | посредством, by means of |
| для, for (intended for) | после, after |
| до, up to, as far as | прежде, before |
| из, from, out of | прот́ив, opposite |
| из-за, because of, from behind | ради, for the sake of |
| из-под, from under | сверх, beside |
| кро́ме, beside | снару́жи, from outside |
| между, between, among (motion) | сре́дѣ, in the midst of |
| ми́мо, by | у, by, at, near |
| насчёт, on account of | с, from, from off |

§ 96a. (2) *Prepositions¹ governing the Dative case :*

вопреки, contrary to	по, along, according to
к [ко], towards	(Also with nouns, and numerals :
назло, to spite, for spite	один, одна, -о, and from пять on
наперекор, in spite of, against	in the sense of distribution, see
the will of	§ 47, 6, Note.) For по with
сообразно } according to, in	numerals 2, 3, 4, see § 96b.
согласно } conformity with	

§ 96b. (3) *Prepositions governing the Accusative case :*

про, about, concerning	по, up to, as far as
сквозь, through	(Also with numerals 2, 3, 4, 200, 300,
через, across, through	400 in the meaning of distribution.)
в [во], in (motion)	за, behind (motion), for (in place of,
на, on (motion)	in exchange for)
о, об, against	под, under (motion), towards, near
с, approximately	пред, in front of (motion)

§ 96c. (4) *Prepositions governing the Instrumental case :*

над, over	пред, in front of (rest)
под, under (rest)	перед, before
между, among	с, with
за, behind (rest), for, after	

§ 96d. (5) *Prepositions governing the Locative (Prepositional) case :*

при, by, in the presence of	на, on (rest)
о, об, about	по, after
в [во], in (rest)	

§ 96e.

NOTE 1. It will be seen that the greater number of prepositions govern the genitive case. Of these, *y* is the most frequently used in the meaning of : at, near, of, by.

NOTE 2.

за, behind	{ (govern the accusative case when the idea
под, under	
пред, in front of	
	{ of motion is implied, and the instru-
	{ mental case when the idea of rest is
	{ implied)

¹ Also adverbs used as prepositions.

в [во], in	(govern the accusative case (motion) and
на, on	the locative case (rest))
о [об, обо], about, against	(govern the accusative in the meaning of 'against' and the locative in the meaning of 'about,' 'concerning')
между, among	(governs the genitive (motion) and the instrumental (rest))
с [со], from	(govern the genitive)
с, approximately	(governs the accusative)
с [со], with	(govern the instrumental)
по, along	(governs the dative)
по, as far as, up to	(governs the accusative)
по, after	(governs the locative)

NOTE 3. Nearly all the adverbs which are used as prepositions govern the genitive case :

Genitive :

вдоль, along	напрóтив, opposite
вмéсто, in place of	около, about
внутр́и, inside	пóдле, near
вне, outside	позади́, behind
вóзле, near	поперéк, across
вóкруг, around	пóсле, after
близ, near	прóтив, in front, opposite
крóме, beside	ради́, for the sake of
кругóм, around	снару́жи, from outside
между, between	<i>gen.</i> (motion) <i>Dat.</i> вопреки́, contrary to
	<i>instr.</i> (rest) <i>Acc.</i> сквозь, through

§ 96f. *The Accent of Prepositions.*

A. Proclitics. Normally prepositions have no stress of their own : the word which follows them takes the stress. (See § 14.)

на столé,	on the table
около дóма,	near the house
перед ча́ем,	before tea

B. Enclitics. Some Russian nouns (mainly monosyllabic and dissyllabic) have, however, a tendency to throw their accent back on the preceding prepositions¹ :

¹ The stressed preposition and noun form an adverbial expression.

на, по, под, за, без, до. The nouns that most frequently throw their accent back, and so lose their own stress, are :

час,	hour	море,	sea
пол,	floor	двор,	yard
нос,	nose	волос,	hair
день,	day	пояс,	waist (belt)
год,	year	стол,	table
бок,	side	берег,	shore (bank of river)
дом,	house	гора,	hill
лес,	forest	зима,	winter
род,	birth	нога,	leg
ночь,	night	рука,	arm, hand
небо,	sky	смерть,	death

also : голова, head, and a few others.

NOTE. A noun with a tendency to become enclitic after one preposition usually shows the same tendency after other prepositions.

(1) *Enclitics* with на (governing the accusative singular) :

на бок,	aside
на берег,	on to the bank
на волос,	within a hair's breadth
на воду,	on to the water
на голову,	on the head
на гору,	up the hill
на зиму,	for the winter
на пол,	on the floor
на море,	on the sea
на ухо,	into the ear (in a whisper)

(2) *Enclitics* with по (governing dative and accusative singular) :

по городу (dat.),	over the town
по двору (dat.),	over the yard
по воду (acc.),	after some water
по уши (acc.),	up to the ears
по пояс (acc.),	up to the waist (belt)

(3) *Enclitics* with под (governing the accusative singular and plural) :

под вечер,	towards evening
под гору,	down the hill
под голову,	under the head
под руку,	into the hand ; opportune
but : под рукой,	handy
под ноги,	under the feet
под нос,	under one's nose
под стол,	under the table

(4) *Enclitics* with за (governing the accusative singular and plural) :

за волосы,	by the hair
за ноги,	by the legs
за год,	for a year
за голову,	by the head
за гору,	beyond the hill (motion)
за день,	for a day
за море,	beyond the sea (motion) etc.

Sometimes also with the instrumental :

за морем,	beyond the sea (rest)
за лесом,	beyond the woods (rest) •
за городом,	outside the town (rest) etc.

(5) *Enclitics* with из, без, до (governing the genitive singular) :

из лесу,	out of the wood
из дому,	out of the house
без толку,	without sense
до верху,	right to the top
до низу,	right to the bottom
до земли,	down to the ground

NOTE 1. The prepositions у, от, про, при, о, об, над, ко, во, со very seldom take the stress. The

following are practically the only *enclitics* in current use :

от роду (<i>gen.</i>),	from birth
при смерти (<i>loc.</i>),	dying, in a dying state
о землю (<i>acc.</i>),	against the ground
об пол (<i>acc.</i>),	against the floor
во время (<i>acc.</i>),	in time
but : во время,	during the time
со двора (<i>gen.</i>),	from the yard away
со ста (<i>gen.</i>),	from hundred
рука об руку (<i>acc.</i>),	hand in hand [arm in arm]
час от часу (<i>gen.</i>),	one hour from another

NOTE 2. The prepositions *безо, изо, надо, обо, подо, передо, передо* (which usually stand before nouns beginning with two consonants), also *для, ради, кроме, через, сквозь, пред, перед*, never make the noun *enclitic*.

NOTE 3. Primary monosyllabic numerals after the prepositions *по, за, на* always become *enclitic* :

за три,	for three
за пять,	for five
за сто,	for hundred
по два, две,	two each
по три,	three each etc.

NOTE 4. Monosyllabic verbs in the past tense and past passive participles have also a tendency to become *enclitic* after the negative particle *не* :

не был,	but : не была
не дал,	„ не дала
не жил,	„ не жила
не взят, not taken,	„ не взята
не дан, not given,	„ не дана
не зван, not called, not invited,	„ не звана
also : нехотя, unwillingly	
ничего, there is no need to ...	

(See § 135, sub-section 7.)

§ 97. 8. *Conjunctions*.¹ (Indeclinable sentence-words, showing connection between words and sentences.)

(NOTE. On the use of conjunction in the complex sentence see §§ 124-129.)

(1) *Co-ordinative (copulative) Conjunctions* :

и, and; also; even	ещё, yet
и . . . и, both . . . and	даже, even
да, and	то, then
также, as well	то . . . то, now . . . now
тоже, also	отчасти, partly
притом, at the same time	как, таки, as . . . so
сверх того, besides	не только . . . но и, not only
к тому, and then	. . . but also

(2) *Alternative* :

или } or	или . . . или } either . . . or
либо }	либо . . . либо }
ли . . . ли, whether . . . or	

(3) *Interrogative* :

ли [ль] . . . или [иль], whether . . . or

(4) *Explanatory* :

что, that	так что, so that
будто, as if	так как, as, since
будто-бы, as it were; supposed	тогда, когда, then, when
то	там, где, there, where
ведь, indeed, but	куда . . . туда [туда, куда],
тогда как, whereas	where . . . to, there . . . to

(5) *Temporal (Conjunctions of Time)* :

сначала } at first, first	наконец, at last
сначала }	далее, further
во-первых, firstly	прежде чем } prior to, before
во-вторых, secondly	прежде нежели }
в-третьих, thirdly	пока, meanwhile
едва, hardly	лишь только } as soon as
потом, afterwards	чуть только }
затем, then	то . . . то, now . . . now

¹ Including adverbs and pronouns with the functions of conjunctions.

(6) *Comparative* :

как, так, as, so
 нежели, than
 чем, than; rather than (with
 infinitive)
 как, as
 чем . . . тем, the . . . the
 словно, as if
 точно, exactly
 будто, as it were
 так же, как, exactly as

(7) *Conditional* :

эжели . . . то } if . . . then
 если . . . то }
 когда бы { if . . . had . . . did
 если бы { (verb after бы
 stands in the past
 tense)
 когда . . . тогда { if [when] . . .
 then
 лишь-бы, only to, if only

(8) *Hypothetical (Suppositional)* :

бы, эжели-бы, если-бы, if (with verb in the past tense); had it
 been

(9) *Concessive* :

хотя [хоть], although, though;
 at least, at any rate
 хотя бы, if only; even though
 хоть и, even if
 хоть, но [однако], though . . . yet
 пусть, но [а], though . . . yet
 лишь, if only
 всё-таки, nevertheless, all the
 same
 пусть } let
 пускай }
 правда, true

впрочем, however
 пожалуй } admitted
 положим }
 допустим, allowing
 несмотря на то, notwithstand-
 ing that
 сколько ни, however much, no
 matter how much
 как ни, no matter how
 что ни, no matter what
 что-ли? perhaps?, shall we
 say?

(10) *Conjunctions of Purpose* :

чтобы [чтоб], дабы, in order to; that (with verb, either in the past
 or in the infinitive)

(When чтобы introduces a subordinate clause expressing *desire*
 or *wish*, the verb in the subordinate clause stands in the past
 tense.)

(11) *Conjunctions expressing opposition or antithesis (Ad-
 versative)* :

а, but [and]
 но, but
 же, but, then
 да, but [and]

однако, however
 только, only
 напротив, on the contrary

(12) *Conjunctions of cause, of effect, or of result (Causal) :*

ибо, because (not often used in the spoken language)	затѣм, что, because
потому что, because	затѣм, чтобы, in order to [that]
так как, as	зато, on the other hand
для того же, it is for this . . .	оттого что, for the reason that . . .

(13) *Concluding Conjunctions :*

итак, and so	значит, it means
так, so	стало-быть, it follows
поэтому, consequently	почему, why
следовательно, consequently	

§ 98. 9. *Interjections.* (Sentence-words, expressing various emotions.)

<i>Joy :</i>	урá! hurrah!	<i>Thanks :</i>	спаси́бо! thanks!
<i>Grief :</i>	ах! ah! ох! oh! увы! alas! о! oh!	<i>Threat :</i>	вот ужó! you wait!
<i>Contempt :</i>	фу! фу! phew! fie!	<i>Reproach :</i>	э! эх! eh! ну! indeed!
<i>Fright :</i>	ух! ough! ах! oh!	<i>Indication :</i>	вон! out! there!
<i>Surprise :</i>	а! ah! ба! here comes! тфу! фу! phew!	<i>Approbation :</i>	бравó! well done! сла́вно! glorious!
<i>Call :</i>	ай! reй! eh there!	<i>Assurance :</i>	ей-ей! } indeed! правó! }
<i>Curt dismissal :</i>	прочь! away! долóй! down! пб́лно! enough! that will do!	<i>Offer :</i>	на! на-те! here!
		<i>Sound imitation :</i>	бац! slap! хлоп! pop! бух! pop! цап! snap!

SECTION III

SYNTAX

§ 99. *Essentials of Russian Syntax.*

It is not the purpose of this work to deal at length with Russian syntax, but as no study of Russian can be pursued without at least some minimum knowledge of syntax, it

will be within the scope of this little work to supply that minimum in order to assist the beginner to keep his bearings in the various forms of construction of the rich Russian language.

In dealing with complex sentences the simpler forms have been treated. The few indispensable rules of general syntax are marshalled here, in so far as they have any bearing on Russian syntax, with a view to assisting the student to foster an appropriate grammatical consciousness which is essential for acquiring the knowledge of a language so highly inflected as Russian.

§ 100. *The Sentence.*

(1) A sentence is a word or group of words which express a complete thought or meaning.

(2) In any sentence one must distinguish at least two ideas which make up a thought : (a) what we think of ; (b) what we think concerning it.

The first is called the subject of the sentence.

The second is called the predicate of the sentence.

(3) Subject and predicate are joined together in various ways, and the relation between them is modified in various other ways.

(4) The principal content of a sentence is made up of words which denote either a subject (a person or object), or an action or state, or a property, or a number. These are supplied by nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and numerals.

(5) The manner of combination of various words in a sentence is indicated either by various inflexions (declensions and conjugations) of the principal words of the sentence, or by other words which connect the principal words or show their relation to each other. This function is performed by pronouns, some adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions.

(6) Other parts of a sentence, besides the subject and predicate, are: (1) the **object** (object-complement); (2) **qualifying words** (qualifiers); (3) **adverbial expressions**: (a) of place, (b) of time, (c) of manner, (d) of cause, (e) of purpose.

§ 101. *Relation between Words in the Sentence.*

The various parts of the sentence can stand to each other either in the relation of **co-ordination** or of **subordination**. These relations can be shown either by word-order alone (very rarely in Russian) or by concord where two words (head-word and adjunct-word) agree in whatever grammatical form they have in common: inflexion, number, case. The head-word governs the adjunct-word. (See § 116.)

§ 102. The Subject (principal object of our thought in the sentence) can be expressed:

- (a) by a noun in the nominative case, answering to the questions: *кто?* who?, *что?* what?;
- (b) by a pronoun or numeral in the nominative;
- (c) by a verbal infinitive or participle;
- (d) by any indeclinable part of speech when it is used in the sense of a noun in the nominative. Such words when used as the subject of the sentence are treated as if they were neuter nouns as regards their co-ordination. (See § 119.)

§ 103. The Predicate (part of the sentence which denotes what is stated about the subject of the sentence).

The predicate can be expressed:

- (a) by a verb in any tense;
- (b) by a short adjective¹;
- (c) by a short past passive participle;

¹ See Appendix II, p. 310.

- (d) by a noun, when the verbal idea is only implied, and the present tense of the auxiliary verb *быть* is omitted :

Он мой брат. He is my brother.

(*есть*—present tense—is omitted, but the past and future are not omitted : он был мой друг, he was my friend ; он будет моим учителем, he will be my teacher.)

NOTE. Besides the auxiliary verb *быть*, the verbs *стать*, *сдѣлаться* (to become), are also used as a copula for the same purpose. The nouns which they govern stand either in the nominative or the instrumental case (see above example).

§ 104. The predicate can be either a simple one or a compound one (see § 103). The declinable part of a compound predicate is called the name-part.

(1) The name-part of a predicate can be expressed by all the declinable parts of speech : nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals.

(2) The name-part of a predicate can stand in the nominative, instrumental, or genitive case :

Я столяр (*nom.*). I am a joiner.

Наши берёзы стали высокими деревьями (*instr.*).
Our birch trees have become tall trees.

Он был тихого нрава (*gen.*).
He was of a quiet disposition.

Он был среднего роста (*gen.*).
He was of medium height.

Он был моим другом (*instr.*). He was my friend.
(It implies the idea of a defined, limited time.)

Он был мой друг (*nom.*, always).

§ 105. *Irregular use of Tenses in Sentences for the sake of expressiveness.*

- (1) Use of present instead of past tense :

Прибежали в избу дети,
второпях зовут отца . . .

The children ran into the house, hurriedly they call
father . . .

- (2) Use of present instead of future tense :

Меня занимал вопрос : куда он едет? . . .

I was preoccupied with the question : where is he
going to ? (instead of : поедет).

- (3) Начинает одно, через минуту возьмётся за другое . . .

He begins one thing, in a minute he will take up
something else . . .

§ 106. *Peculiarities in the use of Moods.*

- (1) First person plural of the present tense instead of imperative (in the sense of : let us) :

Идём, пойдём гулять.

(colloquially : Идёмте, пойдёмте гулять).

Let us go for a walk.

Забудем это. Let us forget this.

- (2) Conditional mood (which is always in the past tense and is either preceded or followed by the particle **бы**), used in the sense of giving advice :

Ты бы поехал к дяде.

You should go to uncle's.

Ты бы раньше напился чаю. You might have tea first.

- (3) Imperative singular instead of conditional :

Не приходи он, я бы не поехал с вами. Had not he
come, I would not have gone with you (instead of :
Если бы он не пришёл).

Знай я это раньше, я бы не дал книги. Had I known this before, I would not have given the book (instead of: Если бы я знал это раньше).

Не будь нас там, все бы скучали. If it had not been for us [but for us] everybody would have felt bored (instead of: Если бы мы не были там). (See § 123*b*, sub-section (2); Appendix I., p. 308.)

(4) Infinitive mood instead of indicative mood :

Я ему сделал выговор, а он плакать (instead of: стал плакать). I rebuked him, and he started crying.

Не видать тебе моих книг. You will not see my books (instead of: Не увидишь моих книг).

(5) Infinitive instead of imperative (particularly in case of urgency) :

послать сейчас,	send at once
выдать немедленно,	hand over at once
не писать,	don't write

(6) Frequently any tense of the indicative mood can be replaced by verbal interjections for greater expressiveness :

а он с возом — бух в канаву (instead of бұхнул),
and he with the cart — flop right into the ditch.

This is a form much favoured by popular usage.

§ 107. The Object (Object-complement) can be expressed by any declinable part of speech in any oblique case (noun, adjective, pronoun, numeral, and participle) :

Я вижу реку. I see the river (*acc.*).

Я рад случаю поговорить.

I am glad of the occasion to have a talk (*dat.*).

Я пишу пером. I write with a pen (*instr.*).

СЫТЫЙ ГОЛОДНОГО не разумѣет (*gen.*).

The well-fed one does not comprehend the hungry one.

Мне прѣшлого не жаль (*gen.*).

I am not regretful of the past.

NOTE. An object can also be expressed by a verbal infinitive :

Мы гото́вы ѣхать. We are ready to start.

Мы хотѣмъ бытъ тамъ рано (see also § 123a).

We want to be there early.

§ 108. *The Direct Object.*

(a) An object which stands in the accusative case after a transitive verb is called a direct object :

Онъ купи́л корову. He bought a cow.

(b) Any other object is called an indirect object :

Онъ торгуетъ скотомъ (*instr.*). He deals in cattle.

Мы ждѣмъ но́чи (*gen.*).

We are waiting for the night to come [for nightfall].

Онъ отказáлся отъ вина́ (*gen.*). He refused wine.

§ 108a.

(c) A direct object stands in the genitive instead of the accusative if the verb implies negation :

Онъ зна́етъ уро́к (*acc.*). He knows the lesson.

but : Онъ не зна́етъ уро́ка (*gen.*). He does not know the lesson.

Онъ купи́л дом (*acc.*). He bought a house.

but : Онъ не купи́л до́ма (*gen.*). He did not buy a house.

(d) If the direct object is used in a partitive sense (implying not the whole quantity of an object, but only part of it), it stands in the genitive instead of accusative :

Дай мне воды. Give me some water.

Пожáлуйста, да́йте мне хлѣба.

Please give me some bread.

Он принѣс хлѣба. He fetched some bread.

but: Он принѣс хлеб.

He fetched the bread (all that there was of it).

Да́йте мне вина́. Give me some wine.

but: Принесѣте вино́. Fetch the wine.

§ 108b.

NOTE 1. An indirect object is often expressed in the nominative plural (used as an accusative) if it denotes a change of personal condition :

Он вы́шел в лю́ди. He became a man of standing [he succeeded in life].

Его́ взя́ли в изво́щики. He was taken [given a job] as a cab-driver.

Он стал изво́щиком. He became a cab-driver. (Adverbially: Он [состо́йт] в изво́щиках. He holds a position as cab-driver.)

Её́ взя́ли в гуверна́нтки. She has been taken as a governess. (Adverbially: Она́ в гуверна́нтках. She is a governess [serves as a governess].)

В музыкан́ты не годѣ́тесь. You are no good as musicians (Krylov).

Он стал музыкан́том, or: он поступи́л в музыкан́ты (*nom. pl.* instead of *instr. sing.*). He became a musician.

Он стал сто́рожем, or: он поступи́л в сторожа́ (*nom. pl.*). He became a porter, he took a position as a porter.

Его́ взя́ли в солда́ты (*nom. pl.*). He was taken as soldier.

Его́ произвели́ в офице́ры. He has been promoted [gazetted] an officer.

Она поступила в горничные (or Она стала горничной).
She took a post as chambermaid.

Я пойду в няни. I shall become a nurse. (Adverbially :
Она няней. She serves as a nurse. Он солдатом.
He is a soldier.)

By analogy the nominative plural is also used on other occasions :

Мы поедем в гости. We shall go on a visit (as guests).

Мы были в гостях (adverbially). We were on a visit.

Мы приехали из гостей (adverbially). We came back from a visit (as guests).

NOTE 2. If a direct object is expressed by a verbal infinitive followed by a noun-complement, the noun (or any other declinable word) stands in the instrumental case :

Я хочу быть солдатом. I want to be a soldier.

Она не хочет быть горничной.

She does not want to be a chambermaid.

The instrumental is also required after : стать, становиться, сделаться, to become ; считаться, слыть, to be known as, to be reputed as.

§ 109. Qualifying Words (*Qualifiers*).

These denote the quality or any other definition of nouns in a sentence :

Богатый купец жил в большом доме.

The rich merchant lived in a big house.

С той поры моё положение переменилось.

Since that time my position has changed.

Он держал двух поваров.

He kept two cooks (men).

Дом моего дяди сгорел.

The house of my uncle is burned down.

NOTE 1. Qualifying words usually answer to the questions : *како́в ?* what kind ? ; *како́й ?* which ? ; *чей ?* whose ? ; *ско́лько ?* how much ? , how many ? They are expressed by adjectives, pronouns, numerals, and participles, and they stand *in concord* with the word which they qualify :

Бѣлый домъ виденъ издали.

The white house is visible in the distance (*adj.*).

Мой садъ съ **ка́ждымъ** днёмъ стано́вится гуще.

My garden (with) every day becomes thicker [denser] (*prons.*).

Восьмо́й день прошёлъ.

The eighth day has passed (*ord. num.*).

Мы видели **игра́ющихъ** дете́й.

We saw playing children (*part.*).

In the above examples the qualifiers agree with the qualified word in gender, case, and number.

NOTE 2. If the qualifier is expressed by a noun or any other declinable part of speech, it can stand in various cases (but mostly in the genitive) :

Его́ спасла́ темнотá **но́чи**.

[Онъ былъ спасёнъ темнотóй **но́чи**.]

He was saved by the darkness of the night.

Не́мцы бежа́ли съ по́ля **бѣ́твы**.

The Germans ran from the field of battle.

Не́мцы разру́шили **ихъ** сѣ́ла.

The Germans destroyed their villages.

NOTE 3. A qualifying word can also be expressed by an infinitive :

Не́мцевъ лиши́ли возмо́жности **разруша́ть**.

The Germans were deprived of the possibility to destroy.

Пришло́ вре́мя **расста́ться**.

The time for parting has come.

§ 110. The apposition is a qualifying word expressed by a noun which stands in the same case as the qualified word :

Пришёл Пётр, **старик**, которого мы видели вчера.
Came Peter, the old man whom we saw yesterday.

В городе жил старик, по имени **Миронов**.
In the town lived an old man by the name of Mironov.

Ты должен верить мне, своему **другу**.
You must trust me, your friend.

Appositions are frequently joined to the qualified words by means of conjunctions, or other words which serve as conjunctions, such as : как, as ; или, or ; то-есть, that is ; именно, namely ; как-то, as follows ; etc.

Он мне, как **другу**, всегда верит.
He always confides in me as in a friend.

Степь, то-есть, **безлесная равнина** . . .
The steppe, that is a woodless plain . . .

Степь, **или безлесная равнина** . . .
The steppe, or a woodless plain . . .

The apposition can stand either before or after the qualified word.

NOTE 1. The subordination of the apposition to its head-word is so slight that the two are almost *co-ordinated*.

NOTE 2. The apposition usually stands within commas as a parenthetical sentence, if it follows the head-word.

NOTE 3. Occasionally an apposition is expressed by an adjective, particularly after a personal pronoun :

Он, **беспокойный**, всегда куда-то бежит.
He, the restless one, always runs somewhere.

ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS

§ 111. (a) Adverbial expressions of place, answering to the questions: где? where?; куда? where to?; откуда? where from? :

Я живу́ в Лондоне.	I live in London.
Мы е́дем в Москву́.	We are going to Moscow.
Он прие́хал из Ленингра́да.	He arrived from Leningrad.

§ 112. (b) Adverbial expressions of time, answering to the questions: когда? when?; как долго? how long?; с како́го вре́мени? since when?; до како́го вре́мени? till when? :

Она́ ждала́ с у́тра до ве́чера.
She waited from morning till evening.

Он пробы́л здесь две неде́ли.
He stayed here two weeks.

Он пробуде́т здесь до о́сени.
He will remain here till autumn.

Он до́лго не мог решы́ться.
For a long time he could not decide [make up his mind].

§ 113. (c) Adverbial expressions of manner, answering to the questions: как? how?; ка́ким о́бразом? in what manner?; ско́лько? how much?; в ка́ком разме́ре? to what extent? :

Он мно́го тру́дится, да по́льзы в э́том нет.
He labours much, but there is no profit in it.

Он полива́ет о́город два́ раза в де́нь.
He waters the kitchen garden twice a day.

Мы пое́хали ры́сью. We went at a trot.

Он дву́мь годáми ста́рше мене́ (*also* мое́го).
He is older than I by two years.

§ 114. (d) Adverbial expressions of cause, answering to the questions : почему? why? ; по какой причине? for what reason? ; отчего? because of what? ; за что? what for? :

Я остаюсь дома по болезни.

I remain at home owing to illness.

Он проснулся от внезапного шума.

He woke up because of the sudden noise.

Он был расстроен с досады.

He was upset from aggravation [annoyance].

Я был наказан за свою гордость.

I was punished for my pride.

Я чуть не вскрикнул со страха.

I nearly cried out from fear.

§ 115. (e) Adverbial expressions of purpose, answering to the questions : зачем? for what object or what for? ; для чего? to what purpose? ; с какой целью? with what object? :

Он был послан [его послали] в город за вином.

He was sent to town to fetch wine.

Они остановились в корчмѣ [на постоялом дворѣ] для ночлега [на ночлѣг] [ночевать].

They stopped at the inn for the night [to stay for the night].

Мой сосѣд пригласил меня обѣдать с ним.

My neighbour invited me to dine with him.

NOTE. The most frequently used words for expressing adverbials of all classes are: adverbs, gerunds, nouns, and infinitives.

§ 116. *Co-ordination and Subordination.*

The student must bear in mind that in the study of a language so highly inflected as Russian he will have to

familiarize himself with the right mode of joining the various parts that go to make up the sentence in order to join them into a coherent and correct whole.

Words are joined into a sentence in two ways :

(1) by *Co-ordination*.

(2) by *Subordination*.

§ 117. (1) *Co-ordination*, where parts of the sentence are placed in the same form as far as number, gender, and person are concerned :

Старик ловил рыбу. The old man was catching fish.
(Subject and predicate are in the same number and gender.)

Старуха пряла. The old woman spun. (Co-ordination of gender and number.)

Я иду гулять. I go for a walk. (Co-ordination of person and number.)

Co-ordination mainly affects :

(a) predicate and subject ;

(b) qualifying word and qualified word.

(a) **Predicate**, when expressed by a verb, agrees with the subject of the sentence in person, number, and in gender (if in the past tense) :

Бесело сияет месяц. Brightly [gaily] the moon is shining.

Прибежали дети. The children came running.

Старик ловил рыбу. The old man caught fish.

Птица летала. The bird was flying.

Хлеб стал дорог. Bread has become dear.

Щука жадная рыба. The pike is a greedy fish.

(b) **Qualifying word** agrees with the qualified word in gender, number, and case :

Белый снег сверкает. The white snow glitters.

Белка там живёт ручная. A tame squirrel lives there.

§ 118. (2) *Subordination.*

By subordination we mean such a manner of joining two words in a sentence where one word stands in the particular case which is required by the other word :

Осёл уви́дел соловья́. The donkey saw the nightingale.
(Direct object in the genitive, instead of accusative, is required in the case of an animate noun.)

Лиса́ залёзла в сад. The fox got into the orchard.
(Accusative with в answering to the question куда ?.)

Он досто́ин ва́шего внима́ния. He is deserving of your attention.

The word which requires that the other word should stand in a particular case, thus deciding the particular case in which that word should stand, is called the **governing word**.

The word which conforms in the particular case (the modified word) in accordance with the requirement of the governing word, is called the **governed word**.

Governing words in the sentence are mostly verbs, but occasionally they can also be nouns and adjectives :

Я ви́дел бра́та. I saw brother. (Governing word is a verb).

У него́ приви́чка к труду́. He has a bent for work.
(Governing word is a noun.)

Он досто́ин внима́ния. He is deserving of attention.
(Governing word is a short adjective.)

Governed words are nearly always nouns.

Subordination can be effected both with and without a preposition :

Осёл уви́дел соловья́.	The donkey saw the nightingale.
Над ослóм смею́тся.	The donkey is laughed at.
Лиса́ залёзла в сад,	The fox got into the orchard.

The relation between the governing and the governed words can be either (1) an indirect one, or (2) a direct one: that is, (1) with a preposition, or (2) without a preposition.

1. Лиса залезла в сад.
2. Осёл увидел соловья.

§ 119. 1. *Peculiar Cases of Co-ordination between Subject and Predicate.*

(1) If the subject is expressed by a cardinal numeral or the words: много (much), мало (little), множество (a large quantity), несколько (a few), then the verb (predicate) can stand either in the plural or in neuter singular:

Оставалось семь вёрст до Москвы.

It was [remained] seven versts to Moscow. (Verb in neuter singular.)

Несколько казаков встретили капитана.

A few Cossacks met the captain. (Verb in the plural.)

На столе было много бутылок вина.

On the table there were many bottles of wine.

Множество собак встретило нас громким лаем.

A large number of dogs met us with loud barking. (Verb in neuter singular.)

Множество новых домиков мелькало из-за деревьев.

A large number of new small houses glimmered through [from behind] the trees. (Verb in neuter singular.)

(2) If the auxiliary verb быть (usually omitted in the present tense if used as a copula) is used as an ordinary predicate, the singular есть can be used even when plurality is expressed (see § 134a):

У нас есть книги. We have books.

§ 120. 2. *Peculiar Cases of Co-ordination between Qualifier and Qualified word.* (See § 137, sub-section 7.)

(1) Cardinal numerals два, оба, три, четыре, полтора do not conform in case with their noun (that is, they do not

take the nominative or accusative plural), but require the genitive singular :

два ¹ рубля,	two roubles
оба стола́,	both tables
три сту́ла,	three chairs
четы́ре бра́та,	four brothers
полтора́ ¹ фунта,	1½ pounds

(2) Cardinal and collective numerals, and also adverbial pronouns denoting an indefinite quantity (пять, шесть, etc.; двое, трое, etc.; много, мало, несколько), require the genitive plural, except when много, мало are used with partitive nouns, such as butter, sugar, tea, etc., in the sense of 'much,' 'little' :

мало столо́в,	few tables
много сту́льев,	many chairs
неско́лько книг,	a few books
but : мало ма́сла,	little butter
много са́хару,	much sugar

(3) In the oblique cases cardinal numerals (and adverbial pronouns denoting quantity) agree with the noun :

<i>Gen.</i>	двух столо́в
<i>Dat.</i>	двум столо́м
<i>Instr.</i>	мно́гими столо́ми

NOTE. In Russian the expressions *five, six, a few, how many people*, are rendered as :

пять челове́к	} not люде́й
шесть челове́к	
неско́лько челове́к	
ско́лько челове́к	

(see §§ 20, group 9 ; 54b) ;

¹ две, полторы́, if used with a feminine noun.

but the expressions *few people*, *many people*, are rendered as : ма́ло люде́й мно́го люде́й

or in the popular forms :

ма́ло наро́ду мно́го наро́ду

PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL SENTENCES

§ 121. (1) *Personal sentences* have either a clearly defined (apparent) or a latent (implied) subject :

травá растёт, grass grows
я пишу́, I write

§ 122. (2) *Impersonal sentences* have no apparent grammatical subject :

Морозит.	It freezes.
Светает.	It is daybreak [it is getting light].
Рассвело́.	It is daybreak [it has become light].
Мне хочется есть.	I feel hungry.
Мне хоте́лось есть.	I felt hungry.
По у́лицам сло́на води́ли.	
An elephant was being led along the streets.	

In the first three sentences, which express natural phenomena, both the formal subject and the predicate are merged in one word. In the second three sentences the grammatical subject is inverted (turned into an object). (See § 56b.)

To the same class belong :

мне ду́мается,	I seem to think ; I am thinking ; it occurs to me
мне ду́малось,	I was thinking ; it occurred to me
говора́т,	they say
нет [не есть],	no [it is not]
темне́ет,	it is getting dark
мне не спи́тся,	I cannot sleep
мне ка́жется,	it seems to me
мне ка́зало́сь[*по-],	it seemed to me ; I thought

NOTE. The predicate of an impersonal sentence can be expressed :

- (a) By the second person of the present tense of the indicative mood or by the second person of the imperative mood :

Тѣмѣ ѣдешь, дѣльшѣ бѣдѣшь.

The slower you travel, the farther you will be [get].

Хлѣб-солѣ ѣшь, а прѣвду режь.

Eat bread and salt, and be truthful [cut the truth].

- (b) By the third person singular (neuter) of the indicative mood (both past and present) :

Рассветает. It is the beginning of daybreak.

Рассвелó. It is daybreak.

Морóзит. It freezes.

Морóзило. It was freezing.

Крышу сорвало бóмбой.

The roof has been torn off by a bomb.

Меня сѣльно толкнуло вперед.

I was forcibly pushed forward.

Мне хóчется есть. I feel hungry.

Мне не хотѣлось есть. I did not feel hungry.

Мне не спѣтся. I cannot sleep.

Мне не спáлось. I could not sleep.

Егó нет [не есть] дóма. He is not in [at home].

Егó нѣ было дóма. He was not in [at home].

У меня нѣ было дѣнег. I had no money.

В лес дров не вóзят.

Wood (firewood) is not carted into the forest.

NOTE. The tendency to turn a personal construction into an impersonal one is one of the peculiarities of the Russian language. This frequently happens even when the grammatical subject is not quite hidden. Some of the above sentences could be

expressed as personal sentences with a formal subject :

я хочу́ есть ; я не хоте́л есть ; я не могу́ спать ; я не мог спать ; он не до́ма ; он не́ был до́ма ; я не имёл де́нег ; etc.

But these personal constructions would imply too much individual deliberate *volition*, which it is the intention of the impersonal sentence not to express too prominently. (See § 56b.)

(c) By the infinitive :

Мне неко́гда вози́ться. I have no time to bother.

(d) By means of the auxiliary verbs : быть (to be), станови́ться, стать, сдела́ться (to become), in compound predicates, with an adverb. In the present tense the auxiliary verb is omitted :

Мне ску́чно.	I feel bored [dull].
Мне бы́ло ску́чно.	I felt bored.
Мне ста́ло ве́село.	I began to feel cheerful.
Мне ста́ло хо́лодно.	I began to feel cold.
Мне стано́вится жа́рко.	I begin to feel hot.

(e) By a neuter verb with the reflexive particle ся in the passive sense :

дом стро́ится [дом стро́ят], the house is being built

э́то де́лается [э́то де́лают], this is done

э́то называ́ется [э́то называ́ют], this is called

(See § 131.)

NOTE. The sentences in this group are only logically impersonal ; grammatically they have the character of personal sentences.

(f) An impersonal character is lent to a sentence by the use of the second person singular of the present tense

(or future in perfectives) preceded by the past tense of the semi-iterative verb *быва́ть* — *быва́ло* :

быва́ло, ска́жешь, it often happened one would say
быва́ло, е́дешь, it often happened one would go
 [travel]

быва́ло, спрóсишь, it often happened one would ask

NOTE. Other persons can also be used with *быва́ло* :

быва́ло, говоря́т, it often happened } they would
быва́ло, спрóсят, it often happened } say, ask

- (g) By the use of any form of an active verb for the passive form :

его́ уби́ло грóмом instead of *он был уби́т грóмом*
 he was killed by lightning [thunder]

- (h) By the use of the past tense in the neuter with the formal subject turned into an object, usually in the genitive :

прие́хало мно́го госте́й, many guests arrived
собра́лось мно́го наро́ду, many people gathered

NOTE. *мно́го* in these two sentences is the formal subject (*neuter*).

§ 123. *Negative Sentences* (see § 135, sub-section 6).

Double and treble negations are usual in Russian :

<i>нико́го не ви́дно</i> ,	no one to be seen
<i>нико́го не ви́дять</i> ,	one cannot see anybody
<i>нико́го нет</i> ,	no one is in ; there is nobody
<i>я нико́гда не забу́ду</i> ,	I shall never forget
<i>он ниче́го не сде́лал</i> ,	he did nothing
<i>ниче́го нет</i> ,	there is nothing
<i>он нико́гда ниче́го не де́лает</i> ,	he never does anything
<i>я ни́где не был</i> ,	I was not anywhere
<i>я ни́куда не по́еду</i> ,	I shall not go anywhere

я совсѣм не знаю,	I don't know at all
ниско́лько не знаю,	I don't know in the least
соверше́нно не знаю	} I absolutely do not know
ни́мало не знаю	
я во́все не хочу́,	I do not at all wish [want]

NOTE. Negative pronouns and adverbs always stand before the particle **не** which precedes the verb.

§ 123a. *Use of the Infinitive as an object-complement.* (See § 107.)

ду́маю пойти́,	I think of going
ду́маю нача́ть,	I think of beginning
ду́маю писа́ть,	I think of writing
ду́маю посла́ть,	I think of sending
¹ начну́ рабо́тать,	I shall begin to work
¹ нача́л писа́ть,	began to write
¹ ста́л проси́ть,	began to ask

§ 123b. *Use of the Imperative.*

(1) The affirmative imperative (when requesting or ordering someone to do a thing) is often expressed in the imperfective form even if the verb is used in the perfective aspect in the indicative mood. An order or command thus expressed is less abrupt :

сади́тесь здесь (sit down here) is less definite, but is also less abrupt than **ся́дьте** здесь.

In the negative imperative the same tendency is noticed :
не говори́, не сказа́ывай (do not speak, do not tell)
instead of **не скажи́**.

NOTE. But if a verb is used with a prepositional prefix, which often alters the general meaning of the verb by giving it a modified direction, the imperative is used in the perfective form :

прине́сите кнѝги,	fetch the books
унесе́йте всё э́то,	take all this away
позовѝте дво́рника,	call the porter

¹ After verbs denoting beginning or termination of an action, the imperfective of the complement verb is used.

(2) Often the imperative singular takes the place of a conditional clause :

знай я это раньше, я бы не дал книги, had I known this before, I would not have given the book (instead of если бы я знал это раньше). (See § 106, sub-section (3).)

(3) The imperatives of дать, давать : дай[те], давай[те] mean : let us . . .

давайте играть в прятки, let us play at hide-and-seek.

будем, будьте also have the meaning of 'let us . . .'

(4) The imperatives of пустить, пускать (to let, to allow) : пусть, пускай, followed by another verb, mean : let him, let them :

пусть, пускай пишет, let him write

пусть, пускай делают, let them do

пусть, пускай, used alone, mean : 'all right,' 'I don't care.'

(5)

здравствуй[те]	{	customary form of	}	how do you do ?

literal meaning : keep well

прощай[те], good-bye

are imperatives which are used almost adverbially.

§ 124. Complex Sentences.

It is frequently found necessary to elucidate some part of a simple sentence by expressing it in a whole sentence instead of one word. When this is done a complex sentence is formed. Two or three simple sentences can be joined together into one complex sentence. The simple sentences thus joined are called clauses. There is usually a principal

clause and one or more subordinate clauses. The principal clause is that which expresses the main thought of the complex sentence. Any other clauses which form a part of the main sentence are called subordinate clauses. The dependent clause, or clauses, may be either *co-ordinate* or *subordinate*:

Порá вставáть : ужé седьмóй час ; or

Порá вставáть, потому́ что ужé седьмóй час (co-ordination).

It is time to get up : because it is already past [gone] six (the seventh hour).

Нам не нужна́ постéль : мы бúdeм спать на дворé ; or

Нам не нужна́ постéль, потому́ что мы бúdeм спать на дворé (co-ordination).

We need no bed as [because] we will sleep in the yard [outside].

Спервá шёл дождь, потóм тучи разогна́ло вéтром, и наконéц нéбо проясни́лось (co-ordination).

At first it was raining, then [afterwards] the clouds were dispersed by the wind, and finally the sky cleared.

Дверь отворíлась, и человек вошёл в кóмнату (co-ordination).

The door opened, and a man entered the room.

Кóмната, где лежáл Илья́ Ильи́ч, казáлась прекра́сно у́бранной (subordination).

The room in which Пя́я Пйич was lying appeared to be beautifully decorated [furnished].

Он указáл на стол, на котóром Облóмов обéдал (sub-ordination).

He pointed to the table at which Oblomov was having dinner [was dining].

Никтó не знаёт, бúdeт ли он зáвтра жив или умрёт (subordination).

No one knows whether he will be alive to-morrow or he will be dead.

Европéйцы дóлго не знáли, что существует Амéрика ;
or Европéйцы дóлго не знáли тогó, что существует
Амéрика (subordination).

Europeans did not know for a long time about the existence of America. (Here the subordinate clause answers to the question *черó ?* what ? The clause stands as a direct object complementing a negative predicate.)

Besides these two categories of clauses, there are also inserted and parenthetical clauses :

Когдá он говорíт, а он почти́ всегда́ говорíт, егó
лицó выражаёт досáду (inserted clause).

When he talks, and he almost always talks, his face expresses vexation [annoyance].

Ты, говорят, большóй мáстер петь (parenthetical clause).
They say, thou art a great master of [good at] singing.

Он, я полагаю́, приéдет зáвтра (parenthetical clause).
He, I suppose, will arrive to-morrow.

Он, говорят, рáнен { They say }
Говорят, он рáнен { he is } (parenthetical clauses).
Он рáнен, говорят { wounded }

Спóрили, как вóдится, óчень дóлго (parenthetical).
They argued a very long time, as usual.

Inserted and parenthetical clauses can stand in the relation of co-ordination or subordination to the principal clause. They usually stand between commas if in the middle of the principal sentence. They are separated by a comma if they stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

Clauses can stand in the same relation to each other and to single words as words do to one another in the sentence.

Subordinate clauses, either in an apparent or in an implied way, can be made to answer to the same questions

as the word in the principal sentence, which they supplant for the purpose of greater elucidation :

Я не был в классе, потому что я был болен.

I was not at the class because I was ill.

This sentence can answer to the questions: почему? why?; по какой причине? for what reason? The sentence can be paraphrased as: Я не был в классе по болезни (by reason of illness).

Я прилѣг, чтобы вздремнуть [я прилѣг вздремнуть].

I lay down in order to have a little sleep.

This subordinate clause can answer to the question: for what purpose?

Что прошлѣ, того не воротишь [прошлого не воротишь]; не воротишь того, что прошлѣ.

That which is past [gone] thou wilt not turn back [cannot be recalled].

The question is here: чего не воротишь?

§ 125. *Simple subordinate clauses* which form part of a complex sentence fall under the three main heads of:

(1) Noun-clauses; (2) adjective-clauses; and (3) adverb-clauses.

(1) A noun-clause can stand to its principal clause in the relation of: (a) subject; (b) predicate; (c) direct object.

(2) An adjective-clause always qualifies a noun (as qualifier).

(3) An adverb-clause stands to its principal clause in the same relation as an adverb.

NOTE. Noun-clauses and adjective-clauses cannot take the inflexions of nouns or adjectives; they merely stand in place of nouns or adjectives. These clauses are frequently preceded by pronouns with the functions of

conjunctions. These take the case of the noun or adjective which is supplanted, in accordance with the grammatical demand of the word in the principal sentence to which the clause is subordinated (see last example of § 124). Subordinate clauses are also introduced by adverbs and conjunctions.

§ 126. (a) *Subject-clauses.*

A subject-clause is a clause which has the function of a subject to the principal clause. It answers to the questions: кто? who?; что? what? and is joined to the principal clause by the conjunction-words: кто, что, who, which, that:

Кто победил, тот прав.

[Тот прав, кто победил.]

He is (in the) right who conquered [won].

Что с вóзу упáло, то пропáло.

[То пропáло, что с вóзу упáло.]

What has fallen off the cart is lost.

[That is lost which has fallen off the cart.]

Кто сыт, тот голодного не понимает.

[Тот, голодного не понимает, кто сыт.]

[Сытый голодного не понимает.]

He who is well-fed does not understand the hungry one.

Кто богáт, тот чáсто забывáет бédных.

[Богáтый чáсто забывáет бédных.]

He who is rich often forgets the poor.

§ 127. (b) *Predicate-clauses* are not so frequent, but they are occasionally used as an elucidating predicate to the principal clause. They answer to the questions: какóв, -á, -ó, -ы?, кто?, что?; how is?, who?, what? They are joined to the principal clause by the conjunction-words: какóв, -á, -ó, -ы; какóй, -áя, -óе, -íе, as, exactly as; не кто инóй как, none other than; не что инóе как, nothing else but:

Каковá яблоня, такóв и плод.

[Такóв плод, каковá яблоня.]

As is the apple-tree, so is the fruit.

Был он [это был] не кто инóй, как наш сосéд Петрóв.

He was [it was] none other than our neighbour Petrov.

(c) *Object-clauses* have the same function as an ordinary object and are usually connected with the principal clause by the conjunction-word что, and also by other conjunction-words :

Теперь все знают, что нёмцы свирéпы.

[Все знают свирéпость нёмцев.]

Now everyone knows that the Germans are cruel [ferocious].

Что вóлки жáдны, всякий зnáет.

[Всякий зnáет, что вóлки жáдны.]

[Все знают о жáдности волкóв.]

Everyone knows that wolves are ravenous.

Что посéешь, то и пожнёшь.

[То пожнёшь, что посéешь.]

[Посéянное пожнёшь.]

What thou wilt sow thou wilt also reap.

§ 128. *Qualifier-clauses* (adjective-clauses) serve as detailed (descriptive) qualifiers to any noun in the principal sentence. They are usually joined to the principal sentence by the pronouns кто, who; какóй, -я, -ё, -ёе, what kind; котóрый, -ая, -ое, -ые, which; чей, чья, чьё, чьи, whose; что, what; and also by conjunction-words, such as: где, where; когдá, when; кудá, whither :

Настáл день, когдá я пóнял значéние егó слов.

The day arrived when I understood [realized] the meaning of his words.

Есть такíе люди, котóрые ничегó не знают.

There are such people who know nothing.

Найди письмó, котóрое я вчера получил от брата.
Find the letter which I received yesterday from brother.

Человéк, котóрый здоров, мóжет рабóтать.

[Здоровый человек мóжет рабóтать.]

A man who is healthy can work.

Тот, кто глуп, осóдит [глúпый осóдит].

He who is stupid will condemn.

Тот, кто умён, поймёт [úмный поймёт].

He who is wise will understand.

§ 129. *Adverb-clauses* have the function of adverbs in relation to the principal clause. According to their meaning adverb-clauses are classed as adverb-clauses : (1) of time ; (2) of place ; (3) of cause ; (4) of manner ; (5) of purpose.

These clauses are joined to the principal clause in the following way :

§ 129a. (1) *Adverb-clauses of time* answer to the questions : когда ? when ? ; как дóлго ? how long ? ; с каких пор ? since when ? They are joined by : когда, when ; в то врéмя, как, at the time when (as) ; с тех пор, как, since the time when ; пóсле того, как, after :

Когда восхóдит сóлнце, станóвится светлó.

When the sun rises it becomes light.

В то врéмя как [когда] éто случíлось, его ужé нé было в живых.

At the time when this happened he was no longer alive [among the living].

С тех пор, как началась война, жить стáло трóдно.

Since (the time that) the war started, life has become difficult [it has become difficult to live].

Пóсле того, как он объяснил нам суть дéла, всё стáло ёсно.

After he had explained to us the pith [gist] of the matter, everything became clear.

§ 129b. (2) *Adverb-clauses of place* answer to the questions: где? where?; куда? whither?; откуда? whence? They are joined by: куда, whither; где, where; откуда, whence:

Его нашли на том же месте, где он и раньше был.

He was found on the very spot where he had also been before.

Я оттуда, где струится [течёт] тихий Дон.

I am from [thence] where the quiet Don flows.

§ 129c. (3) *Adverb-clauses of manner* answer to the questions: как? how?; каким образом? in what manner? They are joined by: как, as, in the manner of; что, that:

Пусть другие живут, как хотят.

Let others live as [in the manner] they like

Он так много работает весь день, что к вечеру у него уж нет больше сил работать.

He works so much all day that towards the evening he has no more strength to work.

День был ясен, как душа младенца.

The day was as clear as the soul of a babe.

Он поёт, как соловей [поёт соловьём].

He sings like a nightingale [sings in the manner of a nightingale].

Он свернулся, как калач [свернулся калачом].

He rolled himself up like a roll [round cake] [in the manner of a roll].

§ 129d. (4) *Adverb-clauses of cause* answer to the questions: почему? for what reason?; отчего? why?; за что? what for? They are joined by: потому-что, because; оттого-что, за то что, for the reason that:

Я оттого могу помогать бедным, что всегда был бережлив.

I can help the poor because I have always been frugal.

Я за то на тебя сердит, что ты ничего не делаешь.
I am angry with you because you are not doing anything.

Я не поеду за границу, потому что решил поступить в университет.

I shall not go abroad because I have decided to enter the university.

§ 129e. (5) *Adverb-clauses of purpose* answer to the questions : зачем ?, для чего ? for what purpose ? They are joined by [для того], чтобы, in order to :

Дровосек пошёл [отправился] в лес, чтобы рубить дрова.

The wood-cutter has gone to the forest in order to cut [chop] wood.

Мальчик пошёл к реке [на реку] с удочкой, чтобы удить. [Для того, чтобы ловить рыбу.]

The boy went to the river [on the river] with a fishing-rod in order to angle.

§ 130. *Function of the Participle in the Complex Sentence.*

Participles can replace the predicate of a qualifying subordinate clause. The joining conjunction-word is dropped, and a participle takes the place of the verb-predicate in the same tense :

(1) Костёр пылал и освещал лица наших людей, которые сидели около него. The camp fire burned brightly and lit up the faces of our men who sat round it.

This sentence can be turned into :

Костёр пылал и освещал лица наших людей, сидевших около него. (Past active participle in genitive plural to conform with the case of наших людей.) (The sentence is thereby shortened.)

- (2) Няня немедленно послала на почту письмо, которое она написала. The nurse sent to the post-office the letter which she had written.

This can be turned into :

Няня немедленно послала на почту письмо, написанное ею. (Past passive participle in the accusative (neuter) to conform with письмо.)

§ 130a. *Function of the Gerund (Verbal Adverb) in the Complex Sentence.*

Gerunds can replace verb-predicates in some subordinate adverb-clauses. The joining conjunction-word is dropped and the verb-predicate is supplanted by a gerund :

- (1) Present gerund (verbal adverb) is used when the actions (or states) in both the principal and the subordinate clauses takes place at the same time :

Когда я брожу вблизи реки, я слышу выстрелы.
When I stroll [wander] near the river I hear shots [firing].

This can be turned into :

Бродя вблизи реки, я слышу выстрелы (present gerund).

Когда мы будем в Москвѣ, мы посетим все музеи.
When we are [shall be] in Moscow we shall visit all the museums.

This can be turned into :

Будучи в Москвѣ, мы посетим все музеи.

- (2) Past gerund (verbal adverb) is used when the action of the subordinate clause precedes that of the principal clause :

Когда он написал письмо, брат отнёс его на почту.
Brother, after he had written the letter, took it to the post-office.

This can be turned into :

Написав письмо, брат отнёс его на почту.

§ 131. *The Passive Voice.*

The long form of the passive participle (both present and past) is mainly used in subordinate clauses :

Дом, построенный моим отцом, сгорел.

The house built by my father has been burned down.

Старик, уважаемый всеми жителями нашего города, выбран мэром.

The old man who is respected by all the inhabitants of our town, has been elected mayor.

The short passive participle is frequently used as a predicate, either by itself or with the auxiliary verb *быть* :

Он выбран мэром.

He has been elected mayor.

Он был выбран мэром.

He was [had been] elected mayor.

Дом построен.

The house has been built.

Дом был построен.

The house was [had been] built.

Он всеми уважаем.

He is respected by everybody.

Он был всеми уважаем.

He was respected by everybody.

But the paraphrased expressions :

его все уважают

его все уважали

are more frequently used.

A great number of passive constructions are rendered by reflexive verbs. (See §§ 69; 122, note (e).)

это называется

[это называют]

this is called

это называлось

[это называли]

this was called

золото добывается

[золото добывают]

gold is procured [found]

вопрос обсуждается

[вопрос обсуждают]

the question is discussed

обсуждался [обсуждали], was discussed

он считается богатым [его считают богатым]	}	he is considered rich
он считался [его считали],		
они считались [их считали]	}	they were considered
бельё стираётся прачкой,		
laundress		linen is laundered by a
газета издаётся		instead of издаётся, the news-
paper is published		
концерт кончается		instead of кончаем
концерт начинается		„ начинаем

The passive voice is frequently expressed by the impersonal use of a transitive verb :

	Его убило громом
instead of	Он был убит громом.
	He was killed by lightning.
	Крышу сорвало ветром
instead of	Крыша была сорвана ветром.
	The roof has been torn away by the wind.
	Все дороги занесло снегом
instead of	Все дороги были занесены снегом.
	All the roads have been covered with snow.

§ 132. *Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.*

(1) In Russian there is no subjunctive mood (thought mood) for indirect narration. Subordinate sentences of indirect narration are often introduced by the adverbs: **де, дескать, мол** (as if to say; said he [she]; says he, etc.), and the verb is in the present, past, or future of the indicative mood, as required by the sense of the sentence. The above three adverbial expressions and also the parenthetical verb 'говорят,' although very frequent in colloquial speech, are not so often used in the literary, or everyday, language of the educated Russian. The adverbs **будто,**

[бўдто-бы] (as if) is very often used to introduce a subordinate sentence of reported speech when the narrator is not quite convinced of the truth of what he had been told :

Он говорѣт, бўдто егѠ обокрѣли.

He has been robbed, so he says.

(This may be so, but I refrain from commenting on it.)

If there is no room for such doubt, the subordinate clause of indirect narration is simply introduced by что :

Он говорѣт, что егѠ обокрѣли.

He says he has been robbed.

In subordinate sentences giving a paraphrased rendering of an interrogative or a negative sentence, the English words 'whether,' 'if,' are rendered in Russian by the particle **ли**, which is placed immediately after the verb of the subordinate clause :

Я не знѣю, ѣдет ли он в ЛѠндон, ѣли нет.

I do not know whether [if] he goes [is going] to London or not.

Вы не знѣете, дѠма-ли он ?

You do not know if he is at home ?

(For the use of the imperative in a conditional or subjunctive sense see § 106, sub-section (3), and § 123b, sub-section (2).)

(2) *Conditional sentences* are introduced by **ѣсли** and **ѣсли бы** (popular : **ѣжели**, **колі**, **ѣжели бы**). **ѣсли** (if) can be followed by a verb in any tense :

ѣсли он придѣт, то я бўду егѠ ждѣть.

If he is coming, I shall wait for him.

ѣсли он ѣдет сюдѣ, то нўжно приготѠвить кѠмнѣту для негѠ.

If he is coming here, then it is necessary to prepare a room for him.

Если он уже приехал, то я пойду к нему.
If he has already arrived, then I will go to him.

After **если бы**, which means 'if . . . had,' and after **бы**, 'would,' the verb can stand only in the past tense :

Если бы я знал, что вы приедете сюда, то я бы послал вам лошадь.

If I had known [had I known] that you were coming here, I would have sent you a horse.

(See also § 106, sub-section (3), and § 123b, sub-section (2).)

(3) *Indirect (reported) sentences.*

The tense of the verb in an indirect (reported) sentence is that in which the verb has been used in the actual direct statement. It does not conform to the tense of the verb in the principal clause :

Он сказал, что придёт. He said he *will* come (not *would* come, which would be пришёл-бы, and therefore incorrect).

Он сказал, что знает всё об этом. He said he *knows* all about it (not *knew*, which would be знал and would mean in Russian *had known*).

Он писал, что приедет завтра. He wrote that he *will* come to-morrow (not *would* come, which would be incorrectly приехал-бы with the Russian meaning of *might*, *would have come*).

NOTE. This is characteristic of the exactness of Russian speech, which does not subordinate logical correctness to grammatical forms.

For example, a Russian says : Я приеду, если брат будет там, I shall come if brother *will* be there, not : Я приеду если брат там, which would mean : I shall come if brother is *there now*.

(4) *Subordinate sentences of wish or request.*

A subordinate sentence which represents a wish or request is introduced in Russian by the conjunction **чтобы** followed by the verb in the past tense :

Я хочу, чтобы вы приехали завтра.

I wish that you should come to-morrow.

Он просил, чтобы вы сделали это.

He asked that you should do this.

But when **чтобы** means *in order to* it is followed by the infinitive :

Я приехал [для того] [затем], чтобы познакомиться с вами.

I came in order to make your acquaintance.

Я приехал сюда, чтобы отдохнуть.

I came here to have a rest.

§ 133. *Word Order.*

There is a greater freedom of word order in Russian than in English. This is made possible by the manifold inflexions. About the word order in Russian the following can be said :

(1) Although the subject of a simple sentence usually stands before the predicate, these can change places in accordance with the *position-emphasis* which it is desired to put on the predicate or the subject :

весна́ пришл́а	Spring has arrived
пришл́а весна́ . . .	Came the spring . . .

(2) Attributive adjectives stand before the noun which they qualify. So do pronouns and numerals if they have an attributive function :

бе́лый дом,	white house
мой брат,	my brother
пять книг,	five books
в э́то вре́мя,	at this time
весь го́род,	the whole town

(3) Adverbial expressions have a greater freedom of order :

приду́ за́втра	} I will come to-morrow
за́втра приду́	
скажу́ пото́м	} I will tell afterwards
пото́м скажу́	

§ 134. *Function of the verbs : БЫТЬ (to be), ИМѢТЬ (to have) in the Russian sentence.*

1. БЫТЬ.

(1) The present tense of the verb **БЫТЬ** is not often used in colloquial speech ; it is usually omitted. In the written language the third person singular and, less often, plural, **есть**, **суть** are occasionally used when special emphasis is needed. **Есть** is also used when it means: there is, there are¹:

Он мой брат.	He is my brother.
Он дома.	He is at home.
Он здесь.	He is here.
Я болен.	I am ill [not well].
Она́ весела́.	She is gay.
Они́ бедны [ы].	They are poor.
Мы заняты.	We are engaged [occupied].

In these examples **есть** and **суть** are omitted. (See § 103, group (d).)

But : **Есть** у меня́ та́кже . . . I also have . . .

Есть та́кие лю́ди . . . There are such people . . .

Есть там та́к мно́го но́вого.

There is so much novel [new] there.

Там нет [=не **есть**] ниче́го но́вого.

There is nothing novel [new] there.

(2) But in the past and future tenses the verb **БЫТЬ** is *not omitted* in similar constructions :

Он был здесь.	He was here.
Она́ бу́дет дома́.	She will be at home.
Ты бу́дешь рад.	You will [thou wilt] be glad.
Вы бу́дете у нас.	You will be at our house.

¹ Or in the meaning of possession. (See § 134a.)

Его не было дома. He was not at home [in].

Меня не будет дома. I shall not be at home.

This form is used more frequently than я не буду дома. The latter form would seem to sound too precise, as if to say: I will make a point of not being at home; it would denote too much definite purpose, whereas меня не будет дома is just a casual statement that I shall not be in. The same applies also to the preceding example: его не было дома.

(3) The present tense of БЫТЬ 'есть' is also omitted in impersonal sentences formed from short adjectives:

можно, it is possible

должно, it is necessary

приятно, it is pleasant

полезно, it is useful. (See §§ 45; 90 (2) (a).)

NOTE. должно быть means: probably.

But in the past and future it is:

можно было, можно будет

было приятно, будет приятно

было бы полезно, it would [might] be useful

будет полезно, it will be useful

(4) Есть is omitted in the expressions жаль, it is a pity; and лень, too lazy!, laziness, indolence:

мне лень, I am lazy, I feel lazy [indolent]

мне жаль, I feel sorry

мне было жаль, I felt sorry

ему было лень, he felt lazy [indolent]

also in the expression нельзя, it is not possible (from the obsolete form лзя). This expression is only used by itself in the present tense. In the past and future it is used with было or будет: нельзя было, нельзя будет.

§ 134a. 2. Имѣть.

Имѣть is not used as an auxiliary verb for the formation of verbal tenses as in English. Its ordinary meaning is: to possess.

я имéю means : I am in the possession of :

Он имéет дом на Ту́льской у́лице.

He has [possesses] a house in Tula street.

It is also used in such expressions as :

Дом имéет пять ко́мнат.

The house has five rooms.

Кварти́ра имéет ва́нную ко́мнату [ва́нну].

The flat has a bathroom [bath].

Гости́ница имéет хоро́ший рестора́н.

The hotel has a good restaurant. (But also :

При гости́нице имéется хоро́ший рестора́н.

A good restaurant is attached to the hotel.)

У него́ имéются [во́дятся, е́сть] де́ньги.

He has [possesses] money.

In colloquial speech the place of—

я имéю, etc., is taken by у меня́ е́сть.¹

он имéет — у него́ е́сть.

ты имéл — у тебя́ был, -а́, -о, -и.

мы бу́дем имéть — у нас бу́дет [бу́дут].

я имéю мно́го книг — у меня́ е́сть мно́го книг, I
have many books.

NOTE. Е́сть is used for both singular and plural
in such constructions. (See § 119.)

я имéл мно́го книг — у меня́ бы́ло (*neuter*) мно́го
книг, I had many books.

он имéл хоро́ший сад — у него́ был хоро́ший сад,
he had a good garden.

кто имéет мой нож? — у кого́ мой нож?, who has
my knife?

кто имéет ло́шадь? — у кого́ е́сть ло́шадь?, who
has a horse?

мы не имéем ло́шади — у нас нет ло́шади, we have
no horse.

¹ я не имéю — у меня́ нет.

я не имéл — у меня́ не́ было.

In all the sentences where the verb *имѣть* is replaced by a corresponding tense of *быть*, the logical subject is turned into a grammatical object. In the negative the sentence is turned into an impersonal one, also with the inverted subject as object. The inverted form is frequently used, as this is more in consonance with the spirit of the Russian language. (See §§ 122-123.)

§ 135. *Tautological and other expressions and particles used in Russian sentences.*

1.

чуть-чуть,	just a little
мáло-помáлу,	little by little, by degrees
давнѣйш-давнѣйшѣ,	a very long time ago
точѣ-в-точѣ,	exactly as
друг дру́га	{ each other
	{ one another
друг от дру́га	{ one from the other
	{ from each other
друг к дру́гу	{ one to the other
	{ to each other
друг с дру́гом	{ one with the other
	{ with each other
друг о дру́ге	{ one about the other
	{ about each other

2. Pronouns (and adverbs) with the particle *то* (see § 53):

кто́-то, someone	}	implying some uncertainty as to who, or what, or how
что́-то, something		
какъ-то, somehow		
то́-то, indeed ; yes, indeed		

NOTE. The particle *то* attached to a word¹ means, particularly in popular speech: but as regards . . . , as for . . .

оте́ц-то ниче́го . . . , as for father, he is all right . . .
 да ма́чеха-то, не дай Бог . . . , but as for step-mother,
 God help us [God forbid] . . .

¹ *-то* attached to a word usually lends to it emphasis.

3. Pronouns and adverbs with the particles : **кто́** [кой], **нибу́дь**, **ли́бо** (see § 53) :

кто́-кто, someone	} with a certain degree of definite- ness
что́-что, something	
как-как, somehow	

кто-нибу́дь, someone or other, anyone

что-нибу́дь, something or other, anything

как-нибу́дь, somehow or other, anyhow

где-нибу́дь	} somewhere
куда́-нибу́дь	

когда́-нибу́дь, sometime or other

кто́-либо	someone	} certainty is immaterial or problematical
	anyone	
что́-либо	something	
	anything	

(See §§ 47, 6 ; 53 (4) ; 91, group B (c).)

NOTE. The adverbial particles **то**, **нибу́дь**, **ли́бо**, placed *after* the interrogative-relative pronouns **кто**, **что**, **чей**, **како́й**, **ско́лько**, and the adverbs **как**, **где**, **куда́**, **отку́да**, **когда́** ; also the particle **кто́** [кой] placed *before* the same pronouns and adverbs, while they all indicate indefiniteness, yet each one conveys a particular degree of indefiniteness :

то expresses less indefiniteness than **нибу́дь**.

кто́ conveys the idea that the person who says : **кто́-что**, **кто́-кто**, **кто́-где**, **кто́-как**, knows exactly what the something, somebody, somewhere, somehow is, but that he prefers not to specify it.

ли́бо expresses even less certainty than **нибу́дь** : **кто́-либо**, **что́-либо** means anyone, anything—immaterial who or what. The who or what is given a problematical character by the particle **ли́бо**.

In adverbial expressions of time, **когда́-то** means : some time ago, once upon a time ; **когда́-нибу́дь** means : at some time or other in future.

In an interrogative sentence, когда-нибудь may mean :
at any time in the past :

Вы когда-нибудь там были ?

Were you there at any time [ever] ?

In adverbial expressions of place, где-то means :
somewhere, at some definite place ; где-нибудь means :
somewhere or other :

Мы переночевали где-то, недалекó от реки.

We stayed for the night somewhere, not far from
the river.

Мы переночуем где-нибудь.

We shall stay for the night somewhere or other.

кóе-где means: somewhere; where exactly is known to
the speaker, but he does not bother to specify. кóе-где
is also used in the sense of : in places, here and there.

4. Adverbs with по (see § 90 (2) (f)) :

по-ру́ски, in Russian

по-а́нглийски, in English

по-дру́жески, in a friendly manner

по-де́тски, in the manner of a child

по-ребя́чески, in a childish manner

5. Numerals with во (used as adverbs) (see § 91 (b)) :

во-пе́рвых, firstly

во-второ́ых, secondly

в тре́тих, thirdly

6. Pronouns and adverbs with the negative particle ни
(see § 123) :

никто́, no one

ничто́, nothing

никако́й, not any

ниче́й, not anybody's

ниче́го, nothing

нигде́
никуда́ } nowhere

ниотку́да, from nowhere

никогда́, never

ника́к, not in any way

ниско́лько, not in the
least

NOTE 1. Pronouns with the particle **ни** are declined as the original pronouns from which they are formed (see § 51):

<i>Nom.</i>	никто́	[ничто́] ¹	} When used with a preposition the construction is split up in declension
<i>Gen.</i>	{ никого́ ни от кого́	{ ничего́ ни от чего́	
<i>Dat.</i>	{ никому́ ни к кому́	{ ничему́ ни к чему́	
<i>Acc.</i>	{ никого́ никого́	{ ничего́ ничего́	
<i>Instr.</i>	{ никѣм ни с кем	{ ничѣм ни с чем	
<i>Loc.</i>	{ ни о ком ни о ком	{ ни о чѣм ни о чѣм	

ни ... **ни** used as a conjunction means: neither ... nor:
ни я, ни он, neither I nor he

ни used by itself can mean: not a ...

У него́ ни копе́йки не оста́лось.

He has been left with not a copeck.

У меня́ нет ни гро́ша[á]. I have not a farthing left.

NOTE 2. Pronouns and adverbs with the particle **ни** are always followed by the particle **не**, which stands immediately before the verb which it negates. These negative expressions, together with the particle **не**, constitute a double negation, which is usual in Russian.

NOTE 3. **ни** after a relative pronoun or adverb can form indefinite expressions with the meaning of 'no matter ...':

кто ни приказывай,	no matter who gives the order
что ни говорите,	no matter what you say
сколько ни давай,	no matter how much you give
какой он ни есть,	no matter what kind of man
	he is

давай, что ни попа́ло, give anything that comes
[falls] into your hands (no
matter what)

¹ Ничего́ is more frequently used.

кто-бы он ни был, no matter who he might be
 с кем бы то ни было, with anybody, no matter who
 как волка ни корми, no matter how [however much]
 you may feed a wolf . . .

It will be noted that the negative meaning of *ни* in these sentences is absorbed in the meaning of 'no matter who,' 'no matter how,' 'no matter when,' etc. Not only is the negative meaning gone, but such sentences even express a degree of emphasis and they are, consequently, not followed by the particle *не*.

7. *Pronouns and adverbs with the negative particle не* (contraction of *нет*=*не есть*). (See § 91, B (c).)

This particle, which has the meaning of *нет* (there is not), when joined with a pronoun or adverb and used with a verbal infinitive, is capable of forming an impersonal sentence. The logical subject usually stands in the dative as an inverted object :

Мне *некого* [*нет когó*] послать. I have no one to send.

Мне *некогда* [*нет когдá*] писать.

I have no time to write.

Мне *нигде* [*нет гдe*] сидеть. I have nowhere to sit.

Мне *некуда* [*нет кудá*] ехать. I have nowhere to go.

Мне *не от когó* ожидать помощи.

I have no one from whom to expect help.

NOTE 1. The pronouns most used for such negative predicative expressions are the oblique cases of *кто*, *что*, and the adverbs *где*, *куда*, *откуда*, *когда*. The pronoun can be used either with or without a preposition. If a preposition is used it usually stands between the particle *не* and the required oblique case of the pronoun :

не с кем . . . there is no one with whom . . .

не о чём . . . there is nothing about . . .

не о ком . . . there is no one about whom . . .

не от кого . . . there is no one from whom . . .

нѣ к кому . . .	there is no one to whom . . .
нѣ к чему . . .	there is nothing to which . . .
нѣ на что . . .	there is nothing on which . . .
нѣ за что . . .	there is nothing for which . . .
нѣзачем . . .	there is no need [occasion] . . .
нѣоткуда . . .	there is nowhere from . . .

It will be noted that as negative definitions these impersonal expressions have no nominative case, but they have all the oblique cases (accusative is merged in the genitive):

<i>Gen.-Acc.</i>	нѣкого	нѣчего
<i>Dat.</i>	нѣкому	нѣчему
<i>Instr.</i>	{ нѣкем	нѣчем
	{ нѣ с кем	нѣ с чем
<i>Loc.</i>	нѣ о ком	нѣ о чѣм

нѣчего can mean:

1. there is nothing to . . .
2. there is no need to . . .
3. it is (of) no use . . .

нѣчего писать,	there is nothing to write
нѣчего дѣлать,	nothing to be done
нѣчего беспоко́иться,	no need to worry
нѣчего боя́ться,	no use, no need to fear

NOTE 2. All these expressions with the particle нѣ have the value of a negative predicate. In the present tense нет is implied; in the past and future tenses было (*neuter*) and будет are used respectively:¹

мне нѣкогда,	I have no time
мне нѣкогда было,	I had no time
мне нѣкогда будет,	I shall have no time
нѣчего дѣлать,	there is nothing to be done
нѣчего было дѣлать,	there was nothing to be done
нѣчего будет дѣлать,	there will be nothing to be done
нѣкого послать,	there is no one to send

¹ In similar *affirmative* constructions нѣ is replaced by есть, было, будет; the *gen.* of the pronoun is replaced by the *acc.*

нѣкого было послать,	there was no one to send
нѣкого будет послать,	there will be no one to send
нѣ с кем будет говорить,	there will be no one to talk to
	[with]

NOTE 3. The negative expressions treated in subdivision 7 are *not followed* by the particle не.

NOTE 4. The negative predicative particle не should not be confused with the particle не in—

нѣкто,	someone	} The particle не in these words has no implied predicative meaning
нѣчто,	something	
нѣкоторый,	a certain person or thing	

(See § 47, 6.)

§ 136. *Use of the Reflexive Possessive Pronoun* свой, -я, -ѣ, -и *instead of* мой, твой, наш, ваш, егó, еѣ, их; my (mine), thy (thine), our(s), your(s), his, her(s), their(s).

If these possessive pronouns refer to anything belonging to the person named as the subject of the sentence, then they are replaced by свой, -я, -ѣ, -и :

Я взял свою книгу (instead of мою книгу).

I took my book.

Ты забыл свой зонтик (instead of твой зонтик).

You forgot your umbrella.

Она потеряла свою шляпу (instead of еѣ шляпу).

She has lost her hat.

Онѣ оставили свой дом (instead of их дом).

They (have) left their house.

Он прислал свою лошадь (instead of егó лошадь).

He (has) sent his horse.

Вы знаете свой характер (instead of ваш характер).

You know your nature.

NOTE. There are, however, deviations from this rule in colloquial speech, when the ordinary possessive is used. (See § 49, note 2.)

§ 136a. *Peculiarities in the use of Personal Pronouns.*

In colloquial speech the personal pronoun expressions :

Я И ТЫ	} are changed into	МЫ С ТОБО́Й
Я И ВЫ		МЫ С ВА́МИ
Я И ОН		МЫ С НИМ
Я И ОНА́		МЫ С НЕ́Ю
Я И ОНѢ		МЫ С НИ́МИ

if the action performed, or to be performed, is expressed by the same verb. The verb stands in the first person plural.

Thus, instead of Я И ТЫ ПОЙДѢМ — МЫ С ТОБО́Й ПОЙДѢМ.
Similarly the pronouns :

ТЫ И ОН	} are changed into	ВЫ С НИМ
ТЫ И ОНА́		ВЫ С НЕЙ
ТЫ И ОНѢ		ВЫ С НИ́МИ

The verb stands in the second person plural. Thus, instead of ТЫ И ОН (ОНА́, ОНѢ) ПОЙДѢТЕ — ВЫ С НИМ (С НЕЙ, С НИ́МИ) ПОЙДѢТЕ.

In the oblique cases of pronouns similar changes occur.

Thus,

МЕНЯ́ И ТЕБЯ́	} are changed into	НАС С ТОБО́Ю
ТЕБѢ́ И ЕМУ́		ВАМ С НИМ etc.

§ 136b. *The Function of the Personal Reflexive Pronoun : себя́.*

себя́ (oneself) can be used with all persons, genders, and numbers :

Я ви́жу себя́. I see myself.

Ты не зна́ешь себя́. You do not know yourself [thyself].

Он счита́ет себя́ у́мным. He considers himself clever.

Она́ имѣет де́ньги при себе́.

She has the money on her [with her].

Она привела́ с собо́ю сестру́.

She brought (her) sister with her.

Мы не знаем, что делать с собою.

We do not know what to do with ourselves.

Он о себѣ высоко́го мнѣнія.

He has a high opinion of himself.

Он звал меня к себѣ домой.

He asked me to (come to) his house.

Он у себя́ в комна́те. He is in his room.

The unstressed себе (*dat.*) is often used to indicate an independent and carefree attitude of the person to whom it refers :

Живѣт себе́ как ба́рин и ни с кем не счита́ется.

He lives like a squire and takes no account of anybody.

In a somewhat similar meaning себе́ is used in the expressions :

ничего́ [себе́], not so bad

та́к себе́, so-so

WORD SUBORDINATION

The Meaning and Uses of Oblique Cases of Nouns, Pronouns, etc.

§ 137. Genitive is used :

1. To express possession, and also certain properties and characteristics :

дом дяди,	uncle's house
челове́к добро́го нра́ва,	a man of kind disposition
or высоко́го ро́ста,	of high stature (a tall person)

2. To express state, quality, or number of object or objects ; also when a part of a quantity is referred to :

у меня́ мно́го рабо́ты,	I have much work (to do)
набра́лось воды́,	some water got collected
	(impersonal sentence)

хлѣба хвѣтит для всех, there will be enough bread
for all

я принѣс воды, I have brought some water
but : я принѣс воду, I brought water (in a general
sense)

он купил ржи, he bought some rye
but : он купил рожь, he bought the rye (the
whole quantity)

3. To express comparison :

свѣтлѣе солнца, brighter than the sun
темнѣе нѣчи, darker than night

4. In sentences expressing negation, when a noun stands as object after verbs with the particle не, or after нет :

(a) in impersonal sentences :

нѣ было дождя, there was no rain
нѣ будет обѣда, there will be no dinner
у меня нет денег, I have no money
у них нет хлѣба, they have no bread

(b) in negative constructions, after a transitive verb, as a direct object :

нѣ читал письма, did not read the letter
ничего не дѣлает, does nothing
я не видал сада, I did not see [have not seen]
the garden

NOTE. A double negation is usual. (See § 123.)

(c) in negative constructions, after an intransitive verb, in conjunction with adverbial expressions of time or place :

нѣ спит ночей, does not sleep (whole) nights
нѣ прошѣл версты, did not cover a verst (by
walking)

5. In constructions expressing time and dates :

трѣтѣго дня,	the day before yesterday
двадцатого мая,	on the 20th of May
сегодня [сего дня],	to-day
седьмого января тысяча	on the 7th of January
девятсот пятнадцатого	1915
года [1915-го],	
первого мая,	on the 1st May
той-же ночи,	on that night
вчерашняго дня,	yesterday

6. Generally the genitive is used in constructions after verbs which denote striving for, aiming at, or wishing for something ; also in the sense of being deprived of something. The following verbs belong to this class :

желать, to wish for	ждать, to await
просить, to ask for	искать, to seek
хотеть, to want, to wish	требовать, to demand
лишиться, to be deprived of,	бояться, to fear
to lose	опасаться, to be ap-
стыдиться, to be ashamed	prehensive
of	избегать, to avoid

7. Genitive is also used after cardinal and collective numbers :

- (a) Genitive singular : after два [две], три, четыре, оба, много (in the meaning of 'much'), мало (in the meaning of 'little').
- (b) Genitive plural : after пять, шесть, семь, восемь, девять, десять, двадцать, etc. много (in the meaning of 'many'), мало (in the meaning of 'few'), несколько, a few.

Also after collective numerals : двое, трое, четверо, etc. (See § 55b.)

NOTE. The numerals of this sub-section require the genitive plural of the qualified noun if they

stand in the nominative or accusative. If they stand in any of the other cases the qualified noun stands in the same case as the numeral :

два сту́ла,	two chairs
две ча́шки,	two cups
три кнѝги,	three books
четы́ре столá,	four tables
оба бра́та,	both brothers
мáло ча́я, ¹	little tea
мáло воды, ¹	little water
пять столóв,	five tables
шесть сту́льев,	six chairs
мнóго книг, ¹	many books
не́сколько столóв, ¹	a few tables
доста́точно, ¹	sufficient
недоста́точно, ¹	insufficient
пять челове́к,	five people
мнóго люде́й, ¹	many people
but : двух столóв	четырёх столóв
трёх книг	обо́их братьев etc.

(See §§ 20 (9), 54b, 120.)

8. After prepositions governing the genitive. (See § 96.)

§ 138. Dative is used :

1. In impersonal constructions the logical subject (inverted as grammatical object) is usually in the dative case :

что нам де́лать,	what are we to do
мне ка́жется,	it seems to me [I think]
ему́ хо́чется,	he would like to
мне мо́жно,	it is permissible to me
ему́ нельз́я,	he must not [to him it is not per- missible]
мне на́до [ну́жно],	I have to
нам пора́ е́хать,	it is time for us to go [to start]
мне не́когда,	I have no time

¹ Adverbs and adverbial pronouns, denoting indefinite quantity.

мне нѣкуда ѣхать,	I have nowhere to go
ему полезно,	it is useful to him
нам вредно,	it is harmful to us

2. Generally in the dative stands the person or object in whose direction the action is meant to take place :

я ему подарил,	I gave him as a present
он мне говорил }	he spoke to me
[сказал] }	he told me
мы им служим,	we serve them
они нам помогают,	they help [assist] us
я хотел ему помочь,	I wished to help him
я дал ему,	I gave him
он писал мне,	he wrote me [to me]
я им сделал предложение,	I made them an offer
он мне друг,	he is a friend to me.

3. Dative is also used with the short (predicative) adjectives : мил, дорог, приятен, рад, нужен, полезен, etc. :

я вам всегда рад,	I am always glad to see you
мы вам рады,	we are glad to see you
она нам дорогá [милá],	she is dear to us
мне приятно слышать,	I am glad to hear
они нам дороги,	they are dear to us
вы мне нужны,	I need you
он мне был полезен,	he was useful to me
это нам будет полезно,	this will be useful to us
вам известно,	it is known to you

4. After prepositions governing the dative case. (See § 96a.)

§ 139. Accusative is used :

(1) When the declinable word serves as a direct object to a transitive verb :

Я купил корову.	I bought a cow.
Я продал дом.	I sold the house.

(2) When a declinable word stands as an adverbial expression of time or place, etc., and answers to the questions: как долго? how long?; как далёко? how far?; сколько? how much?; etc.

Мы спали весь день.	We slept all day.
Мы прошли пять верст.	We covered [went] five versts.
Он сидел целый час.	He sat a whole hour.

NOTE. If the verb in the sentences of the above subdivisions (1 and 2) expresses negation, the accusative is supplanted by the genitive. (See § 137.)

(3) After prepositions governing the accusative case. (See § 96b.)

§ 140. The instrumental case is an 'adverb case,' and is mostly used in adverbial expressions of manner. (See § 16.)

1. It denotes the instrument, or means, by which, or through which (or the person by whom), an action is performed :

Я работаю руками.	I work with (my) hands.
Я пишу пером.	I write with a pen.
Я режу ножом.	I cut with a knife.
Я плачу деньгами.	I pay with money [in cash].
Я пользуюсь случаем.	I make use of the occasion.
Я воспользовался его советом.	I made use of his advice.

2. It denotes the person (or thing) who (or which) is the logical subject of the sentence (inverted indirect object) in a passive construction :

Письмо́ было написа́но бра́том, The letter was written by (my) brother (instead of брат написа́л письмо́).

Э́то было сде́лано мно́ю, This was done by me (instead of я э́то сде́лал).

3. Nouns stand in the instrumental after the verbs :
 владѣть, управлять, пользоваться [*вос-], заниматьсѣ
 [*занятьсѣ], гордиться [*воз-], to be proud of; командовать, to command, etc. (as an indirect object) :

Я управляю дѣлом.	I manage the business.
Он владѣетъ фабрикой.	He owns the factory.
Я пользуюсь случаемъ.	I make use of the opportunity.
Я занимаюсь музыкой по вечерамъ.	I am engaged with music in the evenings.

4. In the instrumental case stand nouns used in the sense of an attribute or state, in a qualified predicate in conjunction with the verbs быть, стать, сделаться, казаться (particularly if the qualifying state is not permanent) :

Он былъ нашимъ учителемъ.	
He was our teacher (during a particular period).	
Онъ сталъ [его сделали] членомъ управленія.	
He became [was made] a member of the administration.	
Онъ казался умнымъ человекомъ.	
He seemed [appeared] to be a clever [sensible] man.	

5. The instrumental case is used in adverbial expressions of quality, relation, manner ; also of time and place :

слабъ здоровьемъ,	weak in health
слабъ глазами,	weak in his eyes
хорошъ } собою,	good looking
хороша }	
высокъ, -а (ростомъ),	tall
ѣхать шагомъ,	to travel at a slow pace (go, drive)
летать (летѣть) стрелой,	to fly as quick as an arrow
ѣхать лѣсомъ,	to drive by way of [through] the forest

ИТТИ́ бѣрегомъ,	to go along [by way of] the bank of the river
ВЫТЬ ВОЛКОМъ,	to howl as a wolf
ПЕТЬ СОЛОВЬѢМъ,	to sing as [in the manner of] a nightingale
УТРОМъ,	in the morning
ВѢЧЕРОМъ,	in the evening
ДНѢМъ,	in the day-time
НОЧЬЮ,	in the night

6. It is used after prepositions governing the instrumental case. (See § 96c.)

§ 141. 1. The locative (prepositional) case expresses place, and can be regarded as an 'adverb case' (see § 16). It answers to the question *где?* (where?), and is mostly used in adverbial expressions of place :

МЫ живѣмъ въ гóродѣ.	We live in town.
МЫ жили въ деревнѣ.	We lived in the country [in a village].
Звѣри живѹтъ въ лесѹ.	Beasts live in the forest.
Я былъ въ теáтрѣ.	I was at [in] the theatre.

2. It is used after prepositions governing the locative case. (See § 96d.)

§ 142. *Punctuation.*

The rules of punctuation in Russian are generally the same as in English, with the exception of those governing the comma. The place of the comma in the Russian sentence is determined by concrete rules, and is not subject to considerations of 'logic,' or used for the sake of a more convenient flow of words.

The beginner's task will be to acquire an elementary knowledge of the position of (1) the comma, (2) the semi-colon, and (3) the full-stop.

(1) A comma is used:

- (a) before and after an apposition (see § 110) ;
- (b) before and after parenthetical words and phrases (see § 124) ;
- (c) to separate similar words following one another in the same sentence ;
- (d) to separate the adverbs да, нет, from the sentence that follows them, when they imply special emphasis ;
- (e) to separate words of address and words of interjection from the rest of the sentence ;
- (f) to separate the words : кроме (besides), вместо (instead), сверх (besides, above), when, together with other words attached to them, they form a contrast to the part of the sentence which they serve ;
- (g) to separate adverbial expressions which elucidate other adverbial expressions in the sentence ;
- (h) to separate parts of a sentence which are themselves qualified by other words ;
- (i) to separate independent clauses in a complex sentence (see §§ 124-129e) ;
- (j) to separate a subordinate clause, or clauses, from the principal clause.

(2) A semicolon is used:

- (a) to separate independent sentences in a complex sentence, when these have been considerably expanded ;
- (b) to separate words and phrases within the same sentence when these have been considerably expanded by qualifying words.

(3) A full-stop is used: to separate sentences which have a completed, independent meaning.

§ 143. *Patronymics.*

Russians address each other by their Christian name alone, if they are related to each other, or if they are intimately acquainted. Acquaintances are usually addressed by their Christian name followed by the Christian name of their father, which has an adjectival termination. (See § 37.)

The father's name is called *отчество*, patronymic :

Ив́ан Петро́вич ¹	— Ivan, son of Peter
Пётр Ива́нович	— Peter, son of Ivan
Па́вел Андре́евич	— Paul, son of Andrew
А́нна Петро́вна	— Anne, daughter of Peter
А́нна Андре́евна	— Anne, daughter of Andrew
А́нна Ива́новна	— Anne, daughter of Ivan

When introducing a person, the introducer usually says :

Семе́нов, Ива́н Петро́вич
Семе́нова, А́нна Петро́вна

NOTE. The feminine surname will end in *ова, ева, ына, ина, ая*, *ская* if the same masculine surname ends in *ов, ев, ын, ин, ой, ский*.

If a person introduces himself by his surname alone, he is often politely asked :

Как ва́ше и́мя и о́тчество ?
or : Как вас зову́т по и́мени и о́тчеству ?
What is your name and patronymic ?
How are you called by name and patronymic ?

NOTE. Russians have only one Christian name.

The suffixes for patronymics are :

ович, евич for masculine (often shortened into **ыч ич**) ;
овна, евна for feminine.

¹ Both name and patronymic are declined as nouns.

Christian names ending in **а, я** form their patronymic with the suffixes **ич** for masculine :

Кузьма́	—	Кузьми́ч
Фома́	—	Фоми́ч
Илья́	—	Ильи́ч
Са́вва	—	Са́ввич
Ники́та	—	Ники́тич

ична for feminine :

	Кузьма́	—	Кузьми́нича
	Фома́	—	Фоми́нича
	Илья́	—	Ильи́нича
or ична [и́нна]	Са́вва	—	Са́ввична
	Ники́та	—	Ники́тична

LESSON I

Vocabulary

кто, who
что, what

этот (*masc.*) }
эта (*fem.*) } this
это (*neut.*) }

эти, these (all genders)

я, I
ты, thou
он, he
она, she
оно, it
мы, we
вы, you
они, they

мой (*masc.*) }
моя (*fem.*) } my, mine
моё (*neut.*) }
мои (*pl.*) }

твой (*masc.*) }
твоя (*fem.*) } thy, thine
твое (*neut.*) }
твои (*pl.*) }

наш (*masc.*) }
наша (*fem.*) } our, ours
наше (*neut.*) }
наши (*pl.*) }

ваш (*masc.*) }
ваша (*fem.*) } your,
ваше (*neut.*) } yours
ваши (*pl.*) }

тот (*masc.*) }
та (*fem.*) } that
то (*neut.*) }

те, those (all genders)

где? where?

тут } here
здесь }

там, there

его, his (for all genders and numbers)

её, her, hers (for all genders and numbers)

их, their, theirs (for all genders and numbers)

чей? (*masc.*) }
чья? (*fem.*) } whose?
чье? (*neut.*) }
чьи? (*pl.*) }

(For pronouns, their functions and declensions, see §§ 47-53.)

дом, house
сад, garden, orchard
дома, at home (*adv.*)
в саду, in the garden (*loc. case*)
улица, street
на улице, in the street
двор, yard
на дворе, in the yard, outside
отец, father
мать, mother
брат, brother
двоюродный брат, cousin

сестра, sister
двоюродная сестра, cousin (*fem.*)
друг, friend
дочь, daughter
сын, son
дед } grandfather
дедушка }
бабушка, grandmother
внук, grandson
внуки, grandchildren
внучка, granddaughter
дядя, uncle

тѣтя, aunt
 мальчик, boy
 девочка, girl
 дитя, ребенок, child
 дѣти, children
 комната, room
 в комнатѣ, in the room
 бумага, paper
 книга, book
 перо, pen, nib
 карандаш, pencil
 ли, whether, if
 вот, here, there
 вон, there
 хлеб, bread

масло, butter, oil
 сыр, cheese
 мясо, meat
 соль, salt
 стол, table
 на столѣ, on the table
 человек, man, human being
 люди, people
 сосѣд (*masc.*) } neighbour
 сосѣдка (*fem.*) }
 сосѣди, neighbours
 быть, to be
 не, not
 нет, no
 или, or

(See Section I, on nouns, their genders and declensions, §§ 15-33.)

Notes

1. There is no definite or indefinite article in Russian.
2. The present tense of the verb **быть**,¹ 'to be,' is usually omitted when it has the function of a copula in the meaning of: I am, he is, it is, they are, etc. (See § 134.)
3. **Нет**, in the meaning of 'no' (no, it is not), is followed by a comma.
4. **Это** is ordinarily the demonstrative pronoun for neuter nouns: **это перо**, 'this pen,' etc., but when it is used in the meaning of 'this is,' etc., it can be used for nouns of all genders in both singular and plural :
это мой брат, this is [it is] my brother
это моя сестра, this is [it is] my sister
это мои книги, these are [it is] my books
5. Russian possessive pronouns make no distinction between conjoint and absolute forms :

мой means both my and mine
еѣ " " her " hers
наш " " our " ours
ваш " " your " yours

¹ The only persons of **быть** used in the present tense are: **есть**, is; **суть**, are. (See Appendix IV, p. 313.)

6. The particle **ли**, 'whether,' 'if,' is not often used in direct interrogative sentences in colloquial speech: **дома-ли он?** 'is he at home?' is better expressed by **дома он?** or **он дома?** with the sentence-stress on **дома**. In indirect interrogative sentences **ли** appears more often. (See § 132.)

Exercises

Что это?	What is this?
Это моя книга.	It is my book.
Кто там?	Who is there?
Мой брат там.	My brother is there.
Чей это дом?	Whose house is this?
Это мой дом.	It is my house.
But: Чей этот дом?	Whose is this house?
Этот дом наш.	This house is ours.
Чья эта книга?	Whose is this book?
Чьи эти книги?	Whose books are these?
Это мои книги.	These are my books.
Я тут.	I am here.
Он там.	He is there.
Она здесь.	She is here.
Они не здесь.	They are not here.
Они там.	They are there.
Это его сад?	Is this his garden?
Нет, это мой сад.	No, it is my garden.
Это ваш дом?	Is this your house?
Нет, это его дом.	No, it is his house.
Где ваша сестра?	Where is your sister?
Моя сестра в саду.	My sister is in the garden.
Где его брат?	Where is his brother?
Он на дворе.	He is in the yard (outside).
Домашен он?	Is he at home?
Нет, он на дворе.	No, he is in the yard (outside).
Нет, он не дома	No, he is not at home. (See Lesson II.)
Нет, его нет дома	

Её мать дома.	Her mother is at home.
Его отец здесь.	His father is here.
Мой дядя и моя тётя в саду.	My uncle and my aunt are in the garden.
Где ваша книга?	Where is your book?
Она тут на столе.	It is here on the table.
Вот наш дом.	Here is our house.
Вон [там] наш сад.	There is our garden.
Тот сад наш.	That garden is ours.
Те книги наши.	Those books are ours.
Это молоко наше.	This milk is ours.
Это наше молоко.	This is our milk.
Это его сыр.	This is his cheese.
Этот сыр его.	This cheese is his.
Это наш хлеб.	This is our bread.
То масло наше.	That butter is ours.
Где его карандаш?	Where is his pencil?
Его карандаш на столе.	His pencil is on the table.
Моя книга и моё перо на столе.	My book and my pen are on the table.
Дедушка и бабушка в саду.	Grandfather and grandmother are in the garden.
Она их внучка.	She is their granddaughter.
Я и моя сестра их внуки.	I and my sister are their grandchildren.
Наша мать их дочь.	Our mother is their daughter.
На столе хлеб, мясо, сыр и масло.	On the table there are bread, meat, cheese, and butter.
Где бумага и перо?	Where is the paper and the pen?
Бумага и перо на столе.	The paper and the pen are on the table.
Кто тот человек?	Who is that man?
Кто те люди?	Who are those people?
Это наш сосед [наша соседка].	This is our neighbour.
Это наши соседи.	These are our neighbours.

LESSON II

Note on the function of the auxiliary verb БЫТЬ (to be) in the sentence.

As already stated in note 2 to Lesson I, the present tense of БЫТЬ is not often used in colloquial speech: it is usually omitted. In the written language the third person singular and, less often, plural: *есть, суť*, are used occasionally when special emphasis is needed. (See §§ 119, 134.)

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
он дома he is at home	он был дома he was at home	он будет дома he will be at home
она здесь [там] she is here [there]	она была здесь [там] she was here [there]	она будет здесь [там] she will be here [there]

The colloquial negative form of the present tense of БЫТЬ is *нет* (=не *есть*, не *суť*). This negative form *нет* causes the grammatical subject to change from the nominative case to the genitive case, in conformity with the tendency of a negative predicate to require its object to stand in the genitive case (see § 108*a*). Thus the grammatical subject becomes a grammatical object (although it still remains the *logical* subject). The particle *не* in the past and future tenses has the same effect. Furthermore, all the tenses of the verb БЫТЬ with *нет* and *не* can assume a neuter and impersonal character:

его нет дома he is not at home	его не было дома he was not at home	его не будет дома he will not be at home
их нет здесь they are not here	их не было здесь they were not here	их не будет здесь they will not be here
ее нет там she is not there	ее не было там she was not there	ее не будет там she will not be there

(See § 122 on the meaning and purpose of an impersonal sentence.)

For purposes of simple negation, if the sentence is not turned into an impersonal one, the negative particle *не*

precedes all the persons of present (where the verb itself is dropped), past, and future tenses :

он не дома

он не был дома

он не будет дома

The past of *быть* has the function of the verb-part of a compound predicate (see § 104) :

Он был мой друг. He was my friend.

The future of *быть* can also have the same function. Its main function, however, is as an auxiliary verb for the formation of the future tense of the principal (imperfective) verb. (See § 57.)

*Conjugation of the Past and Future Tenses of *быть**

<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
я был, -а	я буду
ты был, -а	ты будешь
он был	он
она была	она } будет
оно было	оно }
мы	мы будем
вы } были	вы будете
они	они будут

NOTE. я буду means : (1) I shall ; or (2) I shall be :

- (1) Я буду читать. I shall read [be reading].
 (2) Я буду дома. I shall be at home.

Vocabulary

слушать [*по-], to listen
 слушать музыку, to listen to music
 читать [*по-], to read
 гулять [*по-], to stroll, to go for a walk
 кушать [*по-], to eat
 знать [*у-], to know

завтракать [*по-], to have breakfast
 [пóлдни́чать]¹ [*по-], to have lunch
 обе́дать [*по-], to have dinner
 у́жинать [*по-], to have supper
 пить чай [*вы-], to have [drink] tea

¹ Not often used.

играть [*по-], to play
играть в карты, to play cards
играть на скрипке, to play the violin
работать [*по-], to work

спать [*по-], to sleep { сплю
спишь
спят

писать [*на-], to write { пишу
пишешь
пишут

итти спать
[*пойти спать] { to go to bed,
ложиться [*лечь] { to go to sleep
спать { (see § 73)

утро, morning
утром, in the morning (adv.)
день, day
днём, in the day-time (adv.)
вечер, evening
вечером, in the evening (adv.)
ночь, night
ночью, in the night, at night
(adv.)

рано, early
поздно, late
раньше, earlier } (adv.)
позже, позднее, later (adv.)
завтрак, breakfast
до завтрака, till [until] breakfast
перед завтраком, before breakfast
после завтрака, after breakfast
обед, dinner
до обеда, till [until] dinner
перед обедом, before dinner
после обеда, after dinner
чай, tea [tea-time]
до чая, till [until] tea-time
перед чаем, before tea
после чая, after tea
ужин, supper
до ужина, till [until] supper
перед ужином, before supper
после ужина, after supper
к завтраку { for breakfast
to breakfast

за завтраком (adv.), at breakfast
к обеду { for dinner
to dinner
за обедом (adv.), at dinner
к чаю { for tea
to tea
за чаем (adv.), at tea
к ужину { for supper
to supper
за ужином (adv.), at supper
в холодный день, on a cold
day
в туманное утро, on a misty morn-
ing
в ненастный вечер, on a rainy
evening
в тёмную ночь, on a dark night
в тот-же день, on the very day
в ту ночь, on that night
в этот вечер, on this evening
в то утро, on that morning
сегодня, to-day
сегодня вечером, this evening
завтра, to-morrow
раз, once
ещё раз, once again
когда?, when?
тогда, then
теперь, now
всегда, always
иногда, sometimes
уже, already
ещё, yet, still
ещё не, not yet
скоро, soon
довольно поздно, pretty late
долго, long, a long time
очень рано, very early
очень поздно, very late
никогда [не], never
нигде [не], nowhere
никто [не], no one
ничего [не], nothing
никуда [не], not anywhere
что, that (conj.)

(adv.)

(adv.)

which completes the negation. It stands before the verb under negation :

Он ничего не делает. He does nothing.
Я никогда не ужинаю. I never have supper.
Я нигде не видел. I saw nowhere. etc.

(See § 135, sub-division 6.)

6. The particle не takes the accent before был, было, были, but not before была. It also takes the accent in negative constructions where не implies the predicate :

Мне некогда. I have no time.
Нигде спать. There is nowhere to sleep.

(See § 135, sub-division 7.)

7. The personal pronouns он, она, when they refer to an inanimate noun, have the meaning of 'it,' both in the nominative and in the oblique cases :

Где стекло? Where is the glass?
Я его не видел. I have not seen 'it' (not 'him').
Где бумага? Where is the paper?
Я не могу найти её. I cannot find 'it' (not 'her').

8. In Russian there is no construction corresponding to the English 'do,' 'does,' 'did,' etc., for negative and interrogative sentences : 'I do not write,' is rendered я не пишу (I not write); 'do you write?' is rendered вы пишете? (you write?), etc.

Exercises

Когда вы будете дома? When will you be at home?
Я буду дома вечером. I shall be at home (in) the evening.

Утром мы завтракаем; In the morning we have breakfast;
днём мы обедаем [пол- fast; in the day-time we
дничаем] и пьём чай; dine [have lunch] and have
вечером мы ужинаем; [drink] tea; in the evening
поздно ночью мы идём we have supper; late at
спать [мы ложимся night we go to bed [to
спать]. sleep].

За завтраком [к завтраку]
мы кушаем [едим] хлеб
с маслом, яйца [яйцо],
копченую грудинку [коп-
ченые ребрышки], вет-
чину, жареную рыбу, и
пьем чай или кофе с моло-
ком. Мы иногда кушаем
[едим] хлеб с вареньем.

За обедом и за ужином [к
обеду и к ужину] мы
прежде всего кушаем
суп, затем едим рыбу,
щи, борщ или селянку,
жаркое, котлеты, кашу.
Потом мы кушаем пи-
рожки [пирожное] и
фрукты: яблоки, груши,
сливы, вишни.

После обеда и после ужина
мы всегда пьем кофе.

За чаем [к чаю] мы всегда
кушаем хлеб с маслом и
вареньем [и с вареньем]
и разное печенье.

После чая мы идем гулять.
Перед обедом мы работаем.
Мы читаем и пишем.

Я никогда не работаю
после обеда.

Перед ужином я иногда
слушаю музыку, или иг-
раю в карты.

Я знаю, что он теперь
делает.

Я буду читать после,
теперь я иду пить чай.

At breakfast [for breakfast]
we eat bread and [with]
butter, eggs [an egg],
bacon, ham, fried fish,
and we drink tea or coffee
with milk. We sometimes
eat bread and [with] jam.

At dinner [for dinner] we
first of all eat soup, then
we eat fish, cabbage soup,
borsch or stew, roast, cut-
lets, gruel [black gruel].
Afterwards we eat pies
[pastry] and fruit: apples,
pears, plums, cherries.

After dinner and after supper
we always drink coffee.

At tea [for tea] we always
eat bread and butter and
preserves, and various
pastries.

After tea we go for a walk.

Before dinner we work.

We read and write.

I never work after dinner.

Before supper I sometimes
listen to music, or play
cards.

I know what he is doing
now.

I shall read afterwards, now I
am going to have [drink] tea.

- Мы скоро пойдём обедать. We shall soon go to have dinner.
- Сегодня вечером я буду дома. This evening I shall be in.
- Сегодня я буду дома весь [целый] день [всё утро, весь вечер, всю ночь]. To-day I shall be at home [in] all day [the whole morning, the whole evening, the whole night].
- Завтра вечером я буду играть в карты [в шахматы], [в шашки]. To-morrow evening I shall play cards [chess], [draughts].
- После ужина я пойду домой. After supper I shall go home.
- Когда вы будете обедать? When will you have dinner?
- Когда вы ужинаете? When do you have supper?
- Я никогда не ужинаю. I never have supper.
- Он никогда не обедает дома: он обедает у брата. He never dines at home: he dines at his brother's.
- Мы завтракаем очень рано, но ужинаем очень поздно. We have breakfast very early, but have supper very late.
- Мы читаем до завтрака, работаем до обеда, и играем в теннис до чая. We read till breakfast, work until dinner, and play tennis till tea.
- Иногда он играет на скрипке или на рояле; мы всегда слушаем его игру [как он играет]. Sometimes he plays the violin or the piano; we always listen to his playing.
- Он довольно хорошо понимает музыку. He understands music pretty well.
- Когда вы идёте спать? When do you go to bed?
- Мы всегда идём спать очень поздно, но встаём (see § 64, group 4) очень рано. We always go to bed very late, but (we) get up very early.
- Теперь ещё довольно рано. It is still pretty early now.
- Нет, уже поздно. No, it is already late.

- Ещё не очень поздно. It is not very late yet.
 Он вчера был здесь. He was here yesterday.
 Его вчера не было здесь } He was not here yesterday.
 Он не был здесь вчера }
 Он будет здесь поздно вечером. He will be here late in the evening.
 Мы будем там рано утром. We shall be there early in the morning.
 Я буду здесь до обеда. I shall be here till dinner.
 Они завтра не будут здесь } They will not be here to-morrow.
 Их завтра не будет здесь }
 Я приду после чая. I will come after tea.
 Он придёт перед ужином. He will come before supper.
 До ужина ещё долго. It is a long time yet till supper.
 Он уже был здесь. He was here already.
 Он ещё не был здесь } He was not yet here.
 Его ещё не было здесь }
 Она была дома. She was at home [in].
 Её не было дома. She was not in.
 Её не будет дома до вечера. She will not be in till the evening.
 Я читал и писал всю ночь. I was reading and writing the whole night.
 Мы уже были здесь раньше. We were here before.
 Он всегда спит до чая. He always sleeps [has a nap] till tea-time.
 Он придёт потом [после чая]. He will come afterwards [after tea].
 Я её видел только раз. I saw her only once.
 Они не спали до утра. They did not sleep till morning.
 Мы работаем весь [целый] день. We work all day.

LESSON III

Vocabulary

чёрный }
 белый } -ая, -ое, -ые { black
 красный } { white
 } { red
 синий, -ая, -ее, -ие, blue
 большой, -ая, -ое, -ие, large, big
 малый, -ая, -ое, -ые }
 маленький, -ая, -ое, -ие } small
 новый }
 старый } -ая, -ое, -ые { new
 } { old
 слабый, -ая, -ое, -ые, weak

сильный, -ая, -ое, -ые } strong
 крепкий, -ая, -ое, -ие }
 глупый }
 умный } -ая, -ое, -ые { foolish, silly
 } { wise, clever
 что за? what kind? what a . . .
 какой? }
 такой } -ая, -ое, -ие { what kind?
 } { such a one
 какой¹ }
 такой¹ } -а, -о, -и { of what kind (is)
 } { of such a kind (is)

For the short (predicative) form of these adjectives and for their comparative form, see § 45.

слабое здоровье, delicate health
 слаб, -а, -о, -ы, здоровьем, delicate
 (in health) (*adv.*)

покупать }
 *купить } to buy (see § 66)

давать }
 *дать } to give

продавать }
 *продать } to sell (see § 64, group 2)

болеть, to be ailing, to }
 ache }
 *заболеть, to be taken } (see p. 258)
 ill }

жить [*по-], живу, живёшь, живут,
 to live

варить [*с-], варю, варишь, варят,
 to cook, to boil

иметь, to have

бывать, to happen; to be (*iter.*);
 to frequent

видеть [*у-], вижу, видишь, видят,
 to see

ехать [*по-]
 ездить [*с-] } to travel (see § 63)

когда-то, once (before)

часто, often

редко, seldom

чаще, more often

реже, less often

ещё раз, once more

ни разу, not once

два }
 три } раза { twice
 четыре } { thrice
 } { four times

много раз, many times

несколько раз, a few times

совсем, entirely

не совсем, not quite, not entirely

довольно, fairly, moderately,

pretty

гораздо, much (used with a com-
 parative adjective)

кажется, it seems, I think, I believe

сейчас, this minute

через час, in an hour

сию минуту, this moment

через минуту, in a minute

скоро, soon, quickly

¹ These correspond to the short adjectives and imply a predicate.

чем, than (*conj.*)
 недавно, not long ago
 давно, long ago; a long time
 сюда, here (motion) [hither]
 туда, there (motion) [thither]
 завтра утром, to-morrow morning
 завтра вечером, to-morrow evening
 вчера вечером, last night
 сегодня вечером, to-night
 день, day
 каждый день, every day
 раз в день, once a day
 год, a year. *Pl.*: летá; годы (see
 note 7 to this lesson)
 каждый год, every year
 раз в год, once a year
 через год, in a year's time
 через два дня, in two days' time
 через час, in an hour's time
 месяц, a month
 через месяц, in a month's time
 каждый месяц, each month, every
 month
 раз в месяц, once a month
 неделя, a week
 через неделю, in a week's time
 каждую неделю, each week, every
 week
 раз в неделю, once a week
 в этом году, this year
 в прошлом году, last year
 в будущем году, next year
 осень, autumn
 осенью, in the autumn (*adv.*)
 зима, winter
 зимою, in the winter (*adv.*)
 прошлой зимой, last winter (*adv.*)
 весна, spring
 весной, in the spring (*adv.*)
 будущей весной, next spring (*adv.*)
 лето, summer
 летом, in the summer (*adv.*)
 этим летом, this summer
 к осени, towards autumn
 к зиме, towards winter

к весне, towards spring
 к лету, towards summer
 в конце года, at the end of the
 year
 к концу года, towards the end of
 the year
 в начале года, at the beginning of
 the year
 к началу года, towards the begin-
 ning of the year
 в начале месяца, at the beginning
 of the month
 к началу месяца, towards the be-
 ginning of the month
 в конце месяца, at the end of the
 month
 в конце недели, at the end of the
 week
 к концу месяца, towards the end of
 the month
 к концу недели, towards the end
 of the week
 тому назад, ago
 месяц тому назад, a month ago
 год тому назад, a year ago
 неделю тому назад, a week ago
 две недели тому назад, two weeks
 ago
 третьего дня, the day before yester-
 day.
 два } дня тому { two days ago
 три } назад { three days ago
 четыре } назад { four days ago
 час тому назад, an hour ago
 в этом месяце, this month
 в будущем месяце, next month
 в прошлом месяце, last month
 на будущей неделе, next week
 на прошлой неделе, last week
 на этой неделе, this week
 на другой день, next day
 русский, a Russian
 русская, a Russian woman
 англичанин, an Englishman
 англичанка, an Englishwoman

француз, a Frenchman
 французенка, a Frenchwoman
 американец, an American
 американка, an American woman
 китаец, a Chinaman
 китайка, a Chinese woman
 немец, a German
 немка, a German woman
 японец, a Japanese
 японка, a Japanese woman
 Советский Союз, Soviet Union
 Россия, Russia
 Англия, England
 Франция, France
 Китай, China
 Германия, Germany
 Япония, Japan
 в Советском Союзе, in U.S.S.R.
 в России, in Russia
 в Англии, in England
 в Китае, in China
 в Америке, in America
 в Германии, in Germany
 в Японии, in Japan (*loc.*)
 в Советский Союз, to U.S.S.R.
 в Англию, to England
 в Китай, to China
 во Францию, to France
 в Германию, to Germany
 в Японию, to Japan (*acc.*)
 комната, a room

квартира, a flat
 на квартире, at the flat
 у меня на квартире, at my flat
 у нас на квартире, at our flat
 у них на квартире, at their flat
 у вас на квартире, at your flat
 у него на квартире, at his flat
 у неё на квартире, at her flat
 столовая (*н.*), dining-room
 спальня, bedroom
 прихожая, entrance-hall
 детская, nursery
 ванная [комната], bathroom
 гостиная, sitting-room
 кухня, kitchen
 гостиница, hotel
 номер, room (at hotel)
 у меня в номере, in my room (at the hotel)
 у меня в спальне, in my bedroom
 у нас в [на] кухне, in our kitchen
 у них в столовой, in their dining-room
 город, town
 деревня, village
 у нас в городе } in our town
 в нашем городе }
 у нас в деревне } in our village
 в нашей деревне }
 состояние, estate, fortune; condition; state (of health, of weather)

Notes

1. The verb *бывать* is the iterative form of *быть*. In its iterative form it is only used in the past tense (see § 62). It can be used as an imperfective verb in the meaning :

(1) to frequent ; (2) to visit occasionally ; (3) to happen.

Я там бываю иногда.

I go there sometimes.

Он бываёт здесь [приходит сюда] очень часто.

He comes here very often.

Это бывает.

This happens [can happen].

Бывали такие случаи.

Such cases did happen.

(On the meaning and function of the neuter singular past, БЫВАЛО, see § 122 (f).)

2. The short (predicative) comparative degree of an adjective requires the indirect object (the object of comparison) to stand in the genitive :

(a) Мой брат богаче меня́. My brother is richer than I.

But the sentence can be paraphrased so as to conform to the English pattern :

(b) Мой брат богаче, чем я.

The first pattern is the most frequently used in colloquial speech.

(c) A popular variation of the first pattern is the use of the genitive of the possessive pronoun instead of the personal pronoun :

богаче моего́ instead of богаче меня́ ;
лучше твоего́ „ лучше тебя́ ;
etc.

3. The verb имѣть (to have) is for colloquial purposes replaced by the verb быть. The grammatical subject is then changed into an object (although it still remains the *logical* subject (see § 134a)).

Instead of я имѣл лошадь (I had a horse), the colloquial form used is, у меня́ была́ лошадь :

Он имѣл сад. — У него́ был сад.

Он не имѣл сада. — У него́ не было сада.

He had no garden.

Кто имѣет нож ? — У кого́ есть нож ?

Who has a knife ?

But : У кого́ нож ? would mean : Who has *the* knife ?

By analogy the following indirect expressions are used :

Instead of : на моемъ столѣ — у меня́ на столѣ

в моей комнатѣ — у меня́ в комнатѣ

в нашемъ саду — у нас в саду

4. Peculiarities in the Conjugation of a few verbs in frequent use.

жить [*по-], to live	хотѣть [*за-], to wish, to want
ѣхать [*по-], to travel	*лечь, to lie down
*дать, to give	*сесть, to sit down
есть [*по-], to eat	болѣть [*за-], to ache; to be ailing

The asterisk (*) denotes a verb of the perfective aspect, the present form of which has a future meaning. (See §§ 58, 59.)

Present (or future in Perfective verbs).

Singular

я живу́	ѣду	*дам	ем	хочу́	*лягу	*сяду
ты живёшь	ѣдешь	*дашь	ешь	хочешь	*ляжешь	*сядешь
он	живёт	ѣдет	*даст	ест	хочет	*ляжет
она́						
оно́						
					*ляжет	*сядет

Plural

мы живём	ѣдем	*дадим	едим	хотим	*ляжем	*сядем
вы живёте	ѣдете	*дадите	едите	хотите	*ляжете	*сядете
они́ живу́т	ѣдут	*дадут	едят	хотят	*лягут	*сядут

Past.

я	жил	ѣхал	дал	ел	хотѣл	лѣг	сел
ты							
он							
она́	жила́	ѣхала	дала́	ѣла	хотѣла	легла́	сѣла
оно́	жило	ѣхало	дало	ѣло	хотѣло	легло́	сѣло
мы	жи́ли	ѣхали	дали́	ѣли	хотѣли	легли́	сѣли
вы							
они́							

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> живи́	поезжай ¹	дай	ешь	захоти́ ¹	ляг	сядь
<i>Plur.</i> живи́те	поезжайте	дайте	ѣшьте	захотите́	лягте	сядьте

¹ No imperative in use for the imperfective aspect of these verbs.

Present.

болѣть [быть больным], to be ailing (*instr.* or *absolute*) :

я болѣю,	ты болѣешь,	он	} болѣет
		она́	
		онó	
мы болѣем,	вы болѣете,	они́ болѣют	
болѣть, to ache	он	} болѣит, они́ болят	
	она́		
	онó		

NOTE. болѣть (to ache) is only used in the third person singular and plural.

Past. болѣл, болѣла, болѣло, болѣли.

Imperative. болѣй, болѣйте.

У меня́ болят́ зу́бы.	My teeth are aching; I have toothache.
У меня́ голова́ бо́лит.	My head is aching.
У меня́ всегда́ но́ги бо́лят [бо́лят но́ги].	My legs are always aching.
Но́чью у меня́ голова́ болѣла [болѣла голова́].	In the night my head was aching.
Он всегда́ болѣет.	He is always ailing.
Он болѣл [был бо́лен] тифом.	He was ill with typhus.
Не болѣйте.	Don't be ailing.

5. Есть and ку́шать (see Lesson II) both mean 'to eat.' Ку́шать is supposed to be a politer form when referring to another person :

Вы ку́шали ; пожа́луйста, ку́шайте.

You were eating [ate] ; please, eat.

мы е́дим, бу́дем есть ; we eat, we shall eat.

There are, however, no clear lines of distinction between the two forms. Practice and reading Russian texts will help the student to decide which form is more suitable on a given occasion.

6. Nationality of a person is written with a small letter ; his country, with a capital letter :

ру́сский	—	Рос́сія
не́мец	—	Герма́ния
англича́нин	—	А́нглия etc.

7. Год (year) has a double plural: летá, го́ды. The colloquial form is летá :

пять лет томú наза́д,	five years ago
ему́ де́сять лет,	he is ten years old
в его́ летáх,	at his age
сре́дних лет,	of middle age

but : Он ста́рше меня́ тремя́ годáми (or на́ три го́да).
He is older than I by three years.

When years in general, or a particular period, are referred to, the plural го́ды is used :

в те го́ды,	in those years
в сороко́вых годáх,	in the forties
в ста́рые го́ды,	in old times
моло́дые го́ды,	youth

Exercises

У него́ но́вая шля́па.	He has a new hat.
Его́ шля́па но́ва.	His hat is new.
Моя́ шля́па но́вее, чем его́ шля́па.	My hat is newer than his.
У не́ё [есть] большо́й дом.	She has a large house.
Её́ дом вели́к.	Her house is large.
Мой дом бо́льше, чем её́ дом.	My house is larger than her house.
У него́ ста́рое пальто́.	He has an old overcoat.
Его́ пальто́ ста́ро.	His overcoat is old.
Моё́ пальто́ го́раздо ста́рее.	My overcoat is much older.
Его́ ру́ки бы́ли кра́сны.	His hands were red.
Мой ру́ки бы́ли кра́снее.	My hands were redder.

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| У него [есть] маленький брат | } | He has a little brother. |
| Он имѣет маленького брата | | |
| У нас есть глупые люди. | | We have stupid people. |
| Он глупѣе своего брата | } | He is more stupid than his brother. |
| Он глупѣе, чем его брат | | |
| Его дом совсѣм бѣлый. | | His house is entirely white. |
| Их дом белѣе. | | Their house is whiter. |
| [Мне] Кажется, его дом не совсѣм бѣлый. | | I believe [I think] his house is not entirely white. |
| Наш сад очень велик. | | Our garden is very large. |
| Их сад гораздо больше. | | Their garden is much larger. |
| Их дом очень [довольно] велик. | | Their house is very [pretty] large. |
| Какое [состояніе] его здорѣе [-я]? | | How is the state of his health? |
| Какое его состояніе? | | How is his state [estate]? |
| Онѣ не очень великѣ. | | It is not very great. |
| Зимѣю иногда бываѣтъ очень холодно. | | In the winter it sometimes happens to be very cold. |
| Мы бываем у них часто. | | We visit them [we go to them] frequently. |
| Онѣ бываѣют у нас рѣдко. | | They visit us seldom. |
| [Это] Всегда так бываѣтъ. | | It always happens so. |
| Когда-то, я бывал у них каждый день. | | Some time ago [at one time] I used to visit them every day. |
| Раньше онѣ бывали у нас часто. | | Before they used to come to us [visit us] often. |
| Он очень умный человек. | | He is a very clever [wise] man. |
| Онѣ весьма умные люди. | | They are very clever [wise] people. |
| Эти люди умны. | | These people are clever. |
| Эта дама умна. | | This lady is clever. |
| Я у них был два раза. | | I visited them [was at their house] twice. |

Я ни разу не был у них.	I have never [not once] visited them.
Я ещё ни разу не был у них.	I have not yet been to see them once.
Я пойду к ним опять }	I shall visit them [go to them] again [once more].
Я ещё раз пойду к ним }	
Я давно не был у него.	I have not been at his house for a long time [it is a long time since I have been at his house].
Я недавно был у них.	I was at their house not long ago.
Я приду сюда мину́ту [че́рез мину́ту], [сейча́с].	I will come this minute [in a minute], [immediately].
Он сейча́с бу́дет здесь.	He will be here presently.
Он ско́ро приде́т.	He will soon come.
Я нико́гда не зна́л.	I never knew.
Он ни́где не́ бы́л.	He was not anywhere.
Мы ни́кого не ви́дели там.	We saw nobody there.
Он не́давно прие́хал сю́да.	He arrived here not long ago.
Он бу́дет у нас зи́мою.	He will be at our house in the winter.
Я бу́ду у них ле́том.	I shall visit them [be at their house] in the summer.
К весне́ я по́еду в А́нглию.	Towards [by] spring I shall go to England.
К о́сени мы бу́дем до́ма [прие́дем домо́й].	Towards [by] autumn we shall be at home [will return home].
Зи́мою мы живём в го́роде ; ле́том он́и живу́т в де́рвне [на да́че].	In the winter we live in town; in the summer they live in the country [at the country-house].
Мы живём здесь в гости́нице.	We live here at an hotel.
У нас [Мы имее́м] о́чень хоро́ший но́мер.	We have a very good room (at the hotel).

У них [есть] хоро́шая, не-
 больша́я кварти́ра
 [Они́ имéют хоро́шую, не-
 большúю кварти́ру]

They have a good, small [not
 very large] flat.

Они́ имéют столóвую, две
 спáльни [спáльню], кúх-
 ню, небольшо́ую гости́ную,
 ванну́ю ко́мнату, дéт-
 скую и прихо́жую.

They have a dining-room,
 two bedrooms [bedroom],
 kitchen, small sitting-
 room [drawing-room],
 bathroom, nursery, and
 entrance-hall.

Вчера́ вéчером ваш брат
 был у нас.

Last night your brother was
 at our house.

Зáвтра у́тром мы бúдем у
 него́.

To-morrow morning we shall
 be at his house.

Я быва́ю у него́ иногда́
 [ка́ждый день].

I visit him sometimes [every
 day].

К концú го́да [в нача́ле
 ново́го го́да], [в бúдущем
 годú] мы поéдем в Росси́ю
 [в Советский Сою́з].

Towards the end of the year
 [at the beginning of the
 new year], [in the next
 year] we shall go to Russia
 [to U.S.S.R.].

Они́ были́ у нас ме́сяц тому́
 наза́д [две неде́ли тому́
 наза́д], [час тому́ наза́д],
 [неде́лю тому́ наза́д].

They were at our house a
 month ago [a fortnight
 ago], [an hour ago], [a
 week ago].

Я его́ ви́дел трéтьего дня.

I saw him the day before
 yesterday.

У нас в гости́нице живу́т
 ру́сские [трóе ру́сских],
 два англича́нина, два
 францу́за, и один не́мец.

At our hotel reside [live]
 Russians [three Russians],
 two Englishmen, two
 Frenchmen, and one Ger-
 man.

Они́ все бúдут у нас [по-
 сетя́т нас] на бúдущей
 неде́ле.

They will all visit us in the
 coming week.

Мы были́ у них на про-
 шлой неде́ле.

We were at their house
 [place] last week.

Онѣ́ будутъ у насъ чѣ́резъ два
дня [чѣ́резъ ме́сяцъ], [чѣ́резъ
годъ], [чѣ́резъ две неде́ли].

Я его́ уви́жу на э́той не-
де́ле [в э́ту неде́лю], [на
бу́дущей неде́ле].

Онъ бы́лъ здѣ́сь в про́шломъ
ме́сяцѣ, на той неде́ле.

Онъ прише́лъ на друго́й день
[на друго́й день онъ при-
ше́лъ].

They will be at our house in
two days' time [in a
month's time], [in a year],
[in a fortnight].

I will see him during this
week [this week], [during
next week].

He was here last month, last
week [in the past month,
in the past week].

He came the next day [the
next day he came].

(For the conjugation and aspect of the verbs of this
lesson not shown in the Vocabulary, see §§ 65-66.)

LESSON IV

Vocabulary

воскресе́нье, Sunday
понеде́льник, Monday

вто́рник, Tuesday

среда́, Wednesday

четве́рг, Thursday

пя́тница, Friday

суббо́та, Saturday

в воскресе́нье, on Sunday (*acc.*)

до воскресе́нья, till, until Sunday
(*gen.*)

к воскресе́нью, by, for Sunday (*dat.*)

по воскресе́нью, on Sundays (*dat.*
pl.)

в понеде́льник, on Monday

во вто́рник, on Tuesday

в сре́ду, on Wednesday

в четве́рг, on Thursday

в пя́тницу, on Friday

в суббо́ту, on Saturday

до понеде́льника, till, until
Monday

до вто́рника, till, until Tues-
day

до сре́ды, till, until Wednes-
day

до четве́ргá, till, until Thurs-
day

до пя́тницы, till, until Friday

до суббо́ты, till, until Satur-
day

к понеде́льнику, for, by
Monday

к [ко] вто́рнику, for, by
Tuesday

к сре́де, for, by Wednesday

к четве́ргý, for, by Thursday

к пя́тнице, for, by Friday

к суббо́те, for, by Saturday

(*gen.*)

(*dat.*)

(*acc.*)

по понедельникам, on Mondays
 по вторникам, on Tuesdays
 по средам, on Wednesdays
 по четвергам, on Thursdays
 по пятницам, on Fridays
 по субботам, on Saturdays
 январь,¹ January
 февраль, February
 март, March
 апрель, April
 май, May
 июнь, June
 июль, July
 август, August
 сентябрь, September
 октябрь, October
 ноябрь, November
 декабрь, December
 в январé [мѣсяцѣ], in January
 в февралé [„], in February
 в мартѣ [„], in March
 в апрѣлѣ [„], in April
 в маѣ [„], in May
 в июнѣ [„], in June
 в июлѣ [„], in July
 в августѣ [„], in August
 в сентябрѣ [„], in September
 в октябрѣ [„], in October
 в ноябрѣ [„], in November
 в декабрѣ [„], in December
 в течѣніе январѣ, during January
 etc.
 с воскресѣнья, from Sunday on
 с понедѣльника, from Monday on
 etc.
 с марта, from March on
 от марта до мая, from March till May
 от субботы до среды, from Saturday till Wednesday
 в течѣніе зимы, during winter
 в течѣніе лѣта, during summer
 в течѣніе весны, during spring
 в течѣніе осени, during autumn

(dat.
pl.)

в будущую зиму, [in the] next winter
 в будущее лѣто, [in the] next summer
 в будущую весну, [in the] next spring
 в будущую осень, [in the] next autumn
 в началѣ январѣ, at the beginning of January
 в концѣ январѣ, at the end of January
 к началу январѣ, towards the beginning of January
 к концу январѣ, towards the end of January
 в час, at one o'clock
 в два часа, at two o'clock
 к часу, by one o'clock
 к двум часам, by two o'clock
 в пять часов, at five o'clock
 в пятом часу, between four and five
 на днях, shortly; also: the other day, lately
 на этих днях, one of these days [soon]
 на досугѣ, at leisure
 в полдень, at midday
 в полночь, at midnight
 в какое время? at what time?
 в скором времени, soon
 в половинѣ перваго, at half-past twelve
 в половинѣ втораго, at half-past one
 в половинѣ третьяго, at half-past two etc.
 в какомъ часу? at what hour? [at what time?]
 который час? what is the time?
 который теперь час? what time is it now?
 сѣтки (pl.), day and night
 цѣлые сѣтки, a whole 24 hours

¹ Names of months ending in -ъ are of masculine gender.

магазин, store
 лавка, shop
 банк, bank
 ресторан, restaurant
 граница, boundary, frontier
 за-границу,¹ abroad (motion)
 за-границей,¹ abroad (rest)
 из за-границы,¹ from abroad
 вход, entrance
 касса, cash-desk, booking-office (at theatre, etc.)
 праздник, holiday
 праздники, holidays
 на праздниках, during the holidays
 святки, Christmas holidays
 на святках, during the Christmas holidays
 Святая неделя, Easter week
 на Святой [неделе], during Easter week
 Пасха, Easter
 Рождество, Christmas
 театр, theatre
 в театре, at the theatre
 в театр, to the theatre
 опера, opera
 в опере, at the opera
 в оперу, to the opera
 концерт, concert
 на концерте, at the concert
 на концерт, to the concert
 из театра, from the theatre
 из оперы, from the opera
 с концерта, from the concert
 кинематограф [кинó], cinema
 в кинематографе, at the cinema
 в кинематограф, to the cinema
 из кинематографа, from the cinema
 станция, railway station
 на станцию, to the station
 на станции, at the station
 со станции, from the station
 почта, post office
 на почту, at the post office

на почту, to the post office
 с почты, from the post office
 вокзал, railway station
 на вокзал, to the railway station
 на вокзале, at the railway station
 с вокзала, from the railway station
 поезд, train
 вагон, carriage
 поезд отходит, train leaves
 поезд прибывает, train arrives
 прибытие поезда, arrival of train
 отход поезда, departure of train
 уставать, to grow tired, weary
 *устать, to get tired (see § 64, group 4)
 вид, appearance
 очки, eye-glasses
 угол, corner; в углу, in the corner
 на углу, at the corner (of street)
 на конце улицы, at the end of the street
 дверь (*fem.*), door
 окно, window
 лестница, staircase, steps
 спускаться } по лестнице, to go
 *спуститься } down the stairs
 подниматься } по лестнице, to go
 *подняться } up the stairs
 наверху, at the top
 внизу, at the bottom
 навёрх, up } (motion)
 вниз, down }
 открыва-ть, }
 -ю, -ешь, -ют } to open, to
 *откр-ить, } uncover, to
 -бу, -бешь, -бют } disclose
 открытый, -ая, -ое, -ые, uncovered
 открыт, -а, -о, -ы, opened, open
 закрыва-ть, }
 -ю, -ешь, -ют } to close, to
 *закр-ить. } cover, to
 -бу, -бешь, -бют } shut
 закрытый, -ая, -ое, -ые } covered,
 закрыт, -а, -о, -ы } closed, shut

¹ Also : за границу, за границей, из-за границы.

занятой, -ая, -ое, -ие, busy, en- gaged (<i>adj.</i>)	больной, -ая, -ое, -ие } ill, ailing болен, больна, -о, -ы } (patient) (<i>instr.</i> or <i>absolute</i>)
занятый, -ая, -ое, -ие } occupied занят, -а, -о, -ы (<i>instr.</i>) } (<i>part.</i>) or <i>absolute</i>)	здоровый, -ая, -ое, -ие } healthy, здоров, -а, -о, -ы } strong

Notes

1. In Russian the days of the week and the names of the months are *not* written with a capital letter. Feasts are written with a capital letter.

2. The relation between words in a Russian sentence is shown more by inflexions than by word order (see § 133). The case-endings and other terminations are, therefore, of great importance. The student should familiarize himself with the uses of the various cases, as every case has a distinct function in the making of a Russian sentence. In the section of this book which treats of the Russian Syntax, the use of the various cases is dealt with in greater detail (see §§ 117-120, 137-141). A few hints as we go along may be useful. We will begin with the

Genitive case of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, numerals, and participles.

The genitive case shows that the word used in this case is an adjunct, or qualifying word, or part-object, to another word. It is used:

- (a) to express possession or certain other characteristics (see § 137, sub-section 1);
- (b) to denote a direct object used in a partitive sense (see § 137, sub-section 2);
- (c) to denote a direct object if the predicate is in the negative (see §§ 108a, 137, sub-section 4);
- (d) to express comparison (see § 137, sub-section 3);
- (e) in constructions which express days and dates (see § 137, sub-section 5);

- (f) after some cardinal numerals (see § 137, sub-section 7);
 (g) after the prepositions enumerated in § 96;
 (h) after verbs which have the meaning of striving for, aiming at, or wishing for, something (see § 137, sub-section 6);
 (i) in a few expressions of greeting or leave-taking:

до свидания,	good-bye
до скорого свидания,	to an early meeting
всего хорошего	} all the best
всего лучшего	
доброе утро,	good morning [but also : доброе утро, good morn- ing ; добрый вечер, good evening]
спокойной ночи,	good night [restful night]
счастливого пути,	happy journey

NOTE. In the expressions of this group the word желаю [-ем] (I [we] wish) is implied.

- (j) in a few adverbial expressions of time :

от поры до времени	} from time to time
от времени до времени	
с утра до вечера,	from morning till evening
с каких пор ?	since when ?
до каких пор ?	till when ?
с тех пор,	since then
с тех пор, как,	since
с моей стороны,	on my part, as for me
до тех пор, пока [не],	till, until
до того,	to such an extent
кроме того	} besides, over and above
сверх того	
из-за моря,	from beyond the sea
из-за границы,	from abroad
сначала,	at first (<i>adv.</i>)
сразу,	at once (<i>adv.</i>)

Exercises

Это сад моего дяди.	This is my uncle's garden [orchard].
Я дал ему́ чаю.	I gave him some tea (see § 20).
У меня́ нет ча́я.	I have no tea.
Я купил сукна́.	I bought some cloth.
Я купил сукно́ хоро́шего ка́чества.	I bought cloth of good quality.
Пожа́луйста, прине́сите вина́ [води́], [пи́ва].	Please fetch [bring] some wine [water], [beer].
Я не знал уро́ка.	I did not know my lesson.
У нас нет сто́ла.	We have no table.
Вчера́ не́ было дождя́.	Yesterday it did not rain [there was no rain].
У меня́ нет рабо́ты.	I have no work.
У меня́ не́ было рабо́ты.	I had no work.
Нужно купи́ть са́хару.	It is necessary to buy some sugar (see § 20).
Кака́я тепе́рь це́на са́хара ?	What is the price of sugar now ?
Сего́дня не бу́дет обе́да.	To-day there will be no dinner.
Вчера́ не́ было у́жина.	Yesterday there was no supper.
За́втра не бу́дет за́втрака.	To-morrow there will be no breakfast.
Тако́й бе́ды мы не ожида́ли.	We did not expect such a misfortune.
Я жду пи́сьма от моего́ бра́та.	I expect a letter from my brother.
Мы жда́ли его́ прие́зда.	We were waiting for his arrival.
Я бою́сь тако́го исхо́да.	I am afraid of such a sequel.

- Я желаю вам успеха.
 Я сегодня утром был у
 вашего отца.
 Мы покупаем книги у кни-
 гопродавца.
 До обеда я работаю ; после
 обеда я отдыхаю.
 Уберите тарелки со стола.
 Я приехал из деревни.
 Без очков я не могу читать
 Я ничего не получаю от
 брата.
 Я не получаю никакой
 помощи от него.
 Мы приехали со станции.
 [с вокзала], [с концерта],
 [с собрания].
 Стул стоит у стола ; стол
 стоит у окна.
 Я сижу у стола.
 [Время от времени] От
 времени до времени мы
 получаем письма из Рос-
 сии.
 С каких пор вы знаете
 [знали] это ?
 С тех пор, как я вернулся
 из Лондона.
 До каких пор вы будете
 здесь ?
- I wish you success.
 This morning I was at your
 father's house.
 We buy books at a book-
 seller's.
 I work till dinner ; after
 dinner I rest.
 Clear away the plates from
 the table.
 I came [arrived] from the
 country.
 Without glasses I cannot
 read.
 I receive nothing from my
 brother.
 I receive no help whatever
 from him.
 We arrived [came] from the
 railway station [from the
 concert], [from the meet-
 ing].
 The chair stands near the
 table ; the table stands
 near the window.
 I am sitting at the table.
 [Occasionally] From time
 to time we receive letters
 from Russia.
 Since when have you known
 this ?
 Since I came back from
 London.
 Till when [how long] will you
 be here ?

До тех пор, пока я не
кончу свою работу.

Я только вчера приехал
из за-границы.

Я не увижу его до поне-
дельник, я буду занят.

Комната была занята его
братом.

Мы скоро поедem на стан-
цию [на вокзал].

Поезд прибывает в пять
часов вечера.

Он приедет со своим млад-
шим братом в среду ве-
чером.

Девятнадцатого июня мы
поедем в Англию. Се-
годня двадцатое мая.

Они ездят на станцию
каждый день.

Мы туда приедem за час
до отхода поезда [перед
отходом поезда].

Он весьма [очень] занятый
человек.

Эти люди всегда заняты.

В начале марта мы поедem
за-границу (acc.).

Мы пробудем за-границей
около трёх месяцев.

Отнесите письмо на почту ;
потом идите на станцию ;
там ждите прихода [до
прихода] поезда.

Until I have finished [will
finish] my work.

I came from abroad only
yesterday.

I shall not see him till Mon-
day ; I shall be busy [occu-
pied].

The room was occupied by
his brother.

We shall soon go to the
railway station.

The train arrives at five
o'clock in the evening.

He will arrive with his
younger brother on Wed-
nesday evening.

On the 19th of June we shall
go to England. To-day is
the 20th of May.

They travel to the railway
station every day.

We shall arrive there an
hour before the departure
of the train.

He is a very busy man.

These people are always
busy [occupied].

At the beginning of March
we shall go abroad.

We shall remain abroad
about three months.

Take the letter to the post
office ; then go to the
station ; there wait until
the arrival of the train.

На дворѣ, кажется, холодно теперь: возьмите пальто [наденьте пальто].

Вечером мы все пойдём в театр [в оперу], [в кинематограф], [на концерт].

Мы пробудем в театре [в опере], [на концерте], [в кинематографе], около трёх часов.

Мы приедем [вернёмся] из театра [из оперы], [с концерта], [из кинематографа] около одиннадцати часов вечера [ночи].

Мы там будем до двух часов ночи, до половины третьего [часа], [ночи], до четверти четвертого [часа].

К нам пришли [пришло] трое из его друзей.

Мы заказали ужин для двоих [троих], [четверых].

Завтра [будет] праздник.

Все магазины, лавки и банки будут закрыты; театры и кинематографы будут открыты только вечером с [от] шести до одиннадцати часов.

I think it is cold outside now: take an overcoat [put on an overcoat].

In the evening we shall all go to the theatre [opera], [to the cinema], [to the concert].

We shall stay [remain] at the theatre [at the opera], [at the cinema], [at the concert], about three hours.

We shall arrive [return] from the theatre [from the opera], [from the concert], [from the cinema] about 11 o'clock in the evening [night].

We shall be there till 2 o'clock in the morning [till half-past two], [till 3.15].

Three of his friends came to our house [to us].

We have ordered supper for two, three, four [for a party of two, of three, of four].

To-morrow is [will be] a holiday.

All stores, shops and banks will be closed; theatres and cinemas will be open only in the evening, from six till eleven o'clock.

Рестораны будут открыты
весь [цѣлый] день.

Ваш брат, кажется, болен ;
у него больной [болѣз-
ненный] вид.

Нет, он вполне здоров ; он
только устал ; он ехал
[был] в поезде цѣлые
сутки.

Теперь я у них буду по
субботам ; раньше я у
них никогда не бывал
по субботам.

Мы всегда бываем у них
по воскресеньям.

Раньше четверга не ждите
меня.

Может быть я пробуду у
вашего брата до пятницы.
Я купил собаку у соседа
[от соседа].

Мы всегда берем деньги у
брата [от брата] ; он
очень богат.

Вон [вот] он стоит у входа
[у кассы].

Он был возле [около]
театра.

Я видел его недалеко от
вашего дома.

После концерта мы будем
ужинать у моего дяди.

Мы поедем туда прямо с
концерта.

Restaurants will be open all
[the whole] day.

Your brother, I think, is ill ;
he has a sick [sickly] ap-
pearance.

No, he is quite well ; he is
only tired ; he was in the
train a whole day and
night.

Now I shall be at their
house [visit them] on
Saturdays ; before I was
never at their house on
Saturdays.

We are always at their house
[go to see them] on Sun-
days.

Do not expect me before
Thursday.

Maybe I shall stay at your
brother's till Friday.

I bought the dog from my
neighbour.

We always take money of
brother [from brother] ;
he is very rich.

There [here] he stands near
the entrance [near the
booking office].

He was near the theatre.

I saw him not far from your
house.

After the concert we shall
have supper at my uncle's.

We shall go there straight
from the concert.

Он живёт недалеко от театра.	He lives not far from the theatre.
Кроме нас там также будут наши соседи.	Besides us, our neighbours will also be there.
Вы будете сидеть возле меня.	You will sit next to me.
Без вас я не поеду ; я еду ради вас.	Without you I shall not go ; I go for your sake.
Мы там пробудем около часа.	We shall stay there about an hour.
Моя мать [матушка] ждёт письма от нашей тети.	My mother expects a letter [waits for a letter] from our aunt.

LESSON V

Vocabulary

становиться } to become, to get	заказывать } to order (see § 64,
*стать } (see § 64, group 4)	*заказать } group 1)

For adverbs formed from adjectives which can have a predicative meaning
see §§ 43, 90 (2) (a), 134, sub-section (3) :

тёмно, dark	безопасно, safe
тёмнее, darker	безопаснее, safer
светло, light	плохо, bad
светлее, lighter	хуже, worse
тепло, warm	дурно, bad
теплее, warmer	недурно, not bad
холодно, cold	не так плохо, not so bad
холоднее, colder	не так дурно, not so bad
прохладно, cool	хорошо, well
прохладнее, cooler	нехорошо, bad(ly)
свежо, fresh [cool]	лучше, better
свежее, fresher [cooler]	приятно, pleasant
жарко, hot	приятнее, pleasanter
жарче, hotter	неприятно, unpleasant
трудно, difficult, hard	неприятнее, more unpleasant
труднее, harder, more difficult	весело, jolly
опасно, dangerous	веселее, jollier
опаснее, more dangerous	скучно, dull, boring

скучнѣе, duller
 грустно, sad
 грустнѣе, sadder
 пасмурно, dull (weather)
 вѣтрено, windy (weather)
 темнотѣ, darkness
 в темнотѣ) in darkness
 въпотьмѣхъ) usually
 должно быть, probably
 прежде чем, before, prior to (with
infin.)
 непременно, without fail
 особенно, particularly
 не особенно, not particularly
 совсѣм, entirely
 не совсѣм, not quite
 потому что, because
 гораздо хуже,¹ much worse
 гораздо лучше,¹ much better
 ужасно, terrible
 ужаснее, more terrible

жаль } a pity; it is a pity
 жалко }
 нельзя, it is impossible
 нельзя было, it was impossible
 нельзя будет, it will be impos-
 sible
 слишком, too much
 не слишком, not too much
 чересчур, overmuch
 нужно } it is necessary (see § 45,
 надо } note 1)
 надобно }
 видно, visible
 не видно, not visible
 ясно, clear
 не ясно, not clear
 неясно, obscure, cloudy
 видѣть, to be seen
 не видѣть, not to be seen
 совсѣм не, not at all
 вовсе не, not at all
 так как, as

Exercises

Теперѣ очень темно.
 Стало темно.
 Становится темно.
 Нам вдруг стало холодно.

It is very dark now.
 It has become dark.
 It is getting dark.
 Suddenly [of a sudden] we
 began to feel cold.

Мне жаль [жалко] его
(with *gen.*).

I am sorry for him.

Мне было жаль [жалко]
его.

I was sorry for him.

Мне приятно слышать.

I am glad to hear.

Мне было неприятно слы-
шать, что он говорил.

I was sorry to hear [to
listen to] what he said.

Который теперь час?

What time is it now?

Теперѣ половина второго
 [часа], [два часа], [без
 четверти два], [пять ми-
 нут третьего].

It is half-past one now [two
 o' clock], [a quarter to
 two], [five minutes past
 two].

¹ Also: много хуже, много лучше.

Ужé [стáло] темнó.
 Тепérь ещé совсём светлó.
 Ещé не совсём темнó.
 Станóвится темнée.
 Потóm бúдет горáздо тем-
 нée.

В половíне шестóго утра́.

В вóсемь часóв вéчера.

Я встаю́ в семь часóв [без
 чéтверти семь], [в чéт-
 верть вóсьмóго].

Тепérь без десяти́ минúт
 вóсемь.

По утра́м тепérь [бывáет]
 óчень хóлодно.

В пóлдень [к полúдню]
 станóвится теплée.

По вечерáм мы обыкно-
 вénно сидím дóма, так
 как [потому́ что] на дворé
 темнó и óпасно выхóдить.

Ничегó нельзjá видеть }
 [Ничегó не видáть] }

Никуда́ нельзjá пойтí в
 темнотé.

Нóчью в темнотé óпасно
 ходítь по ўлицам.

Днём горáздо прýтнее и
 удóбнее.

Вчера́ вéчером бýло слýш-
 ком темнó: ничегó нé
 бýло вíдно [видáть].

It is already dark.
 It is still quite light now.
 It is not quite dark yet.
 It is getting darker.
 It will be much darker after-
 wards.

At half-past five in the
 morning.

At eight o'clock in the
 evening.

I get up at seven o'clock [at
 a quarter to seven], [at a
 quarter past seven].

It is now ten minutes to
 eight.

In the mornings it is now
 very cold.

At midday [towards mid-
 day] it becomes warmer.

In the evenings we usually
 stay [sit] at home, as
 [because] it is dark out-
 side and it is dangerous
 to go out.

One cannot see anything.

One cannot go anywhere in
 the dark.

In the [At] night, in the dark,
 it is dangerous to walk in
 the streets.

In the day-time it is much
 more pleasant and more
 comfortable.

Last night it was too dark :
 one could not see any-
 thing [nothing was visible].

Я черезчур хорошо [ясно] вижу.	I see too well [too clearly].
Когда погода станет теплее, мы поедём.	When the weather will get [become] better [warmer], we will start.
Становится свежо [прохладно].	It is getting fresh [cool].
Было пасмурно.	It was cloudy [dull, overcast].
Мы приедем домой [будем дома] в половине второго.	We shall arrive home [we shall be home] at half-past one.

LESSON VI

Vocabulary

вещь (<i>fem.</i>), thing	сторонá, side
вещи, things	по правую сторону [руку], to the right side [hand]
рынок, market	по левую сторону [руку], to the left side [hand]
на рынок, to the market	по ту сторону, on that side [along that side]
на рынке, at the market	гриб[и], mushroom[s]
кровать (<i>fem.</i>), bedstead	итти по грибá, to go after mushrooms
подниматься, to go up, to rise	на вес, by weight
*подня́ться, to rise (see § 64, group 7)	на всё, for anything
гора, hill, mountain	назло, <i>adv.</i> , so as to annoy; for spite
под гору, downhill	на беду, unfortunately
на гору, uphill	на скорую руку, hurriedly
миля, mile	на [про] чёрный день, for a rainy day
верста, verst	на восток, eastward, to the east
рубли (<i>m.</i>), rouble	на запад, westward, to the west
оставлять } to leave (see § 66)	на север, northward, to the north
*остави́ть }	на юг, southward, to the south
благодарить [*по-], to thank (see § 65)	за руку, by the arm
услуга, service	под руку, arm-in-arm, under one's arm
себя, oneself	
правый, -ая, -ое, -ые, right	
левый, -ая, -ое, -ые, left	
рука, hand	

под вечер, towards evening [about evening-time]	наверх, upstairs, upward (motion)
под конец, at the end, towards the end	вниз, downstairs, downward (motion)
под музыку, to music	налево, to the left
под заклад, under mortgage	направо, to the right
по пояс, up to the belt	вперед, forward
	назад, backward, back

Notes

Use of the accusative case.

Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, numerals, and participles stand in the accusative case :

- (a) when they are used as a direct object in a sentence, completing the meaning of a transitive verb (see §§ 16, 108) ;

NOTE. In negative constructions the direct object stands in the genitive. (See §§ 108a, 137, sub-section 4.)

- (b) frequently when they are used as adverbial expressions of time and place (see Lesson IV, also §§ 111, 112) :

я шёл пять миль,	I went [walked] five miles
я спал всю ночь,	I slept the whole night ;

- (c) after the prepositions enumerated in § 96b, if they imply a meaning of movement or direction as given by the verbs which they serve (see § 95, sub-section (2));
- (d) in many idiomatic and adverbial expressions (see Vocabulary to this lesson).

Exercises

Я еду [иду] в город [на почту], [на станцию], [на рынок], [на концерт], [на лекцию], [на собрание].	I go to town [to the post office], [to the station], [to the market], [to the concert], [to a lecture], [to a meeting].
---	---

Мы завтра поѣдем за город.	We shall go to the country [out of town], [to the outskirts] to-morrow.
Положи вещи под кровать [под стол].	Put the things under the bed [under the table].
Мы поднимаемся на гору.	We go up the hill.
Я купил это за два рубля.	I bought this for two roubles.
Я взял это за мою книгу.	I took this in exchange for my book.
Я пришлю брата за себя.	I will send my brother in my place.
Я про это знаю.	I know about this.
Мы сидели там с час.	We sat there about an hour.
Оннi пробыли у нас с год.	They stayed with us about a year.
Мы прошли с милью.	We went [walked] about a mile.
Два раза в год.	Twice a year.
Три раза в неделю [в месяц].	Three times a week [a month].
Я еду туда на год [на месяц], [на всё лето], [на зиму], [на ночь], [на неделю], [на короткое время].	I go there for a year [for a month], [for the whole summer], [for the winter], [for the night], [for a week], [for a (short) time].
Мы едем за-границу.	We are going [go] abroad.
Мы идём под гору.	We go downhill.
Я идущ навёрх [вниз].	I go up [upstairs], [down], [downstairs].
Иди направо [налево].	Go to the right [to the left].
Поезжай вперёд [назад].	Go forward [backward], [back].
Мы едем в Лондон на [целую] всю неделю, на две недели.	We go to London for the whole [for a whole] week, for a fortnight.

Мы там пробудем всю зиму
[всё лето], [всю осень],
[весну].

Я останусь там с неделю
[с месяц].

Я положил ваши вещи
под стол.

Положите их на стол [за
диван], [в ящик].

Мы ездим в Лондон два
раза в год.

Он ведёт сестру под руку.

Я взял её за руку.

Мы садимся за стол.

Завтра рано утром мы
пойдём в лес по грибы
(also за грибами).

Я пошёл [вошёл] в воду
по пояс.

Он любит ходить по ту
сторону улицы.

Хлеб продаётся [продаёт]
на вес.

Он сделал это на скорую
руку.

На беду он не мог приехать.

Весной я поеду на Восток
[на Запад].

Придите [приходите] под
вечер.

Под конец он согласился.

We shall stay there the
whole winter [the whole
summer], [the whole
autumn], [the spring].

I shall remain there about a
week [about a month].

I have put [placed] your
things under the table.

Put them on the table
[behind the couch], [into
the box].

We go to London twice a
year.

He leads (his) sister by the
arm [under his arm].

I took her by her hand
[arm].

We sit down to table.

Early to-morrow morning
we shall go to the woods
after mushrooms.

I went into the water up to
my waist (belt).

He likes to go [walk] on that
side of the street.

Bread is sold by weight.

He did this hurriedly.

Unfortunately he could not
come.

In the spring I shall go to
the East [to the West].

Come towards evening.

Towards the end [in the
end] he agreed.

Подъ горы пошла доро́га.
Мы пере́ехали че́рез мостъ.

Они́ полу́чат письмо́ че́рез
два дня [че́рез неде́лю],
[че́рез ме́сяц].

Они́ бу́дут у нас в сре́ду
в пе́рвый раз.

За э́то вре́мя я сде́лал
[успе́л] мно́го.

Я быва́ю у них ка́ждый
день [раз в ме́сяц].

Я бу́ду у вас в семь часо́в.

Я благода́рил их за кни́гу.
Мы смо́трим че́рез окно́.

Он смо́трит на люде́й.
Мы отве́чаем на вопро́сы
[на пи́сьма].

Они́ даю́т хоро́ший отве́т
на на́ши вопро́сы.

Things are going downhill.
We drove [went] across
[over] the bridge.

They will receive the letter
in two days' time [after
two days], [in a week's
time], [in a month's time].

They will come to us [visit
us] on Wednesday for the
first time.

During this time I have
done [accomplished] much.

I go to see them [visit them]
every day [once a month].

I shall be at your house at
seven o'clock.

I thanked them for the book.
We look through [out of]
the window.

He looks at the people.
We answer questions
[letters].

They give a good answer to
our questions.

LESSON VII

Vocabulary

кури́ть [*по-], to smoke
говори́ть [*по-], to speak
*сказа́ть, to say
да́рить [*по-], to make a present of
ока́зывать } to render
*оказа́ть }
ве́рить [*по-], to believe, to trust
(*dat.*)

помога́ть } to help, to assist (*dat.*)
*помо́чь }
подъезжа́ть } to drive, up, as far
*подъе́хать } (*к + dat.*)
обра́щаться } to apply to
*обрати́ться } (*к + dat.*)
возвраща́ться } to come back
*возврати́ться } (*с or из + gen.*)
*верну́ться }

миновать	} to turn, to pass	спеш-ить [*по-], -ѣ, -ишь, -ат, to
*минуть		hasten, to hurry; to be in advance
звонить	} to ring	(clock, watch)
*позвонить		отставать
позволять	} to allow, to permit	*отстать
*позволить (dat.)		} to get behind

(For conjugation patterns of the above verbs, see §§ 64-66.)

вдруг, suddenly
 просьба, request
 вредно, harmful
 полезно, useful
 как раз, exactly
 понемногу } little by little
 мало-по-малу }
 по-моему, in my opinion
 по-вашему, in your opinion
 по-своему, in one's own way
 по-новому, in the new fashion
 по-старому, in the old way
 пополам, by halves
 так себе, so-so
 само по себе, by itself
 почему? why?
 потому что, because
 поэтому, for that [this] reason
 вероятно, probably
 по всей вероятности, in all probability
 пора } time; it is time
 время }
 палка, stick
 услуга, service
 прогулка, stroll, walk
 собака, dog
 собачка, little, small dog
 дорога, road, way
 по дороге, along the road
 лестница, staircase
 по лестнице, down, up, the staircase
 лес, forest
 по лесу, through the forest
 случай, incident, occasion

по случаю, on the occasion
 по этому случаю, for this occasion
 телефон, telephone
 по телефону, by [on the] 'phone
 газета, newspaper
 по газетам, according to the newspapers
 журнал, journal
 сожаление, regret
 к сожалению, unfortunately, sad to say
 железная дорога, railway
 по железной дороге, by rail
 адрес, address
 по адресу, at the address
 капуста, cabbage
 щи, cabbage soup
 часы (pl. m.), clock
 автобус, bus
 по целым дням [часам], [неделям],
 whole days [hours], [weeks]
 по утрам, in the mornings
 по вечерам, in the evenings
 по ночам, in the nights
 по этим часам, by this clock
 карманные часы, (pocket) watch
 будильник, alarm-clock
 часы идут, the clock goes
 часы спешат, the clock is fast
 часы отстают, the clock is slow
 мой часы остановились, my clock
 [watch] has stopped
 автобусы идут, buses go
 поезда идут, trains go
 поезд отходит, train starts [leaves]

поезд приходит [прибывает],
train arrives
скóрый поезд, express, fast train
курьéрский поезд, express train
пассажирский поезд, passenger
train

товáрный поезд, goods train
почтóвый поезд, mail train
вагóн } carriage, compartment,
отделение }
для кура́щих, for smokers
для некура́щих, for non-smokers

Notes

Use of the dative case:

- (a) The dative case serves as an indirect object in the meaning of: where to? to whom? to what? (see §§ 16, 138):

я дал ему́ книгу́, I gave him the book
он купи́л мне подаро́к, he bought me a present

- (b) The dative is much used in impersonal constructions where the logical subject (inverted grammatical object) is usually in the dative:

мне скучно́, I feel bored
мне нельзя́, I cannot, I am not allowed
мне ну́жно, I need

(For fuller statement on the use of the Dative, see § 138.)

- (c) After the prepositions enumerated in § 96a.

- (d) In many idiomatic and adverbial expressions. (See Vocabulary to this lesson.)

Exercises

Он не знаёт, что ему́ делать.	He does not know what he is to do.
Мне бы́ло о́чень скучно́ [гру́стно] вчера́.	I felt very bored [sad] yesterday.
Мне ста́ло вдруг ве́село.	Suddenly I felt cheerful.
Тепе́рь мне совсе́м хоро́шо.	I now feel quite all right.
Вам вре́дно кури́ть.	It is harmful for you to smoke.

Емú нельзя курить.	He must not smoke.
Мне можно курить; мне уже восемнадцать лет.	I can smoke; I am already 18 years (old).
Мне нужно [надо] погово- рить с вами.	I must [I have to] talk to you.
Нам порá [время] было ехать.	It was time for us to go.
Емú было четырнадцать лет.	He was 14 years (old).
Мне минуло пятнадцать лет.	I am past 15 (years).
Я емú подарил свою палку.	I gave him my stick as a present.
Он мне сказал, что он очень рад этому.	He told me that he was glad of it [about it].
Ваш брат оказал мне боль- шую услугу.	Your brother has rendered me a great service.
Они нам всегда верят.	They always trust [believe] us.
Я им иногда помогаю.	I help them occasionally.
Прогулка мне всегда полезна.	A walk is always useful [beneficial] to me.
Он писал мне, что не поедет в Советский Союз.	He wrote to me that he would not go to U.S.S.R.
Я вам всегда рад.	I am always glad to see you [you are always welcome].
Мне приятно слышать это.	I am glad to hear this.
Я поеду к брату после обеда.	I shall go to my brother's after dinner.
Я подъезжаю к его дому.	I am driving up to his house.
Мы обратимся к вам с просьбой.	We shall approach you with a request.
Я не буду дома к обеду.	I shall not be in for dinner [to dinner].

Мы вернёмся к пяти ча-
сам, как раз к чаю.

Собачка бежит к дому.

Я вам дам по яблоку.

Сколько ему лет?

Ему [минуло] двадцать
[лет].

Ему пошёл двадцать
первый год.

Я поеду в Ливерпуль по
железной дороге.

Я всегда еду домой по
этой дороге.

Пишите по новому адресу,
не по старому.

Я вам позвоню по теле-
фону.

Я с вами поговорю по
телефону.

По нашим часам теперь
только два часа.

К обеду нам всегда подаёт
щи [капусту], или борщ
с кашей.

Раньше нам давали к
чаю варенье; теперь, к
сожалению, нет варенья
к чаю.

We shall be back by five
o'clock just in time
[exactly] for tea.

The little dog runs towards
the house.

I shall give you an apple
each.

How old is he?

He is [past] 20 years.

He has turned 20. [He is in
his 21st year.]

I shall go to Liverpool by
rail.

I always go home by [along]
this road.

Write to [at] the new ad-
dress, not to the old one.

I shall ring you up (on the
phone).

I shall speak to you on the
telephone.

By our clock it is now only
two o'clock.

For dinner we always get
[are served] cabbage soup,
or borsch with gruel.

Before we used to get jam
for tea; now, unfortun-
ately, there is no jam for
tea.

LESSON VIII

Vocabulary

случа́-ться, -юсь, -еюсь, -ются,
to happen

*случ-и́ться, -у́сь, -и́шся, -а́тся
(*impers.* or *c + instr.*), to happen.

знако́м-и́ться [*по-], -люсь, -и́шся,
-я́тся, to become acquainted
(*c + instr.*)

здоро́ва-ться [*по-], -юсь, -еюсь,
-ются, to greet (*c + instr.*)

проща́-ться, -юсь, -еюсь, -ются,
to take leave

*прости́ться, прощу́сь, прости́шь-
ся, прости́тся, to say good-bye
(*c + instr.*)

сове́т-ова́ться [*по-], -уюсь,
-уе́шься, -ую́тся, to take counsel,
advice (*c + instr.*)

дыша́ть [*по-], дышу́, дыши́шь,
дыша́т, to breathe (*abs.* or
instr.)

(For other verbs which require the instrumental case see § 140, sub-sections 3, 4.)

за сто́лом, at table

за́ городом, beyond the town

за рабо́той, at work

за обе́дом, at dinner

за у́жином, at supper

за за́втраком, at breakfast

за ча́ем, at tea

со вре́менем, in time

за исклю́чением, with the excep-
tion

ме́жду про́чим, among the rest;
by the way

ме́жду тем, in the meantime

ме́жду тем, как, whilst

пе́ред тем [как], before

под усло́вием, on condition

за́тем, after that

за́чем? why?

звать [*на-], зову́, зове́шь, зову́т,
to name, to be known as (*instr.*)

каза́ться [*по-], to appear, to seem
(*abs.* or *instr.*) (see § 64, group 1)

занима́ться, to be occupied with
*зани́яться, to be engaged in (*instr.*)
(see § 64, group 7)

плати́ть [*за-], to pay (*abs.* or
dat. + instr.) (see § 65)

руча́-ться, -юсь, -еюсь, -ются,
to guarantee (for — + in —)

(за + *acc.* + в + *loc.*)

*поруч-и́ться, -у́сь, -и́шся, -а́тся,
to guarantee (за + *acc.* + в + *loc.*)

служи́ть [*по-, *у-], служу́, служ-
и́шь, служи́т, to serve as (*abs.*
or *instr.*)

счита́-ться [*по-], -юсь, -еюсь,
-ются, to count, to settle; [*imperf.*],
to be reputed as (*abs.* or *instr.*)

за чем? after what?

вслед за́тем, thereupon, after which
за́ тем; что́бы, in order that (with

infin.) (see also adverbial expres-
sions in § 140, sub-section 5)

пред, пе́ред, before, in front of

ками́н, open fireplace

спори́ть [*по-], to argue (*c + instr.*)

ссора́-и́ться [*по-], to quarrel (*c +*
instr.), -юсь, -и́шся, -я́тся

гуверна́нтка, governess

сиде́лка, nurse, sick-nurse

больно́й, -а́я [пацие́нт], patient

сарáй, shed

огоро́д, kitchen-garden

находи́ться, to be (there), to be
situated (see § 63)

рядом, alongside

здравствуйте } how do you do ?
здравствуй¹ }

Customary form of greeting
instead of: good morning, good
day, good evening (see § 123b (5)).

прощайте }
прощай¹ } good-bye
до свидания, good-bye

мы ещё увидимся, we shall see each
other [meet] again

да, надеюсь, yes, I hope so.

пожалуйста, please

спасибо, thanks, thank you

не стоит, you are welcome (lit-
eral meaning: not worth the
thanks)

Notes

Use of the instrumental case:

(a) The instrumental case is an adverb case, and is mostly used in adverbial expressions of manner (see §§ 16, 140);

(b) it stands after reciprocal verbs with the preposition с:
я встретился с братом, I met (my) brother
я ссорился [*по-] с ним, I had a quarrel with him;

(c) it denotes the instrument or means by which, or through which (or person by whom), an action is performed, and the manner in which it is performed (see § 140, sub-section 1);

(d) it is used in passive constructions (Passive voice) after the past passive participle, or after a reflexive verb when it serves the purpose of a past passive participle (see §§ 131, 122, note (e)):

дом [был] построен моим отцом
the house is [was] built by my father

дом, построенный моим отцом, сгорел
the house built by my father has been burned down

дом строится каменщиками
the house is being built by bricklayers [masons];

(e) after the prepositions enumerated in § 96c.

¹ This form is used only when addressing intimate friends or relations.

Exercises

Я сижу́ перед ками́ном.	I sit in front of the fire.
Пе́ред ча́ем я всегда́ чита́ю.	Before tea I always read.
За обе́дом я оче́нь ма́ло ем.	At dinner I eat very little.
Мы сиди́м за столо́м.	We sit at table.
Кни́га за столо́м.	The book is behind the table.
Мой брат всегда́ спо́рит со мно́ю.	My brother always argues with me.
Приди́те [приходи́те] с ва́шей жено́й.	Come with [and bring] your wife.
Что с ним случи́лось ?	What has happened to [with] him ?
Мы живём за́ городом.	We live beyond the town.
Я не ку́рю за рабо́той.	I do not smoke at work.
Я его́ заста́л за рабо́той.	I found him at work.
Мы посла́ли за до́ктором.	We (have) sent for the doctor.
Я вчера́ познако́мился с ва́шим сосе́дом.	I made the acquaintance of your neighbour yesterday.
Все бы́ли тут, за исклю́чением ва́шего бра́та.	Everyone was here, with the exception of your brother.
Я всегда́ здоро́ваюсь с зна́комы́ми, когда́ встреча́ю их, и проща́юсь с ни́ми, когда́ оста́вляю их.	I always greet acquaintances when I meet them, and say good-bye to them when I leave them.
Мы всегда́ сове́туемся с на́шими друзь́ями.	We always take counsel [advice] with our friends.
Со вре́менем вы всё узна́ете.	In time you will learn [know] everything.
Ме́жду тем ста́ло темно́.	In the meantime it became dark.
Пе́ред тем, как он прише́л [пе́ред его́ прихо́дом], мы игра́ли в ка́рты.	Before he came [arrived], [before his arrival], we played cards.
Э́то, ме́жду про́чим, не так легко́.	This is, by the way, not very easy.

- Гувернантка смóтрит за
детьми; сиделка смóтрит
[хóдит] за больными [па-
циентами]. The governess looks after
the children; the nurse
looks after the patients.
- Над столóм висит лампа;
над кровáтью висит кар-
тина. Over the table hangs a
lamp; over the bedstead
hangs a picture.
- Дети игра́ют между до́мом
и сара́ем. The children play between
the house and the shed.
- За сара́ем нахо́дится ого-
ро́д. Behind the shed there is a
kitchen garden.
- Под столóм лежи́т соба́ка;
рядом с ней лежи́т кот
[ко́шка]. Under the table lies the
dog; alongside it lies the
tom-cat [cat].
- Она́ хороша́ собо́й, высо́ка
ро́стом и кротка́ нра́вом. She is good-looking, tall [of
tall stature], and of gentle
disposition.
- Он дово́лен собо́ю, гор-
ди́тся своим бога́тством,
но бо́лен чем-то [слаб
здо́ровьем]. He is satisfied with himself,
is proud of his wealth, but
is suffering from something
[ailing with something],
[in delicate health].
- Мы ды́шим во́здухом. We breathe air.
- Его́ зову́т Петро́м. He is called Peter.
- Мы занима́емся де́лом. We are occupied with
business.
- Он ви́глядит больным.¹ He looks [appears] ill.
- Он счита́ется [его́ счита́ют]
бога́тым. He is considered rich.

¹ But: Он, ка́жется, бо́лен (ка́жется is here used parenthetically).
It seems (to me) he is ill.

LESSON IX

Vocabulary

вполне, entirely
 накануне, on the eve
 внизу, at the bottom; downstairs
 наверху, at the top; upstairs
 причём, by which; at the same
 time; besides which
 притом, besides
 в виду, in view of, in consideration
 of
 в таком случае, in this case
 во всяком случае, in any case
 в скорости } shortly
 вскоре }
 в скором времени, very soon
 в чём дело? what is the matter?
 в том то и дело, and it is just
 this
 не в том дело, that is not the thing
 [trouble]
 на моих глазах, under my very eyes
 при мне, in my presence
 на самом деле } in fact, in reality,
 в самом деле } indeed
 на почте, at the post office

на лекции, at the [a] lecture
 на станции, at the station
 на концерте, at the [a] concert
 на рынке, at the market
 на собрании [митинге], at the
 [a] meeting
 у моря, at the sea
 морско́й бе́рег, the seaside
 на бере́гу мо́ря } at the seaside
 на морско́м бере́гу }
 ово́щи, vegetables
 при́ход } arrival
 при́бытие }
 ухо́д, departure, leave; care, nurs-
 ing
 кове́р, carpet
 коври́, carpets
 коври́к[и], mat[s]
 дере́вянный, of wood, wooden
 ка́менный, of stone
 письмо́, letter
 заказно́е письмо́, registered letter
 *посла́ть заказны́м [письмо́м], to
 send by registered letter

Notes

Use of the Locative (Prepositional) case:

- (a) The locative case is the 'adverb-case' which mostly expresses place, and is used in adverbial expressions of place (see § 141).
 (b) It is also used after the prepositions enumerated in § 96d.

Exercises

Мы живём в Англии.

We live in England.

Я всегда сижу в своей
комнате и читаю.

I always sit in my room and
read.

Кни́га у меня́ в ко́мнате
на столе́.

На полу́ лежат ко́вры
[ко́врики].

Я живу́ в го́роде в ка́-
менном до́ме, а они́ живу́т
в дере́вне в дере́вянном
до́ме.

Мы вчера́ были на кон-
це́рте [на собра́нии], [на
ле́кции].

Он был всё время на
ста́нции.

По прибы́тии [прихо́де]
пое́зда он поше́л домо́й.

Я ско́ро [вско́ре], [в ско́-
ром вре́мени] поеду́ в
Ло́ндон.

В Ло́ндоне я пробуду́ пять
неде́ль.

В на́шем до́ме спа́льни
наверху́, а столо́вая, го-
сти́ная и ку́хня внизу́.

Э́то случи́лось на моих
глаза́х [при мне].

На [в] са́мом де́ле я не
знал, в че́м [бы́ло] де́ло.

Мы всегда́ покупа́ем ово́щи
на ры́нке, а хлеб, са́хар
и дру́гие ко́лония́льные
това́ры в ла́вке.

The book is in my room on
the table.

On the floor lie carpets
[mats].

I live in town in a stone
[brick] house, but they live
in the country [village] in
a wooden house.

Yesterday we were at a
concert [at a meeting],
[at a lecture].

He was all the time at the
station.

On the train's arrival [after
the arrival of the train] he
went home.

I will soon [shortly] go to
London.

In London I shall stay [re-
main] five weeks.

In our house the bedrooms
are upstairs, and the
dining-room, drawing-
room [sitting-room], and
kitchen downstairs.

This happened in my pre-
sence.

In fact I did not know what
was [had been] the matter.

We always buy vegetables
at the market, and [but]
bread, sugar and other
groceries at the shop.

LESSON X

Vocabulary

закурива-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют, to start smoking	покрыва-ть[ся] } to cover [oneself]
*закур-ить, -ю, -ишь, -ят, to light a pipe, cigarette, etc.	*покры-ть[ся] } to cover [oneself]
показывать } to show (see § 64,	мыть[ся][*по-], мою[сь], моешь[ся],
*показа-ть } group 1)	моют[ся], to wash [oneself]
отвеча-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют	бриться [*по-], бреюсь, бреешься,
*отве-тить, -чу, -тишь, } to answer	бреются, to shave oneself
-тят	брать ванну } to take [have] a
сиде-ть[*по-], сижу, сидишь, сидят,	*взять ванну } bath
to be sitting	одевать[ся] } to dress [oneself]
стоя-ть [*по-], to stand	*оде-ть[ся] }
стои-ть, to cost (has no perfective aspect)	надева-ть } to put on
лежа-ть [*по-], to lie, to be lying	*наде-ть }
*выспаться, to have enough sleep	встава-ть } to get up
	*вста-ть }
	устава-ть } to get tired
	*уста-ть }

(For conjugation-patterns, see §§ 63-68.)

зёркало, mirror	тёплый, -ая, -ое, -ые, warm
перед зёркалом, in front of the mirror	дорогой, -ая, -ое, -ие, dear, expensive
холодный, -ая, -ое, -ые, cold	дешёвый, -ая, -ое, -ые, cheap
горячий, -ая, -ее, -ие, hot	

(For short forms and comparatives, see § 45.)

прислуга, servants (<i>collective noun</i>)	табак, tobacco
кухарка, cook	трубка, pipe
повар, (man) cook, chef	папироса, cigarette
горничная, chambermaid	сигара, cigar
бритва, razor	спичка, match
острая бритва, sharp razor	коробка спичек, box of matches
тупая бритва, blunt razor	рубаха } shirt
квас, home-brewed beer	рубашка }
вино, wine	ночная рубаха, night-shirt
пиво, beer	верхняя рубаха, top-shirt
кофе, coffee	нижняя рубаха, under-shirt
водка, vodka	брюки } trousers (used in plural)
шоколад, chocolate	штаны } only (<i>masc.</i>), see § 33)
коньяк, brandy	жилёт, vest

пиджак, jacket
 куртка, short jacket
 шуба, fur coat
 шарф, scarf
 шляпа, hat
 шапка, cap
 полушубок, short fur coat
 причёсыва-ться, -юсь, }
 -ешься, -ются } to comb
 *приче-саться, -шусь, } one's hair
 -шешься, -шутся }

вытира-ться } -юсь, -ешься, -ются,
 утира-ться } to wipe [dry] one-
 self
 *вы-тереться } -трусь, -трешься,
 *у-тереться } -трутся,
 self } to dry [wipe] one-
 self }

постель, bedding
 подушка, pillow
 одеяло, blanket
 простыня, sheet
 дрова, firewood (used in plural
 only) (neut.)
 уголь (m.), coal (used in singular
 only in sense of fuel)

чулок, stocking
 чулки, stockings
 носок, sock
 носки, socks
 подтяжки, braces (used only in
 pl., fem.).

сапог, boot
 сапоги, boots (top boots)
 туфля, slipper
 туфли, slippers
 ботинок } half-boot [shoe]
 [ботинка] }

ботинки, half-boots

калоши } goloshes
 галоши }

воротник } collar
 воротничок }

платок [посовой], handkerchief
 вежливо, courteously

из вежливости, out of courtesy
 фабрика, factory
 завод, works
 ярко, brightly

вблес } hair
 волоса }

годиться [*при-], to be of use (see
 § 68)

лицо, face

шея, neck

мыть[ся] [*у-], мою, моешь, моют,
 to wash [oneself]

мыло, soap

полотенце, towel

галстук, tie

завязыва-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют } to tie
 *завязать, завязу, завя- } up
 жешь, завяжут }

печь (fem.) } stove
 печка }

греться [*по-], to warm oneself

усталый, -ая, -ое, -ые, tired

пешком, on foot

трамваем, by tram

нравиться [*по-], -люсь, -ишься,
 -ятся, to please, to be pleas-
 ing

изредка, occasionally

отдыха-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют }

*отдохн-уть, -у, -ёшь, } to rest
 -ут }

умывальник, wash-basin, wash-
 stand

умывальный прибор, toilet-set

шкаф, wardrobe

этажёрка, shelf, whatnot

матрац, mattress

родственник, relation

друг, friend

друзья, friends (see § 20, sub-
 section (6))

знакомый [-ые], acquaintance

абажур, lamp-shade

просто, simply

лимон, lemon

болта́-ть [*по-], -ю, -ешь, -ют, to chatter	удобный, -ая, -ое, -ые, comfortable
у́ютный, -ая, -ое, -ые, cosy	- обстано́вка, furniture

Exercises

- Я встаю́ очень рано́.
 Я одева́юсь. Я снимаю́
 ночную руба́шку и наде-
 ваю штаны́ [брюки], ве́рх-
 нюю руба́шку и жиле́т.
 Я брею́сь пе́ред зе́ркалом
 о́строй бритвой.
 Бритвы́ у меня́ всегда́
 о́стрые; тупа́я бритва́ не
 годи́тся; с тупо́й брит-
 вой бритье́ продо́лжа́ется
 до́льше.
 По́том я мою́ лицо́, шею́ и
 ру́ки горя́чей и холо́д-
 ной водо́й и мы́лом; я
 вытира́юсь [вытира́ю ли-
 цо́, шею́, ру́ки] [ути-
 ра́юсь] полоте́нцем.
 Иногда́ я беру́ горя́чую
 [и́ли холо́дную] ванну́.
 Я причёсываю́сь [причёсы-
 ваю, зачёсываю́ волоса́],
 надеваю́ ве́рхнюю ру-
 ба́шку [руба́ху], пи́джак
 [ку́ртку], воротни́чок, за-
 вязываю́ га́лстук и иду́
 вниз в столо́вую [спу-
 скаю́сь по ле́стнице].
 В столо́вой печь уже́ затоп-
 лена́ [зимой́ и о́сенью],
 [ками́н уже́ затоплен;
 уже́ то́пится].
- I get up very early.
 I dress. I take off (my)
 night-shirt and I put on
 (my) trousers, (my) top-
 shirt and vest.
 I shave in front of the mirror
 with a sharp razor.
 My razors are always sharp;
 a blunt [dull] razor is no
 use; it takes long to shave
 with a blunt razor [shaving
 with a blunt razor].
 Then I wash my face, neck,
 and hands with hot and
 cold water and soap; I
 [dry] wipe myself [I dry
 my face, neck, and hands]
 with a towel.
 Sometimes I take a hot [or
 cold] bath.
 I comb my hair, I put on
 my top-shirt, jacket, collar,
 tie up my tie, and I go
 downstairs into the dining-
 room [go down the stair-
 case], [stairs].
 In the dining-room the stove
 is already lit [in winter
 and autumn].

В каміне [в печі], [в пѣчке]
вѣсело и ярко горят
дрова [горит уголь].

Я стою перед камином и
грѣюсь.

Я грѣюсь у огня [у камина],
и читаю газету [просма-
триваю газету].

Мне приносят [подают]
завтрак.

Прислуга [кухарка или
горничная] подаёт мне
завтрак.

Я сажусь к столу [за стол]
и начинаю завтракать
[завтрак].

Кончив завтрак [позавтра-
кав], [после завтрака] я
закуриваю папиросу [си-
гару], [трубку] и курю.

Я набиваю трубку [таба-
ком]; я люблю крепкий
[дорогой] табак.

Слабый или дешёвый табак
мне не нравится. [Я не
люблю слабого табаку.]

Покурив, я надеваю паль-
то [а зимою шубу], беру
зонтик [или палку] и
отправляюсь [иду, еду] в
кантору, [на фабрику, на
завод].

In the open fireplace [stove]
cheerfully and brightly
burns the wood [coal].

I stand in front of the fire-
[place] and warm my-
self.

I warm myself near the fire,
and read the newspaper
[look through the news-
paper].

My breakfast is brought
[served].

The servant [cook or maid]
serves my breakfast

I sit down to table and
begin breakfast.

Having finished [after]
breakfast I light a cigar-
ette, [cigar], [pipe] and
smoke.

I fill my pipe [with tobacco];
I like strong [expensive]
tobacco.

Weak or cheap tobacco is
not to my liking. [I do
not like weak tobacco.]

Having finished smoking, I
put on my overcoat [and in
winter my fur coat], I take
my umbrella [or stick],
and set out [go, drive] to
the office [to the factory,
to the works].

Я еду поездом [трамваем],
[автобусом], [в автомо-
биле] или же идю пешком.

I go by train [by tram], [by
bus] [in a car], or else I
walk [go on foot].

Я работаю весь [целый]
день.

I work the whole day.

К концу дня [к вечеру] я
всегда устаю [чувствую
себя усталым] и рад
ехать, [итти], [пойти]
домой обедать.

By [towards] the end of the
day [towards evening] I al-
ways get tired [I feel tired]
and I am glad to drive [to
go] home to dinner.

Придя домой, я сажусь за
обед.

Having arrived home I sit
down to dinner.

К обеду мне подаёт суп,
рыбу, щи или борщ, се-
лянку, жаркое, котлеты,
кашу, пирожки, пиро-
жное, фрукты.

For dinner I am served with
soup, fish, cabbage soup
or borsch, stew, roast,
cutlets, gruel, pies, pastry,
fruit.

Перед обедом я выпиваю
рюмку водки и закусы-
ваю огурцом, селедкой,
анчоусом, икрой или
какой-нибудь другой за-
куской.

Before dinner I drink a
wine-glass of vodka, and
eat (after it) some cucum-
ber, herring, anchovy,
caviar, or any other bit
of snack.

За обедом я пью воду или
квас; иногда я пью пиво,
изредка также вино.

At dinner I drink water or
kvas [home-brewed beer];
sometimes I drink beer,
now and then also wine.

Потом я пью кофе, иногда
с коньяком.

Afterwards I drink coffee,
occasionally with brandy.

После обеда [пообедавши]
я отдыхаю или читаю
книгу.

After dinner [having dined]
I rest or read a book.

Отдохнувши я идю к
знакомым [в театр], [в
оперу], [в кинемато-
граф], [на митинг].

Having had a rest I go to
see friends [to the theatre],
[to the opera], [to the
cinema], [to a meeting].

Иногда ко мне [к нам] приходят друзья [приятели], [знакомые], [родственники], и мы играем в карты, в шахматы, в шашки.

Occasionally come to me [to us] friends [acquaintances], [relatives], and we play cards, chess, draughts.

Иногда кто-нибудь играет на рояле и мы все слушаем.

Occasionally someone plays the piano and we all listen.

А то просто сидим у камина и разговариваем [болтаем], пьем чай с лимоном или с вареньем.

Or else we simply sit by the [near the] fire [place] and talk [chatter], drink tea with lemon or jam [preserves].

В одиннадцать часов [в половине двенадцатого] я иду спать [ложусь спать].

At eleven o'clock [at half-past eleven] I go to sleep [I go to bed].

Я сплю на [в] просторной кровати, на которой постлана постель: [подушки, матрац, простыни, одеяло].

I sleep on [in] a spacious bedstead, on which there is laid bedding [pillows, mattress, sheets, a blanket].

Зимой я накрываюсь [покрываюсь] двойным одеялом [двумя одеялами].

In winter I cover myself with a double blanket [two blankets].

Мебель в моей комнате простая: кровать, комод для белья, стул [два стула], столик, кресло, шкаф для платья, этажерка [полка], [полочка] для книг, зеркало и умывальник [умывальный прибор].

The furniture in my room is simple: a bedstead, a chest of drawers for linen, a chair [two chairs], a little table, an arm-chair, wardrobe for clothes, set of shelves [whatnot] for books, a mirror and wash-stand [toilet-set].

потолка висит электрическая лампа под абажуром.

From the ceiling hangs an electric lamp under a lampshade.

Над комо́дом висит кар-
ти́на.

Пол у́стлан ко́вриками [на
полу́ ле́жит ко́вер].

В о́бщем о́бстано́вка про-
ста́я, но удо́бная и ую́тная.

Over the chest of drawers
hangs a picture [painting].

The floor is covered with
mats [on the floor lies a
carpet].

In general the furniture is
simple, but comfortable and
cosy.

LESSON XI

Vocabulary

NOTE. A number of words in everyday use are given in the list below which are not necessarily included in the exercises to this lesson.

да́ма, lady
да́мы, ladies
для дам, for ladies
да́мский, -ая, -ое, -ие, for, pertain-
ing to, ladies
же́нщина [ы], woman [women]
деви́ца [ы], maiden[s], girl[s],
miss[es]
деву́шка [и], girl[s], maiden[s],
servant girl[s]
ба́рышня [и], young lady[-ies]
дево́чка [и], little girl[s]
же́них, bridegroom, suitor
неве́ста, bride, engaged girl
же́на [же́ны], wife [wives]
вдово́а [вдо́вы], widow[s]
вдово́ец [вдовцы́], widower[s]
му́жчина [и], man [men], male[s]
му́ж, husband
му́жской, for, pertaining to, men
для му́жчин, for men
ма́льчик [и], boy[s]
юно́ша [и], a youth[s]
па́рень [па́рни], lad[s], youth[s]
(used only colloquially)

пла́тье, clothing, wearing apparel
о́бувь (*fem.*), footwear
да́мское [же́нское] пла́тье и о́бувь,
ladies' [women's] clothing and
footwear
пла́тье и о́бувь для дам, для же́н-
щин, для деви́ц, для дево́чек,
clothing [dresses] and footwear
for ladies, women, maidens, and
girls
ко́фточка } woman's jacket
ко́фта }
ю́бка, petticoat, skirt
пла́тье, dress
да́мское пальто́, lady's coat
шу́ба, fur coat
корса́ж, bodice
ша́пка, hat
блу́зка, blouse
сарафа́н, lady's sleeveless garment
боти́нки, half-boots
[боти́нка] } half-boot
боти́нок }
ту́фля [и], slipper[s]
полусапо́жки, half-boots

башма́к	} lady's boot[s]	в носу́, in the nose
башмаки́		бровь (<i>fem.</i>) } eyebrow[s]
фа́ргук	} apron, pinafore	[бро́ви]
пе́редник		ресни́цы, eyelashes
чуло́к, чулки́, stocking[s]		скула́ } cheek-bone[s]
шёлковые чулки́, silk stockings		[ску́лы]
шёлк, silk		рот, mouth
шёлковая ма́терия, silk material		во рту́, in the mouth
шерстя́ная ма́терия, woollen material		грудь (<i>fem.</i>), chest
шерсть (<i>fem.</i>), wool		спина́, spine, back
носовой плато́к	} handkerchief[s]	плечо́ } shoulder[s]
платки́		[плечи́]
носовые платки́		ло́коть (<i>m.</i>) } elbow[s] [forearm[s]]
полотно́, linen, linen-cloth		[ло́кти]
полотня́ный, -ая, -ое, -ые, of linen		рука́ } hand[s], arm[s]
сукно́, cloth (woollen-cloth)		[ру́ки]
суконный, -ая, -ое, -ые, made of (woollen) cloth		нога́ } leg[s], foot [feet]
хлопчатая бума́га, cotton		[но́ги]
из хлопчатой бума́ги, made of cotton		се́рдце, heart
тёло, body		лёгкое, lung
челове́ческое те́ло, human body		лёгкие, lungs
член, member, limb		пе́чень (<i>fem.</i>), liver
часть (<i>fem.</i>), part		желу́док, stomach
чле́ны [ча́сти] челове́ческого те́ла, members [parts] of the human body		живо́т, belly
голова́, head		жи́ла } vein[s]
волоса́ } hair		[жи́лы]
во́лос }		кро́вь, blood
у́хо, ear		па́лец } finger[s]
у́ши, ears		[па́льцы]
глаза́, eyes		ко́лено } knee[s]
глаз, eye		[ко́лени]
лоб, forehead		ко́жа, skin
гу́бы, lips		кость (<i>fem.</i>) } bone[s]
гу́ба, lip		[ко́сти]
подборо́док, chin		но́готь (<i>m.</i>) } nail[s]
борода́, beard		[но́гти]
уса́ } moustache (usually used in the plural)		язы́к, tongue (also language)
нос, nose		зуб } tooth [teeth]
		[зу́бы]
		десна́ } gum[s]
		[десны́]

нёбо, palate (not to be confused
with небо, sky)
глóтка, gullet, throat
пóяс, waist
поясница, waist, loins
сла́бые глаза́, weak eyes
слаб, -а, -ы глаза́ми, weak in the
eyes
близору́кость (*f.*), short-sightedness
близору́к-ий, -ая, -ие; —, -а, -и,
short-sighted
очки́, spectacles
пенсѳ, eye-glasses, pince-nez
шкóла } school
учи́лище }
ходить в шкóлу } to go to school
ходить в учи́лище }
учи́ться в шкóле } to learn at
учи́ться в учи́лище } school
учи́ться (*requires dat.*) ру́сскому
языку́, to learn the Russian
language
учи́ться му́зыке, to learn music
уче́бник, text-book, study book
учи́тель, teacher
учи́тельница, woman teacher
чте́ние, reading
рисова́ние, drawing (painting)
пе́ние, singing
изуча́-ть, -ю, -ешь, -ют }
*изучи́ть, -у́, -ишь, -ат } to study
(*trans. verb*)
учи́ть [*на-], to teach
черни́ла (*in pl. only*), ink
черни́льница, ink-pot
сло́во, word
слова́рь (*m.*), dictionary
дом, house
ко́мната, room
кры́ша, roof
сте́на, wall
сте́ны, walls
око́но, window
о́кна, windows

К **

сте́кло, glass, pane
сте́кла, panes
дверь (*fem.*), door
двор, yard
на дво́ре, outside, out of doors
ками́н, open fireplace
пол, floor
потоло́к, ceiling
ле́стница, stairs, staircase; ladder
сто́ловая, dining-room
ку́хня, kitchen
спа́льня, bedroom
прие́мная, reception-room
гости́ная, sitting-room
де́тская, nursery
кабинéт, study
прихо́жая } entrance-hall
пере́дняя }
ва́нная [ко́мната], bathroom
ва́нна, bath
ба́ня, bath-house
сара́й, shed
метла́, broom
за́ступ, spade
пи́ла, saw
молото́к, hammer
та́релка, plate
ми́ска, tureen
ча́шка, cup
стакáн, glass, tumbler
блю́дечко, saucer
ча́йник, tea-pot
са́харница, sugar basin
самова́р, tea urn
нож, knife
ножи́, knives
ло́жка [и], spoon[s]
ви́лка [и], fork[s]
блю́до, dish
скáтерть [и] (*fem.*), tablecloth
салфе́тка [и], serviette[s]
графи́н, decanter
судо́к, cruet, cruet-stand
солонка́, salt-cellar
кувши́н, jug

жевать [*раз-], жуё, жуёшь, жуют,
to chew
дышать [*по-], to breathe
осязать, -ю, -ешь, -ют, to
feel
течь [*по-], текёт, течёшь, течёт, to
flow
пища, food
портной, tailor
портниха, tailoress
сапожник, shoemaker
бельё, linen
прачка, laundress

прачечная, laundry
котёл, boiler
котелёк, kettle, pot
рюмка, small wine-glass
перец, pepper
хрен, horse-radish
горчица, mustard
десяток, a set of ten
дюжина, dozen
фунт, pound
кило, kilogram
полфунта, half a pound
полкило, half a kilo

Exercises

Мы видим [смотрим] глазами; мы кушаем [едим] ртом; разжёвываем [жуём] пищу зубами; мы слышим [слушаем] ушами; работаем руками; ходим или бегаем ногами; осязаем пальцами [кожей]; нюхаем [обоняем] носом.

Мы узнаём [различаем] вкус пищи небом и языком.

Мы имеем пять внешних чувств: зрение, слух, обоняние, осязание и вкус.

В наших жилах течёт кровь.

Близорукие люди и те, у которых слабые глаза, носят очки или пенсне.

We see [look] with (our) eyes; we eat with (our) mouth; we chew food with our teeth; we hear [listen] with our ears; we work with our hands; we walk or run with our legs; we feel [touch] with our fingers [skin]; we smell with our nose.

We learn [distinguish] the taste of food by our palate and tongue.

We have five external senses: sight, hearing, smell, touch, and taste.

In our veins flows blood.

Short-sighted people and those who have weak eyes wear spectacles or glasses [pince-nez].

- Мужчины, взрослые и мальчики, носят пальто, брюки [штаны], куртки [пиджаки], жилеты, шубы, полушубки, сапоги, ботинки, воротнички, галоши, шляпы, шапки. Men, grown-ups, and boys, wear overcoats, trousers, jackets, vests, fur coats, short fur coats, top-boots, shoes, collars, goloshes, hats, and caps.
- Женщины [дамы] и девушки носят платья, корсажи, кофты, юбки, сарафаны, башмаки, ботинки, полусапожки, шляпки. Women [ladies] and girls wear dresses, bodices, jackets, skirts, [petticoats], sarafans, boots, shoes, half-boots, hats.
- Деревенские женщины и девушки носят на голове платки вместо шляпок. Village women and girls wear kerchiefs on their head instead of hats.
- Мужское платье шьёт портной. Men's clothing is made [sewn] by a tailor.
- Дамское платье также шьёт портной, а иногда портниха. Ladies' clothing is also made [sewn] by a tailor, and sometimes by a tailoress.
- Мужскую и дамскую обувь шьёт сапожник. Men's and women's footwear is sewn by a shoemaker.
- Бельё шьёт портниха [белошвейка]. Linen is sewn by a tailoress [seamstress].
- Бельё стирает прачка. Linen is washed by a laundress.
- Лучшее бельё отсылается в прачечную. Better linen is sent to the laundry.

LESSON XII

Vocabulary

погода, weather
 хорошая погода, fine weather
 плохая погода, bad weather
 дождь (*m.*), rain
 идёт дождь, it rains
 шёл дождь, it rained
 пошёл дождь, it started raining
 облако [а] } cloud[s]
 туча [и] }
 снег, snow
 падает снег, it snows [snow falls]
 снег падал, it snowed [snow fell]
 град, hailstones
 молния, lightning
 сверкает молния, lightning is flash-
 ing
 буря, storm
 гром, thunder
 гремит гром, it thunders
 гремел гром, it thundered
 лёд, ice
 вода, water
 лёд тает, ice melts
 лёд растаял, ice has melted away
 ветер, wind
 воздух, air
 небо, sky
 облачно, cloudy
 пасмурно, rainy
 ветрено, windy
 ясно, clear
 тепло, warm
 холодно, cold
 огород, kitchen garden
 в [на] огороде, in the kitchen
 garden
 сад, garden, orchard
 в саду, in the garden
 поле, field
 в поле, in the field

лес, forest
 в лесу, in the forest
 река, river
 озеро, lake
 в реке, in the river
 в озере, in the lake
 на реке, on the river
 на озере, on the lake
 море, the sea
 в море, in the sea
 на море, on the sea
 человек, man
 люди, men, people
 зверь (*m.*), beast
 животное, animal
 лошадь (*fem.*), horse, mare
 конь (*m.*), horse
 корова, cow
 собака, dog
 кошка, cat
 кот, tom-cat
 птица, bird
 рыба, fish
 домашняя птица, domestic
 bird
 курица, hen
 петух, cock, cockerel
 утка, duck
 гусь (*m.*), goose
 индюк, turkey-cock
 индюшка } turkey
 индейка }
 дерево, tree
 деревья, trees
 плодовые деревья, fruit trees
 куст, bush, shrub
 кусты, shrubs
 в кустах, in the shrubs
 трава, grass
 гриб [я], mushroom[s]

ягода [ы], berry [ies]
 дѣикіе ягоди, wild berries
 яблоня, apple tree
 вишня, cherry tree [cherry]
 груша, pear tree [pear]
 слива, plum tree [plum]
 малина, raspberry
 клубника, strawberry
 смородина, currant

земляника, wild (small) strawberry
 крыжовник, gooseberry
 репа, turnip[s]
 морковь, (*fem.*) carrot[s]
 капуста, cabbage
 редька }
 редиска } radish
 картофель (*m.*), potato[es]
 лук, onion[s]

(The above vegetables and fruits are not used in the plural, they have a collective singular only.)

бурак [ѣ], beetroot[s]
 ботвинья (*sing. only*), beetroot-tops
 огурец, cucumber
 огурцы, cucumbers
 салат (*sing. only*), salad [lettuce]
 сажать [*по-], сажу, садишь, сажают,
 to plant
 се-ять [*по-], -ю, -ешь, -ют, to sow

хлебá, cereals
 рожь (*fem.*), rye
 пшеница, wheat
 ячмень (*m.*), barley
 овёс, oats
 кукуруза, maize
 гречиха, buckwheat
 горох, peas

(The above cereals have no plural, they have a collective singular only.)

боб[ѣ], bean[s]
 дыня [и], pumpkin[s], melon[s]
 сани (*pl. only*), sleigh
 телега, cart, waggon
 карета, carriage, coach
 дрожки, droszky
 коляска, open carriage
 в санях, in a sleigh
 в телеге, in a cart
 в карете, in a carriage
 в коляске, in an open carriage
 в дрожках, in a droszky
 развод-ить, -жу, -ишь, } to culti-
 -ят } vate, to
 *разве-сти, -дѣ, -дѣшь, } rear
 -дѣт

невод [á], big fishing net
 сеть [и] (*fem.*), smaller fishing net
 удá }
 удочка } fishing rod
 охота, desire, inclination; hunt,
 chase
 охотиться, -чусь, -тишься, -тятся,
 to hunt, to chase (за + *inst.*, or
 на + *acc.*)
 охотник, volunteer; hunter
 охотный, -ая, -ое, -ие, willing
 охотно, willingly
 лов-ить, -лю, -ишь, } to catch (see
 -ят } § 60, sub-
 *поймá-ть, -ю, -ешь, } section 3)
 -ют

Exercises

Зимой в Россіи дороги,
 луга и поля покрыты
 снегом; люди ездят в
 санях.

In winter the roads, mea-
 dows, and fields in Russia
 are covered with snow;
 people travel in sleighs.

Лѣтом люди ѣздят в телегах, дрожках, каретах и колясках.

In summer people travel in carts, droshkies, coaches, and open carriages.

Зимой реки и озера замерзают.

In winter the rivers and lakes freeze up.

В течение [в продолжение] трех или четырех месяцев они покрыты толстым слоем льда.

For the duration of three or four months they are covered with a thick layer of ice.

По льду ездят и катаются на коньках.

On the ice people travel and skate [on skates].

Дорога по льду гладкая, ровная. Ехать легко.

The road over the ice is smooth and even. Traveling is easy.

Мальчики и девочки любят кататься [с горы] по снегу и по льду на санках.

Boys and girls like to slide [downhill] over the snow and ice in little sledges.

Летом они любят гулять в лесу и в поле. Они собирают [набирают] грибы и ягоды в лесу и рвут [нарывают] цветы в поле.

In the summer they like to stroll in the woods and in the field. They gather mushrooms and berries and gather [pluck] flowers in the field.

Зимой на севере России всегда очень холодно. На юге даже зимой иногда бывает тепло.

In the north of Russia it is always very cold in winter. In the south even in winter it is sometimes warm.

К востоку от Уральских гор находится [лежит] Сибирь.

To the east of the Ural mountains lies Siberia.

К западу от Уральских гор лежит Европейская Россия.

To the west of the Ural mountains lies European Russia.

Пого́да всё время сто́яла
плоха́я : [шёл дождь,
ча́сто с гро́мом и мо́л-
нией.

The weather was [stood] bad
all the time : rain, often
with thunder and light-
ning.

Не́бо было по́крыто ту́-
чами [облака́ми].

The sky was covered [over-
cast] with clouds.

Дул си́льный ве́тер.

A strong wind was blowing.

Подня́лась [нача́лась] бу́ря.

A storm began.

Па́дал снег с гра́дом [и
град].

Snow fell with hailstones.

Шёл дождь с гра́дом.

Rain fell with hailstones.

К но́чи нача́лась мете́ль.

Towards night a snowstorm
began.

Вода́ в бо́чках и ча́нах за-
ме́рзла и превра́тилась
в ле́д.

Water in barrels and tanks
froze and turned to ice.

К весне́ [весно́ю] лю́ди ко-
па́ют о́город [зе́млю на
о́городах] за́ступом.

Towards [in] spring people
dig (their) gardens [the
soil in the kitchen gardens]
with spades.

Распа́хивают [па́шут] поля́
сохо́й и плу́гом.

They plough up the fields
with hand-plough and
plough.

На о́городах са́дят карто́-
фель, капу́сту, и се́ют
ре́пу, морко́вь, ре́дьку,
редиску, огу́рцы, бураки́,
сала́т и лук ; та́кже раз-
во́дят ды́ни и ты́квы.

In the kitchen garden people
plant potatoes and cab-
bage, and sow turnips,
carrots, radishes, black
radishes, cucumbers, beet-
root, lettuce, and onions ;
they also cultivate melons
and pumpkins.

Из бурако́в и ботви́ны в
деревня́х ва́рят борщ ;
из капу́сты ва́рят щи.

From beetroots and beetroot-
tops they cook borsch in
the villages ; from cab-
bage—cabbage soup.

- На полях сеют хлебá : [разные хлебá] : рожь, пшеницу, ячмень, овёс, гречиху, кукурузу. In the fields they sow [are being sown] corn-crops [cereals] : rye, wheat, barley, oats, buckwheat, maize.
- В саду растут разные плоды : яблоки, груши, сливы, вишни, на яблонях, грушах, сливах и вишнях. In the orchard grow various fruits : apples, pears, plums, cherries, on apple trees, pear trees, plum trees, and cherry trees.
- В садах также есть кусты, на которых растут : смородина, малина, крыжовник. In the orchards there are also bushes on which grow : currants, raspberries, gooseberries.
- В цветниках растут цветы [цвётók]. In the flower beds grow flowers.
- В лесу растут разные деревья : сосны [сосна́], ели [ель] (*fet.*), дубы [дуб], берёзы [а], осины [а]. In the forest grow various trees : pines, fir trees, oak trees, birch trees, aspen trees.
- В траве под деревьями растут грибы и ягоды : черника, брусника, земляника. In the grass under the trees grow mushrooms and berries : bilberries, red bilberries, wild strawberries.
- В лесу всегда прохладно и покойно. In the forest it is always cool and restful.
- На лугу растёт трава. On the meadow grows grass.
- Траву [сено] косят косами, сушат и собирают в стоги. The grass [hay] is mown with scythes, dried and gathered into haystacks.
- Сеном кормят : коров, быков, лошадей, овец и коз. With hay are fed cows, oxen, horses, sheep, and goats.
- Коровы, быки, лошади, овцы, и козы — это домашние животные. Cows, oxen, horses, sheep, goats—these are domestic animals.

В деревнях в хозяйстве
люди разводят кур [кú-
рица], уток [úтка], гусей
[гусь], нидеек [нидéйка].

Это домашние птицы.

Кúры, úтки, гúси и ни-
дéйки кладут яйца.

В каждом хозяйстве есть
собаки и кошки.

В России во многих мес-
тах, особенно на севере,
в лесах водятся [живут]
дикие звери: медведи,
волки, лисыцы [лисы].

На зверей люди охотятся
[устраивают охоты] с
ружьями и собаками.

В реках и озёрах России
много рыбы.

Рыбу ловят неводами, се-
тями и удочками.

In the village households
they rear chickens [hens],
ducks, geese, turkeys.

These are domestic birds.

Hens, ducks, geese, and
turkeys lay eggs.

In every household there are
dogs and cats.

In Russia in many places,
particularly in the north,
in the forests there are
[live] wild beasts: bears,
wolves, foxes.

People hunt these beasts
[arrange hunts] with gun[s]
and hounds.

In the rivers and lakes of
Russia there is much fish.

The fish is caught with large
and small nets, and fishing-
rods.

APPENDIX I

Formation of the Conditional Mood

The conditional mood (see §§ 106, 132) is formed by the addition of the conditional particle **БЫ** [б] (a survival in modern Russian of an Old Slavonic verbal form) to any person of the past tense of the indicative mood of both imperfective and perfective verbs (see § 83). Although the conditional mood is expressed in the form of the past tense (with **БЫ**), it can refer to *any tense*, in accordance with the meaning of the sentence. The particle **БЫ** can either precede or follow the verb. **БЫ** is often used with the conditional conjunction **если**: **если бы**, if . . . had; if . . . did, etc. It can also be merged in the conjunction **чтобы** (see § 97), which is followed by a verb in the past tense if it introduces a subordinate clause of 'wish' or 'request.' When used in the sense of a conditional mood **БЫ** means: should, would, might; should have, would have, might have. **Чтобы** means: that . . . might, that . . . should, that . . . would. But when **чтобы** is used as a conjunction of purpose (in the meaning of: in order to . . .), it is followed by an infinitive.

The conditional mood often serves the purpose of the subjunctive mood, for which there is no specific form in Russian:

Если бы я знал [знай я] это раньше, я бы не продал коня.

Had I known this before I would not have sold the horse.

Я просил, чтобы мне дали разрешение ехать в Советский Союз.

I asked that a permit might be given me to go [travel] to the Soviet Union.

Я хочу, чтобы вы оставались здесь.

I wish that you should remain here.

Если бы я знал, что он поедет в Лондон, я бы послал с ним книги.

Had I known that he was going [would go] to London I would have [might have] sent the books with him.

Ты бы что нибудь[с]делал.

You should [might] do [have done] something.

APPENDIX II

Attributive [Long] Adjectives as Predicate

(Refers to §§ 103-104, pp. 184-185)

An attributive adjective can be used as the predicate of a sentence if the quality expressed by the adjective is a permanent one :

дѡмъ былъ старѣй,	the house was an old one
сапоги́ были совсѣмъ новы́е,	the top-boots were perfectly new (ones)

The adjective in these sentences is the name-part of a compound predicate. The long adjective as predicate is frequently used in popular speech. It is also in use in literary language, particularly when the adjective expresses an essential quality, such as colour, etc. :

крыша́ была́ зелѣная,	the roof was green [a green one]
день былъ пасмурный,	the day was dull [overcast]

APPENDIX III

Notes left out in the body of the book

N.B.—The student is advised to insert cross-references in the pages to which these notes refer.

Note to § 63 (pp. 111-117).

The verb **ИТТИ** [**ИДТИ**], when preceded by a prefix, is contracted into **ИТИ** (dropping the **Т** of the stem). Prefixes ending in a consonant take a euphonic **О**. In the conjugation of the present form the dropped **Т** reappears as a **Д**.

Note to § 64, Group 3 (p. 120).

In the past tense of **ВЫБРАТЬ**, **РАЗОБРАТЬ**, the accent is *not shifted* to the last syllable in the feminine; it remains on the same syllable as in the infinitive:

выбрала, разобрала.

Note to § 64, Group 5 (p. 121).

In the past tense of **ДОБЫТЬ** the accent can also fall on the vowel of the stem (**Ы**) in masculine, neuter, and plural:

добыл, добыло, добыли (but: добыла for feminine).

Note to § 64, Group 7 (pp. 122-124).

The imperative mood of the verbs in this group is formed by adding the terminations **И**, **ИТЕ**, respectively for singular and plural, to the stem of the perfective, and **И**, **ИТЕ** to the stem of the imperfectives.

Note to § 70 (p. 136).

If the first person singular of the present tense ends in **У**, the third person plural will end in **УТ**; if the first person singular ends in **Ю**, the third person plural will end in **ЮТ**.

Note to § 78 (p. 146).

To this category belong also the verbs :

лиз-ать, to lick,	лиж-у́,	лиж-ешь,	-ут
пах-ать, to plough,	пах-у́,	пах-ешь,	-ут
прят-ать, to hide,	прят-у́,	прят-ешь,	-ут
скак-ать, to gallop,	скач-у́,	скач-ешь,	-ут
хлопот-ать, to hustle, to busy oneself,	хлопоч-у́,	хлопоч-ешь,	-ут
хохот-ать, to laugh (loudly),	хохоч-у́,	хохоч-ешь,	-ут

Note to § 81 (p. 150).

To this category belong also the verbs :

(a) гляд-еть, to look (upon),	гляж-у́,	гляд-ишь,	-ят
терп-еть, to suffer,	терп-лю́,	терп-ишь,	-ят
(b) держ-ать, to hold, to keep,	держ-у́,	держ-ишь,	-ат
дрож-ать, to shiver, to tremble,	дрож-у́,	-ишь,	-ят
ворч-ать, to growl, to grumble,	ворч-у́,	-ишь,	-ят
стуч-ать, to knock,	стуч-у́,	-ишь,	-ят
звуч-ать, to sound,	звуч-у́,	-ишь,	-ят

(See also § 65.)

Note to § 123a (p. 203).

The infinitive of verbs used as an object-complement stands in the *imperfective aspect* if the preceding verb has the meaning of *starting, beginning, ceasing, finishing* :

он {стал начал}	просить,	he began to ask
я {кончу кончил}	писать,	{ I shall finish I finished } writing
он {перестал перестанет}	читать,	{ he stopped he will stop } reading

Стать often serves as a substitute for the auxiliary verb **БЫТЬ** for the formation of the compound future tense of an imperfective verb. (See § 57.)

APPENDIX IV

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

Auxiliary Verb **быть**

INDICATIVE MOOD

Singular

Past Tense

я }
ты } был, -а, -о
он, она, оно }

Future Tense

я буду
ты будешь
он, она, оно будет

Plural

мы }
вы } были
они }

мы будем
вы будете
они будут

IMPERATIVE MOOD

будь (ты)
пусть он, она, оно будет

будьте (вы)
пусть они будут

CONDITIONAL MOOD

я }
ты } был бы, была бы, было бы
он, она, оно }

мы }
вы } были бы
они }

PARTICIPLES (ACTIVE)

Present: сущий, -ая, -ее; -ие

Past: бывший, -ая, -ее; -ие

Future: будущий, -ая, -ее; -ие¹

¹ Used as an adjective.

² being.

³ having been.

GERUND (VERBAL ADVERB)

будучи²
быв [бывши]³

FIRST CONJUGATION

IMPERFECTIVE ASPECT
читать (to read)

Singular
я чита-ю
ты чита-ешь
он, -а, -о чита-ет

Plural
мы чита-ем
вы чита-ете
они чита-ют

я чита-ю
ты чита-ешь
он, -а, -о чита-ет

мы буд-ем
вы буд-ете
они буд-ут

чита-й (ты)
пусть он, -а, -о чита-ет

я чита-ю
ты чита-ешь
он, -а, -о чита-ет

PERFECTIVE ASPECT
прочитать (to read through)

(none)

Past Tense

Singular
я прочита-л,
мы прочита-ли
он, -а, -о прочита-ли

Plural
мы прочита-ем
вы прочита-ете
они прочита-ют

Future Tense

я прочита-ю
ты прочита-ешь
он, -а, -о прочита-ет

мы прочита-ем
вы прочита-ете
они прочита-ют

IMPERATIVE MOOD

прочитай (ты), -йте (вы)
пусть они прочита-ют

CONDITIONAL MOOD

я прочита-ю
ты прочита-ешь
он, -а, -о прочита-ет

мы прочита-ем
вы прочита-ете
они прочита-ют

PARTICIPLE (ACTIVE)			
<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
чита-ющий, -ая, -ее ; -ие	чита-вший, -ая, -ее ; -ие	(none)	прочита-вший, -ая, -ее ; -ие
PARTICIPLE (PASSIVE)			
<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
чита-емый, -ая, -ое ; -ые чита-ем, -а, -о ; -ы	чита-нный, -ая, -ое ; -ые чита-н, -на, -но ; -ны	(none)	прочита-нный, -ая, -ое ; -ые прочита-н, -на, -но ; -ны
GERUND (VERBAL ADVERB)			
<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>
чита-я	чита-в [-вши]	(none)	прочита-в [-вши]
PASSIVE [not in current use]			
будучи чита-ем, ¹ -ема, -емо ; -еми	быв чита-н, ² -а, -о ; -и	(none)	быв прочита-н, ³ -на, -но ; -ны

SECOND CONJUGATION

For the present tense (form) see § 70. The other moods and tenses are formed on the same pattern as verbs of the first conjugation. (See §§ 82, 83, 86a, 86b.)

¹ being read.

² having been read.

³ having been read through.

RUSSIAN INDEX

N.B.—All references are made to pages.

А

- á, in nom. pl. of masc. nouns, 33
 -áта [-ята] (pl. of nouns ending in
 óнок, ёнок), 42-3
 -ать, of infinitive, dropped in the
 present tense, 141, 145-7, 150

Б

- более (with positive adjective as
 comparative), 69-70, 76
 болеть, 258
 будто [бы], 215-16
 бы, 181, 186-7, 204, 216-18, 226
 бывало, 202, 256
 бывать, 255
 было (adv.), 171
 быть, 190, 219-22, 236, 242, 245-6;
 as auxiliary verb, 102, 246; used
 as a copula, 185, 190, 201, 236,
 242; replacing иметь, 221-2, 256

В

- ва-, suffix dropped in present tense,
 143-4

Г

- говорят (parenthetical), 215-16
 годы [летá], 259

Д

- де, де́скать, 171, 215
 должён, должна́, 78-9
 должно́ быть, 78-9, 220, 274
 друг-друга, etc., 222

Е

- ев [-ов], changing into ю [y] in
 the present tense, 147
 -ёнок [-онок], nouns ending in,
 42-3
 ёсли [ёсли бы], 216-17, 308
 есть, as predicate expressing plural-
 ity, 197, 221; used for emphasis,
 219
 есть [кушать], 257-8
 -еть, of infinitive, dropped in the
 present tense, 150

Ж

- жаль, 220, 274
 же, used with pronouns, 87-9;
 with adverbs, 170

И

- и́ (accented), in locative of feminine
 nouns after в, на, 52
 иметь, 219-22, 256

К

- коё [кой], 169; used with pro-
 nouns or adverbs, 83, 90, 223
 кушать [есть], 257-8

Л

- л, euphonic after labials, 20, 146,
 149-50; dropped after conson-
 ants in the past tense, 20, 152-5
 лень, 220
 летá [го́ды], 259
 ли, 180, 216, 243

либо, 180 ; used with pronouns or adverbs, 90, 223
люди (plural of человек), 36, 93

М

мало, 198, 232-3
мéнее (with positive adjective as comparative), 67-70
мнóгие, 84
мнóго, 198, 232-3
мнóгое, 84
мóжет быть, 171
мол, 215, 271

Н

надо [на́добно], 78, 233, 274
наи- (in superlative adjectives), 72
не, in negative sentences, 30, 188, 202-3, 231, 245, 248-9
не́ [нет], as negative predicate, 226-228, 245, 249
не́-, не́где, не́зачем, не́когда, не́куда, не́откуда, не́чего, 226-7, 249
нельзя́, 220, 274, 282
не́сколько, 198, 232-3
нет, 199-200, 202, 245, 268
ни (negative), with pronouns and adverbs, 89, 224-6
ни (no matter . . .), after relative pronouns and adverbs, 225-6
нибу́дь, with pronouns and adverbs, 83, 90, 223-4
ничего́, 224-5
ничего́ себе́, 230
ну́жно, ну́жный, 78
-нуть, of infinitive, dropped in the past tense of inchoative verbs, 148, 154

О

-ов [-ев], changing into у [ю] in the present tense, 147
-онок [-ёнок], nouns ending in, 42-3

П

пре- (in superlative adjectives), 72

С

са́мый, 72, 88-9
свой, 86, 228
себе́, себе́, 229-30
сде́латься (as auxiliary verb), 185, 190, 201, 236
ско́лько, 83-4 ; with нибу́дь, 223
стано́виться (as auxiliary verb), 185, 190, 201, 236
ста́ть (as auxiliary verb and copula), 185, 190, 201, 236
сто́лько, 83-4

Т

то (particle), with pronouns and adverbs, 83, 90, 222-4
тому́ наза́д, 254

У

у [ю], in gen. sing. of masc. nouns, 32 ; in loc. sing. of masc. nouns (after в, на), 33

Х

хва́тит [хвати́ть], 231

Ч

челове́к, qualified by numerals, 36, 92-3 ; plural of, 36, 93
что́бы [чтоб], with infinitive (of purpose), 181, 207, 212, 218 ; with past tense in subordinate clauses of wish, 181, 218, 308-9

Б ; Я

-ья, in nom. pl. of masc. nouns, 34 ; of neuter nouns, 41
-я́ть, of infinitive, dropped in the present tense, 141, 147, 150

PREPOSITIONS

The literal English translations of Russian prepositions (see §§ 96-96e) will not always be the best guide for the student as to how they will fit into a Russian expression. Some prepositions have more than one English equivalent. The same can be said about English prepositions. Those Russian prepositions which are liable to some modification of meaning in the sentence are set out below with their respective English equivalents, as illustrated in phrases appearing in the Lessons-Section.

в, <i>at</i> , 254, 263-5, 271, 287; в, <i>at</i> (games), 296; в, <i>in</i> , 244, 254-5, 264, 289, 302; в, <i>on</i> , 247, 263; в, <i>to</i> , 265, 271, 294	на, <i>at</i> , 255, 265, 289; на, <i>by</i> , 276; на, <i>in</i> [during], 262-5; на, <i>for</i> , 278; на, <i>on</i> , 244, 302; на, <i>to</i> , 265, 276-7, 294; на, <i>up</i> , 278
для, <i>for</i> (intended for), 271	по, <i>after</i> , 279; по, <i>along</i> , 281; по, <i>at</i> , 281, 284; по, <i>by</i> , 281, 284; по, <i>in</i> , 281; по, <i>on</i> , 264, 272, 276, 279, 281; по, <i>to</i> , 276, 284
за, <i>at</i> , 247, 250, 285; за, <i>by</i> , 276; за, <i>during</i> , 280; за, <i>for</i> , 280; за, <i>to</i> , 279, 294-5	под, <i>on</i> , 285
из, <i>of</i> , 271	с, <i>about</i> , 278-9; с, <i>from</i> . . . on, 264; <i>from</i> , 272
к, <i>by</i> , 261, 263-4, 284; к, <i>for</i> , 247, 250, 263, 284; к, <i>to</i> , 247, 294-5; к, <i>towards</i> , 254, 264, 284	у, <i>at</i> , 255, 260-1, 269, 272; у, <i>in</i> , 255; у, <i>from</i> , 272; у, <i>near by</i> , 269

The English prepositions given in the above list can be roughly translated as:

about, с; *after*, по; *at*, в, за, на, по, у; *by*, за, к, на, по, у; *during*, за, на; *for*, для, за, к, на; *from*, с, у; *in*, в, на, по; *near*, у; *of*, из, у; *on*, в, на, по, под; *to*, в, за, к, на, по; *towards*, к; *up*, на.

ENGLISH INDEX

N.B.—All references are made to pages.

A

- Accent (stress), 7, 8, 15, 36; in declension of masculine nouns, 37; of neuter nouns, 44; of feminine nouns, 53; in adjectives, 73; in verbs (present tense), 138-54; in past tense, 139-51, 155; in the imperative, 150-1; in participles, 157-62; shifted to prepositions, 176-9
- Accusative case, 28; of animate masculine nouns, 30; of animate feminine nouns, 46; uses of, 234-5, 277; in expressions of time, 253, 259, 263-4
- Adjective-clauses, 207, 209-10
- Adjectives, declension of, 61-2; lacking short form, 65, 81; lacking comparative degree, 81; adverbs from, 72, 164-7; participles as, 81; short adjective as predicate, 184, 185, 256; as qualifiers, 191
- Adverb-clauses, 207, 210-12
- Adverbial expressions: of place, 193, 237, 255, 265, 277, 289; of time, 193, 235, 237, 253-4, 259, 263-4, 267, 277, 281; of manner, 193, 236-7, 286; of cause, 194; of purpose, 194, 207, 212, 218
- Adverbs, 164-71; from adjectives, 72, 164-7; comparative, 165, 273; in complex sentences, 210-213; in impersonal sentences, 165-6, 273-4; in negative sentences, 202-3; with *то, либо*, *нибۇдь, ко́е*, 222-4; with *ни* (negative), 224-6; with *ни* (*no matter . . .*), 225-6; with *не* [*нет*] (as predicate), 226-8
- ago, 254
- anyone, anything, anybody, 83, 90, 233
- Apposition, 192
- Aspect of verbs, imperfective and perfective, 102-8, 111-16, 117-32; iterative, 103, 110-11
- Augmentative masculine nouns, 41
- Auxiliary verbs: *быть*, 219-222, 256; *стать*, 185, 190, 201, 236

B

- because, 211-12, 275
- become, to, 185, 189-90, 201, 273-6

C

- Capital letters, 259, 266
- Cases: functions of, 27-8; oblique, of nouns, 27-9, 39, 46; of adjectives, 61-2; of pronouns, 84-9; of numerals, 93-9
- Clauses (subordinate), 205-13
- Clothing, dresses, etc., 292, 297-8
- Collective (group) numerals, 97
- Commutation of sounds, 19
- Comparative adverbs, 165, 273
- Comparative degree of adjectives, 67-71, 74-80
- Comparison, expressed by genitive, 72, 231, 256
- Complex sentences, 204-13
- Concord, of words, 184, 191, 195
- Conditional mood, 186-7, 216, 308

Conjunctions, 180-1; in complex sentences, 208-13
 Co-ordination, in sentences, 184, 194-5, 197; of clauses, 205-6
 Consonants: hard (non-palatalized), 3-4, 6, 12, 21-2; palatalized, 3, 6, 10, 13, 23; voiced, 16; voiceless, 16; assimilation of, 16-18
 Copula, verbs used as, 185, 190, 201, 219, 236, 242
 Countries, names of, 255

D

Dates (days), 96-7, 232, 266
 Dative case, 28; uses of, 233-4, 282; as logical subject in impersonal sentences, 199-201, 226, 233-4, 282; in impersonal constructions with *hé* [her], 226-8
 Days of the week, 263-4
 Days and dates (see Dates)
 Declension: of masculine nouns, 29-36; of neuter nouns, 39-43; of feminine nouns, 46-52; of adjectives, 61-2; of pronouns, 84-9; of numerals, 93-5
 Degrees of comparison of adjectives, 67-70, 74-80
 Diminutives: of nouns, 57; of adjectives, 58; of personal names, 48
 Diphthongs, 2, 4, 9, 26, 47
 Dishes (food), 248, 250, 295
 Dresses, etc., 298

E

Euphonic *и* after labials, 20, 111, 132, 146, 149-50

F

Fleeting *о*, *е*, in declension of masculine nouns, 31; of neuter nouns, 40; of feminine nouns, 47, 50, 51, 56; in adjectives, 66

Food, 248-50, 295
 Functions of cases, 27-8

G

Genders of nouns, 27-8
 Genitive case, as adjunct, 28; uses of, 230-3; expressing comparison, 72, 231, 256; after negative predicate, 188, 231, 245; nouns, having gen. pl. in same form as nom. sing., 35-6
 Gerunds (verbal adverbs), 162-3; in complex sentences, 213
 get, to, 107, 121, 200, 276, 281, 284, 296
 get (got), 196
 get (up), to, 121, 144, 205, 291, 293
 getting, 274-6
 Governance [subordination], of words, 184, 196-7

I

if, 216-17, 243; as if, 216
 Imperative mood, formation of, 150-2; in conditional clauses, 186-7, 204; use of, 203; accent in, 150-1
 Impersonal sentences, 199-202; dative in (as logical subject), 199-201; predicate of, 200; omission of *есть* in, 220; impersonal constructions with *hé* [her] (as predicate), 226-8, 245; with *нужно*, *надо*, 78-9, 282; with reflexive verbs, 100; expressing a passive, vague state, 101; adverbs in, 185-6, 273-4; negative, 202-3, 216, 226-8, 231, 245, 248-9
 Indirect narration, 215-16
 Indirect sentences, 217
 Infinitive: used as imperative, 187; as future tense, 187; as object, 188, 203; as subject, 184;

followed by noun-complement in the instrumental, 190; as qualifier, 191; as an adverbial expression of purpose (in constructions with *чтобы*, *in order to*), 194, 207, 212, 218; in constructions with *нѣ* [нѣт], 226-8

Instrumental case, 28; uses of, 189-90, 235-7, 286; in adverbial expressions of manner, 193, 236-237; in passive constructions, 202, 214-15

Interjections, 182

Intonation (sentence), 21

L

let, 151-2, 171, 204, 211

let us, 186, 204

like, 100, 211, 233, 294

Locative case, 28; uses of, 237; in expressions of time, 254, 264; of place, 255, 265, 289

M

Masculine nouns, with *а* in nom. pl., 33; with *ѣ* in nom. pl., 34; with suffix *-и*, 35; with gen. pl. in nom. sing. form, 35-6

Meals, 247-8, 250, 285, 295

might, might have, 186, 217, 220, 308-9

Months, 264

Moods: use of, 186-7, 216; indicative, 102; imperative, formation of, 150-2; accent in, 150-1; use of, 186, 203-4; conditional, 186-7; subjunctive, 214-15

must, 79, 283

must not, 233, 283

N

Nationalities, 254-5

Negative particle *нѣ*, with direct object in genitive, 30, 188, 202-3, 248-9

Negative predicate *нѣ* [нѣт], 226-8
Negative sentences, 202-3, 216, 226-8, 231, 245, 248-9

no matter, 225-6

Nominative (pl.) as accusative, 189-190

Noun-clauses, 207

Nouns, declension of: masculine, 29-36; neuter, 39-43; feminine, 46-52; animate and inanimate, accusative of, 30, 46; ending in *онок*, *ѣнок*, 42-3; in *мѣ*, 43; used only in plural, 55; used only in singular, 55; of common gender, 56; derivation-suffixes in, 59; with terminations of adjectives, 62-3

Numerals: used with nouns, 92-3, 197-8, 232-3; with nouns and adjectives, 96; declension of, 93-5; gender of dates (days, etc.), 96-7, 232; collective (group), 97; fractional, 98; as subject, 184; as predicate (name-part), 185; as qualifier, 191; peculiar co-ordination of, with predicate, 197; not in conformity with case of noun, 197-8, 233

O

Object-clauses, 209

Object, direct, 28, 187-8, 277; in genitive with negative predicate, 30, 188, 231, 256; in genitive when used in a partitive sense, 189, 231; indirect object in dative, 28, 234; in other cases, 188, 232; in nominative plural (as accusative), 189-90; subject as inverted object, 100, 199-201, 222, 226, 233-4, 245, 256, 282

Oblique cases, uses of, 230-7, 266-7, 277, 288

P

Participles: active, 156-7; passive, 157-62; as subject, 184; past passive as predicate, 184; as qualifier, 191; in complex sentences, 212; in passive constructions, 214-15, 235, 286; used as adjectives, 81-2

Passive constructions, 214-15, 235, 286

Passive sentences, with reflexive verbs, 135-6, 200-2

Passive voice, 214-15, 286; expressed by transitive verb, 215

Patronymics, 239-40

Predicate: simple, 184-5; compound (with *быть*, *стать*, etc.), 185, 190, 201, 219-22, 236, 242, 246; name-part of, 185; past passive participle as, 184; negative, with object in genitive, 30, 188, 245; negative, with *нѣ* [*нет*], 226-8; concord of, with subject, 195

Predicate-clauses, 208

Predicative [short] adjectives, formation of, 66-7; comparative adjectives, 67-80

Prefixes (prepositional): in verbs, 105, 111-32; which do not alter meaning of perfective verb, 128-130; when attached to nouns, 117

Prepositions, 171-9; which take the accent, 176-9; cases which they govern, 174-6

(NOTE.—Russian prepositions and their corresponding English equivalents in colloquial speech will be found at the end of the Russian index, p. 318.)

Pronouns: declension of, 84-9; in negative sentences, 202-3, 248-9; adverbial, 83; as conjunctions in

complex sentences, 207-13; denoting quantity as qualifiers to nouns, 191, 197-8, 202, 233; as subject, 184; as predicate (name-part), 185; with *то*, *либо*, *нибѣдь*, *кѣе*, 222-4; with *ни* (negative), 224-6; with *ни* (*no matter . . .*), 225-6; with *нѣ* [*нет*] as predicate, 226-8; reflexive-possessive *свой*, 86, 228; reflexive *себя*, use of, 229-30

Punctuation, 237-8

put, to, 107, 122, 127, 129

put (on), to, 122, 127, 160, 291, 293-4

Q

Qualifier [qualifying word], 190

Qualifier-clauses, 209

Qualifiers, concord of, 191

R

Reflexive verbs, in passive constructions, 214-15

Reported speech (sentences), 216-17

S

Seasons, 168, 254, 264

Sentence, the, 183-4

Sentences: personal, 199; impersonal, 78-9, 100-1, 165-6, 199-202, 226-8, 245; negative, 202-3, 216, 226-8, 231, 245, 249; complex, 204-13; interrogative, 216, 243

some, someone, something, 83, 90, 223

Sounds, commutation of, 19

Stress: word, 7, 8, 15, 20; sentence, 20

Subject, the, 183-4; concord of, with predicate, 195

Subject-clauses, 208

Subjunctive mood, 215-16, 308

Subordinate clauses, 205-9
 Subordination: in sentences, 184, 194-6; of clauses, 205-6
 Suffixes: derivation, in nouns, 59-60; termination, in nouns, 57-8; iterative, in verbs, 110, 117, 130
 Superlative degree of adjectives, 71-72, 74-80
 Surnames, ending in ов, ев, ин, ын, declension of, 64

T

Tenses (of indicative mood) of verbs, 102; irregular use of, in sentences, 186
 Time of day, 168, 247, 254, 264, 274-5, 281

V

Verbal adverbs [gerunds]: in complex sentences, 213; replacing verbal predicate, 213
 Verb, as predicate (in any tense), 184
 Verb-groups, 118-27
 Verbs: transitive [active], 99; intransitive [neuter], 99; neuter ending in -ся, 134; reflexive, 99, 101-2, 133; in impersonal sen-

tences, 100; used in a passive sense, 135-6, 214-15; reciprocal, 100, 133, 286; tenses of the indicative mood of, 102; aspects: imperfective, perfective, 102-8; iterative, 103, 110-11; definite, 108-9; indefinite, 108-9; prefixes in, 104-5, 111-16; conjugation of, 136-7; types of conjugation of, 137-52; personal terminations of, 136-7; past tense, formation of, 152-5; imperative mood, formation of, 150-2

Vocative case, 27

Vowels: open, 13-14, 21, 23; close, 13-14, 23; stressed, 7; unstressed, 7, 22; hard, 21-2; soft 4, 6, 7, 10, 13, 23, 24; retaining 'jot' element, 4, 7, 13

W

want, to, 100, 130, 190, 257

want (wish), to, 218

Weather, 305

whether, 216, 243

Word order, 218

Word subordination, use of oblique cases, 230-7, 266-7, 277, 282, 286

would [should], 186-7, 217-18, 220, 308-9